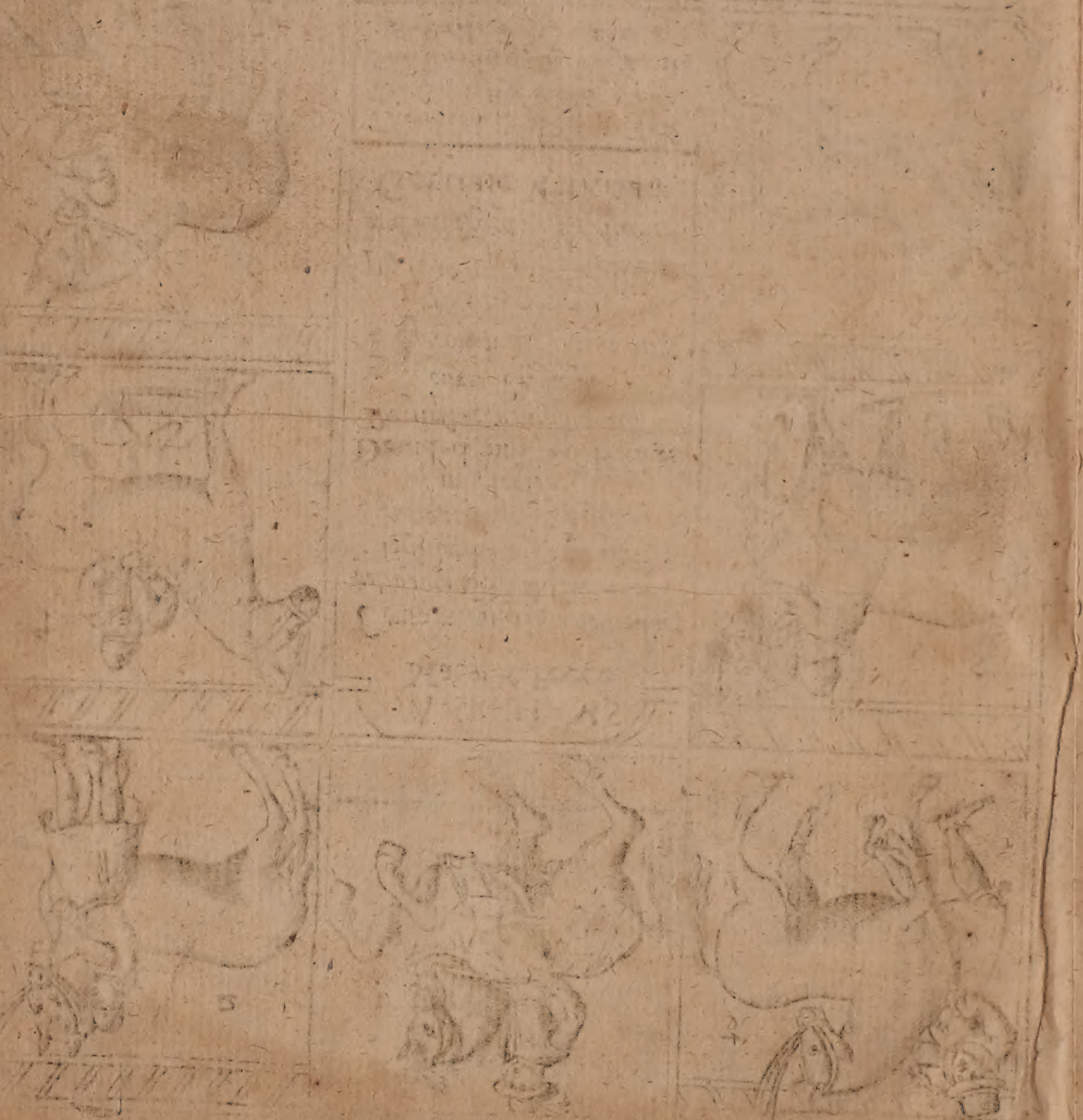
The Mind or Meaning of the FRONTISPIECE.

THe Figure 1. a compleat *Horſeman* ſhows,
That *Rides*, *Keeps*, *Cures*, and all perfections knows:
The 2. *Diet*; the 3. Letting Blood,
Beſt *Balm* of *Balms*, for inward Griefs moſt good:
The 4. *Wounds*, *Galls*, and *Sores* doth firmly cure;
The 5. helps *Natures* Marks; 6. doth procure
Help for the *Sinews* Griefs, as *Slip* or *Strain*,
Knock, or *Convulſion*, all are helpt again.
The 7. wholſom *Drink*; the 8 doth take
Blood from the *Mouth*, which ſudden Death doth ſlake.
The 9. ſhews the *Horſe-Candle*, or the *Maſh*,
Good as the beſt, yet ſome Fools count it Traſh.
The 10. ſhews *Fury* in untamed things,
The only *Fountain* whence *Diſeaſes* ſprings.



MARKHAMS Maister:Peece.

Containing all knowledge belonging to Smith. Farrier. or Horse:leech. touching the curing of all diseases in Horses.

Deuided into two bookes.

The first containing all cures Physicall.

The second, all belonging to Chyrurgery.

The 11.th Impression corrected and enlarged by the Author.

Geruase Markham.

To which is now added The Country mans Care For Curing Diseases in Smaller Cattle.

MARKHAM's
MASTER-PIECE
REVIVED:

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the *Smith*, *Farrier*, or *Horse-Leach*, touching the Curing

All Diseases

IN

HORSES.

DRAWN

With great pains from approved Experience, and the Publick Practice of the best Horse-marshals in *Christendom*.

Divided into Two Books.

The *I.* containing *Cures Physical*; The *II.* all *Cures Chirurgical*:

TOGETHER WITH

The *Nature*, *Use* and *Quality* of every *SIMPLE* mentioned through the whole WORK.

Now the Thirteenth time Printed, Corrected and Augmented with above Thirty new Chapters, and Forty new Medicines heretofore never Publish'd.

To which is added by way of *APPENDIX*,

The Country-man's Care for his other Cattle,

CONTAINING

The exactest *Receipts* for Curing all DISEASES in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, and all smaller Cattel, with many new Additions.

And now in this Impression is added

The COMPLEAT JOCKEY;

Containing Methods for the Training of Horses up for Racing; with their Heats and Courses, and manner of Keeping, *&c.* Also Instructions to the Buyers, to avoid Cheating Horse-Coursers; And all things necessary for Gentlemen, and others. *Never before made Publick.*

LONDON, Printed for *John Wright* at the Crown on *Ludgate* Hill, and *Thomas Passinger* at the Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*. 1683.

TO

The RIGHT HONOURABLE, and

My NOBLE LORD,

Sir *ROBERT DORMER*,

Baronet,

Baron *Dormer* of *Wing*, Viſcount *Aſcot*, Earl of *Carnarvan*, and Maſter of His Majeſties Hawks.

SIR,

EVer ſince I came to ſerve your Country in Military Occaſions, I accounted my ſelf your Servant, and to that end have made ſtrong Intimation: But Multa cadent, *many haps*

haps hinder hopes: now left to mine own Power, I could not find any thing that could so well express me to your Lordship, or shew you what I am either in Affection or Virtue, as the Dedication of this Book, which contains me amply and fully adorned with the best of mine own Feathers. And howsoever it may appear to your Honour with an old Countenance, both because my self, the Title, and much of the Matter is old; yet let me give Assurance unto your Noble Goodness, that there is that newness of Truth, Art, and approved Experience, which unto this day hath not been discovered in any other Author. It is more (my Noble Lord) than fifty years agone, since I began to sail in this Ocean, and to discover the fruitful Traffick of this needful Art: Nor have I in the Interim of Time been a Truant, but with my best means and abilities have pursued it (as neer as I could) unto the height

height of Perfection, and doubtless (much Honoured Sir) I have not lost all my Labour, what I have gained I have here now newly inserted, and send it in all Humility to kiss your Lordships Hand; not as a material thing worthy your Study; but as a poor Virtue that needs your Defence. And however, I dare not set it forth as a Present worthy your acceptance, yet be pleased to make it such by your Favour, which can make mean deserving appear to be of greatest Merit. This Obligation now offered unto your worthy Hand, is the free Offering of my Love, Service and Affection; and in a word, of my self, who am as well as my Work devoted to be ever Yours. This Book is but the external Pledge which doth demonstrate the inward Obligation of my Heart, since what I am, Art, Soul and affection is only Yours, and desire to be so esteemed in all my Actions,

eſpecially in this Work. If it arrive with as good ſuc-ceſs as I tranſport it with ſincere Devotion, no doubt but the Work will gain Luſtre, and my ſelf ſhall find that ſatisfaction which ſhall make me ever acknowledge my ſelf,

Your Honours Humble
Devoted Servant,
GERVASE MARKHAM.

AN

AN
ADMONITION
TO THE
READER.

Which I would wish him to Read, before he peruse the Book.

TWO Errors (gentle Reader) have been laid to my Charge in the first Publication of this Book, as namely, a mistaking in the Table of Additions wanting Direction: And the great multiplicity of heaping together of many Medicines for one Grief, without distinguishing their goodness, or foretelling the Practitioner, on which to rely for his best Profit and Assurance.

The first was but a venial escape in the Printer, and may be forgotten, in asmuch as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second, which is the multiplicity of Medicines, I have for thy satisfaction, to all those Medicines which of mine

own Knowledge I have found to be certain and most approved, and to be the best of those which are coupled with it; I have in the Margin, and over against the Medicin placed this Mark ☞.

As also to every new Addition and new Chapter, (never before published) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this ☞.

And for thy better furtherance in this Work, I have likewise in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my Knowledge) placed this Mark also ☞.

And this I have done for two Reasons.

First, to make this Work which was one of my first, and entituled my *MASTER-PIECE*, a true *MASTER-PIECE* indeed, and so exact in every part, that other stoln Pieces & Pamphlets Christened in my name, and Printed without my knowledge or assistance, with twice so many Falshoods as Pages may be known to be both Bastards and Abortive; mistaking an ounce for half an ounce, three handfuls for two, too much of one Simple and too little of another, of which whosoever maketh trial, will, without he hath had some knowledge already, indanger his horse; and therefore I have given many men notice my self of it, because they have taken one thing for another.

And

And that the Bumbasted Title, and the illiterate and absurd Epistles, were neither the one nor the other of my invention: For I must most ingenuously confess, that, but to this Book and my first, I was never so happy as to be made a God-Father.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this Book for Correction, which is a Cabinet that contains all, and more than others struggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reason to perswade him to read my Book, than to shew him the real use of Horses well managed, according to the Rules of Horsemanship; he is fit for feats of Arms, and Triumphs in War; and a great pity it is, that such an excellent Beast should any way miscarry for want of knowing his natural Diseases, and the Cure thereof.

I have now made the Souldier and all others, Masters of Art in the Cures of their Horses, if Farriers be failing to advise and consider with them: For it is a Knowledge fit for a Gentleman, both in Peace and War, to be able to cure the Diseases incident to his Horses; for other Countries do love all Experiments, and to be seen generally in all generous Practices, whereof horse-

manship

manſhip is one of the chiefeſt. Which work I will juſtifie upon my reputation to have been tried by me, and hath wrought good effect; having theſe fifty years been a Practitioner in the ſame, and did never think to have diſcloſed theſe Secrets that now I have, which Time and my Induſtry hath brought to light; and becauſe old age groweth upon me, and that the Grave will be never a whit the better, I thought therefore to divulge them to the World, rather than to have hid them in Oblivion; deſiring the Reader to give God the Glory, and me but only thanks and good wiſhes. So I reſt,

Thine,

G. M.

The

The AUTHORS Names. From whom any thing in this *Work* is Collected, being the beſt Farriers.

Theſe are Publick.

Xenophon
Ruſticus
Vegetius
Pelagonius
Camerarius
Apollonius
Greſſon
Grilli
Horatio
Gloria de Caballi
Libal
Stevens
Wickerus
La Brove
Martin ſenior
Albiterio
Vinet
Clifford
Maſcal
Markham

Theſe are Private.

Martin junior
Webb
Dallidoun ſenior
Dallidoun junior
Ausbourn
Stanley
Smith
Dowſing
Day
Barns
Mayfield
Lupman
Goodſoon
Parfray
White

Markham's Maſter-Piece.

THE FIRST BOOK

CONTAINING

All Cures, Phyſical, or ſuch Infirmities, as, being inward, crave the Adminiſtration of Phyſick, and are called in Horſe-Leach-craft, *Horſe-ſickneſſes.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Natural Compoſition of Horſes bodies.

TOuching the true compoſition of a Horſes body, you ſhall underſtand, that it is (as the Body of Man) compounded of thirteen ſeveral things, that is to ſay, ſeven natural, and ſix not natural: The ſeven natural are *Elements*, *Temperaments*, *Humours*, *members*, *Powers*, or *Vertues*, *Actions* or *Operations*, and *Spirits*; all which be called natural, becauſe the natural Perfection and excellency of every ſenſible body doth Wholly Depend upon Them, And hath His Moving no longer then they have Power of working. The Six, Which are not Natural, be the *Ayr*, *Meat and Drink*, *Motion and Reſt*, *Sleep*, and *Watch*, *Emptineſs*, and *Fulneſs*, and the *Affects*, or *Motions* of the mind; and theſe are called not natural, becauſe as (being rightly and in due order applied) they preſerve, ſuſtain, and fortify the body

so being misgoverned, or used any excess, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole body : And of these thirteen principles which compound the Fabrick, or whole frame of the body, I intend to speak severally.

CHAP. II.

Of the four Elements, their Vertues and Operations.

First, for the Exposition of the word *Element*, you shall understand, that it is the primary or first beginning of all things, being of it self pure, uncorrupt and simple ; all things being first made thereof, and all things at last being resolved into the same again. It is also in its own nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be discerned by any sensible eye whatsoever. Lastly, it is the last part or *Atom* of that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usual first movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only four in number, that is to say, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth* ; meaning not that *Fire*, *Ayr*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is visible here with us beneath, and which through the grossness thereof, is both palpable and to be discerned ; but those which are amounted aloft, and through their purity invisible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know, that the *Fire* is the highest as being fixed or joyned next unto the *Moon*, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling in heat.

The *Ayr* is placed next unto Fire, and is naturally light and Hot ; yet his predominant or chief quality is moist.

The *Water* is joyned unto the Ayre ; the disposition thereof being heavy and Moist ; but his predominant or chief quality only cold.

Lastly, the *Earth*, adjoyned to the Water, is the lowest ; and it is most heavy and cold ; but the predominant or chief quality thereof is only driness.

Now for the Vertues, properties, and operations of these four Elements, you shall understand, that first the fire, by means of his heat moveth matter to generation, and stirreth up warmth in all living things ; it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to separate things of divers kinds one from another

ther, and also to joyn things of like kinds together, which they likewise call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the Fire, the bones of Horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinews, the sinews from the veins, the veins from the Arteries, the heart from the Liver, the liver from the Spleen, and so forth in such sort as we see the divers parts of the fuel we burn, by the vertue of the fire and heat to be separated, and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoke, the smoke from the flame, and the flame from the Ashes, as in these things, so in many other things, as in the trial of Metals and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heat separateth the body from body, that is, metal from metal, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the self same kind. Besides the vertue of the fire, is to ripen, order, and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the Air being somewhat more solid and gross, may enter into the Body: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldness of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the Body.

Touching the vertue and operation of the Air, you shall understand, that by the moistness thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either natural, or accidental, and by the help and Assistance of the fire, bringeth the Powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into Inferiour Bodies, making the mixt bodies not only subtle and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too gross, nor too heavy. Secondly, the Air through his Moistness cooleth the burning heat of the Heart, Liver, and Intrails, as we daily see by the Office of the Lights and Lungs, which like a pair of bellows draweth unceasantly fresh Air unto the Heart and inward member. And albeit, the Air doth not seem to the sense of the outward eyes, to be any thing near so moist as the Water, yet according to the opinions, both of our Books and best Phisicians, it is by much the moister, which is well proved, (say they) by the abundant flux it containeth, which flux spreadeth it self so far abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the special Properties and Characters of moistness, and by that Reason, is much harder to be kept within his own Bounds than the Water is. Lastly, as the Water was altered by Gold from his first natural place, for the better profit both of man, and Beast: Even so the Air, according to School-mens opinions, was not left al-

together in his firſt natural diſpoſition, leſt being over-moiſt it ſhould ſo confound and ſuffocate all ſenſe, that neither man nor Beaſt ſhould be able to breath or Live.

Now for the vertue and operation of the Water, it is to be noted, that through the Coldneſs thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts and members together, which be of divers kinds; as bones with fleſh and ſinews, fleſh with ſinews and bones, and ſinews with bones and fleſh. Even as for a familiar example, we ſee in the time of any great Froſt, the ſtrength of the Cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one maſs or ſubſtance, both Water, Dirt, Stones, Straws, Sticks and Leaves: The Water alſo with its Coldneſs, doth temper and cool the inflammation and heat of the Fire, gathering together thoſe things, which otherwiſe the violent Heat would diſperſe and ſcatter abroad.

Laſtly, for the vertue and operation of the earth, it is through his drineſs in mixt bodies, ſo to harden and fix them together, that they may retain their ſhapes which otherwiſe by the power of the Air and Water, would be ſo Soluble and Looſe, that they could not hold together; as we may ſee in Paſte, Wax and ſuch like, which whilſt it is moiſt, will receive no print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any Form that is preſt into it. And here is to be noted, that according to the opinion of *Hippocrates*, when any ſenſible body dyeth, not only every quality, but every ſubſtance, and part makes his return to the Element from whence it came; as heat to the Fire, moiſtneſs to the Air, coldneſs to the Water, and drineſs to the Earth. And thus briefly you ſee, that of theſe four common Elements, or common beginners of things; the Fire being hot ſeparateth; the Air being moiſt, ſhapeth; the Water being cold, bindeth; and the Earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The uſe that you are to make of this knowledge, over and beſides the compoſition of a natural body, is, that when you find any ſickneſs, or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as Inflammations of the body, or ſuch like, that then you apply ſimples of the nature of the Air or Water, which may moiſten and cool the violence of the heat. If the infirmity proceed from the Air, as Flux of Blood, or too much moiſture, then you ſhall apply ſimples of the nature of the Fire or Earth, whoſe heat and drineſs may diſperſe and harden ſuch moiſture. If the Diſeaſe ſpring from the Water, as Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and ſuch like;

like; then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire and Air; that through the heat of the one, and the moiſt lightneſs of the other, all ſuch cold, groſs and ſolid humours may be diſperſed. But if the diſeaſe proceed from the earth, as Mangineſs and Leproſie, or their like, that are dry and hardned infections, then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire only, whoſe heat may diſſolve and looſen thoſe ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you ſee, too much heat is abated by coldneſs and moiſtneſs, too much moiſtneſs by heat and drineſs; too much coldneſs by heat and moiſtneſs; too much drineſs by heat only.

Thus much of theſe four common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, ſenſible and unſenſible; yet of ſenſible things, which live and have blood, there be other more near Elements, or beginnings, which are called Proper Elements, or generation; as the ingendring ſeed, and menſtrual blood, from whence every Beaſt taketh his firſt ſhape and beginning; and yet thoſe proper beginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the qualities of the firſt common beginnings already ſpoken of, which is moiſt, dry, hot and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. III.

Of Temperaments, and their ſeveral kinds, and how far every way they extend in Horſes.

THeſe *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the ſecond thing in a Horſes compoſition, do ſpring from the Commixture of the four elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, four are ſimple, and thoſe be hot, cold, moiſt, and dry, which Phyſicians call the firſt Qualities; and of theſe, the firſt two be active, and the other two Paſſive. the other four are compound, and they be hot and moiſt, hot and dry, cold and moiſt, cold and dry. Now the equal temperament is divided into two, an Univerſal and a Special. The equal *Temperament Univerſal*, is, when the four Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided through the whole Body, Nature injoyning no more from the one, than from the other. The equal *Temperament eſpecial*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth moſt properly require, be it either plant or beaſt: in

Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements, which are proper to its kind, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwiſe, to have a hot plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrel hot, were a falſe and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewiſe Beaſts, that Horſe, that Dog, that Swine is ſaid to have his due *Temperament*, when he is of ſuch temperature as is moſt proper unto his kind, which is beſt diſcerned by his Actions, or Motions. As thus, the Horſe is known to be hot and moiſt by his Lightneſs, Swiftneſs, Valiantneſs, and long Life, and alſo to be of a temperate nature, in that he is eaſily Tamed, Docible, Obedient and Familiar with the Man. And ſo long as either Horſe, or any other thing, continueth in the Mediocrity and Excellency of his proper Temperament, ſo long we may truly judge him of a good temper and diſpoſition; but if there be any over-flow of qualities, or exceſs in his humours, as either heat, coldneſs, moiſtneſs or drineſs, then we ſay, he is either a hot Cholerick Horſe, a cold Dull Horſe, a Drie Miſcheivous Horſe. Or a moſt Cowardly Horſe according to the over-flow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Again, every Horſe is ſaid to have his *Temperament*, according to his Age and the Country wherein he is bred, and ſometimes According to the time of the year wherein he Liveth. And thus a Horſe in his foal Age, which is till he be ſix years old, is naturally hot and moiſt; in his middle, which is till twelve, more hot and dry than moiſt; and in his old age, which is paſt eighteen, more cold and dry, then either hot or moiſt. So likewiſe, the Horſes which are bred in Southern parts, as either in *Spain*, *Barbary*, or *Greece* are naturally more hot than thoſe which are bred either in the ſeventeen Lands, *Germany*, or *England*; neither is there any Horſe, which is in good ſtate of body, that is ſo hot in the ſpring-time of the year, as in the Summer, nor ſo cold in the Summer, as the Winter. All which obſervations are with moſt curious diligence to be obſerved of every Horſe-leach, when he goeth about to cure any ſickneſs: for unleſs he conſiders their natures and temperatures, and every other circumſtance already declared, he ſhall right ſoon be deceived in the adminiſtration of his Phyſick. Therefore, I earneſtly deſire every Farrier, before he give any drench or portion, firſt to inquire the kind, race, and diſpoſition of the Horſe, next his age, then the Country, and laſtly, the time of the year: And ſo according to the truth thereof, to mix his receipts.

It is moſt expedient alſo, for every Horſe-leach to conſider the ſecond qualities, which are ſo called, becauſe they take their beginnings from the firſt qualities already declared; of which ſecond qualities ſome are called palpable, or to be touched, as theſe, ſoftneſs, hardneſs, ſmoothneſs, roughneſs, thickneſs, bricklneſs, Heavineſs, thinneſs, thickneſs, ſmallneſs groſneſs, and ſuch other like. Some again are not palpable, as thoſe which appertain to hearing, ſeeing and ſmelling, as noiſes, colours, odours, and ſuch like; and by obſerving well the ſecond qualities, he ſhall with much eaſe know whether the horſe be diſpoſed to any ſickneſs or not, as ſhall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. IV.

Of Humours, and to what end they ſerve.

NOW concerning *Humours*, which are the third compoſers of a *Horſes* body, and ſo likewiſe of every other beaſt alſo; you ſhall underſtand that they are four in number, that is to ſay, *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholly*. As touching *Blood*, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moiſt, and ſweet in taſte, participating of the Elements Water and Air, *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taſte, as participating of the Elements Fire and Earth. *Melancholly* is cold and dry, and in taſte ſowre and heavy, as participating of the Elements Fire and Air; *Flegm* is cold and moiſt, and either ſweet, or wallowiſh without any taſte at all, as participating of the Elements Water and earth: ſo that theſe four Humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the Elements. For to ſpeak briefly, and according to the manner of Phyſicians *Blood* is of the nature of the Air, in being moſt predominant therein; *Flegm* of the nature of the water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholly* of the Nature of the Earth. And albeit theſe Humours are ſymbolized or mixt through every part of the body, yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part than in another, and have their places of reſidence, abſolute, and particular to themſelves; as *blood* about the Heart; *Flegm* in the Brain; *Choler* in the Liver; and *Melancholly* in the *Spleen*. Now as theſe Humours do more or leſs abound, or have greater or leſſer ſoveraignty in the Horſe, ſo is the Beaſt naturally better or worſe coloured, qualified, or diſpoſed, as thus. That horſe in whom Blood hath the greateſt predominance,

that

and may be called a horse sanguine, is bright, bay of Colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horse in whom Flegm hath the greatest dominion, and may be called a flegmatick Horse, is for the most part of a milky white colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If Choler bear the greatest rule in his Constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrel, and by that means of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth have gotten power above the other elements, so that he may be called a Melancholly horse, then his colour is commonly a mouse dun, and his disposition cowardly, faint, and slothful. But because these particulars are properly appertaining to the Complexions of Horses, of which we shall have cause to speak more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relations; only I give you thus much in Conclusion: to understand that every one of these afore said Humours hath his proper use and end, whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Blood* serveth more properly to nourish the Body. *Flegm* giveth motion to the joynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an Appetite or longing to his meat. Now during the time that these humours do possess their natural qualities, so long they are wholsom, and be called by their simple names, without Gloss or Addition: but if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholsom, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly blood, Salt flegm, Choler adust* or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at last declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of Humours.

CHAP. V.

Of members and their several kinds.

TOuching *Members*, which are the fourth main instrument in this great fabrick of a Horses body, they are by Schooll-men divided into two parts. The first is called *Similaria*, which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing. The other is called *Instrumental*, and are contrary to the first.

Members alike, are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew,

sinew, and such like: for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is every part still flesh, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it be said of bones, sinews, and the like.

Now for Members instrumental, they be those which being made of parts semblable, and divided into parts, yet the parts are not alike, neither have one name with the whole; as the head, legg, foot and such like: For every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legg the legg, but have other appellations, as the Brow, the Temples, the Knees, the Feet-lock, *&c.* Now these Instrumental members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection then the Semblable Members: Wherefore Schoolmen have made amongst these Instrumental members, four Soveraigns or Princes above the rest; that is the *Brain*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular Body, and the fourth of the whole kind! the first three giving motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and increase to succeeding Ages.

Now from these principal members, like branches from a well-grown Tree, do spring other members, which do them Service: as from the Brain springeth sinews, whose office is feeling, from the Heart Arteries, whose office is sprightliness and lively-hood; from the Liver veins, whose office is warmth and strength; and from the Stones the seed-vessels, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these do likewise proceed a World of other members, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleens*, *Guts*, and such like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgion, than to the Physician, (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise ever studious Reader that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a Horse, that he turn to the second Book of this Volume, which treateth only of Chirurgery, and there he shall not only find every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomy so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of members.

CHAP. VI.

Of Powers, and how a Horses Body is governed by them.

POwers, which by some are called *Vertues*, or principal faculties, and do govern and controle both the body of man and beast, and have the fifth place in this Work, are in number three, that is, the *power Animal*, the *power Vital*, and the *power Natural*. The *power Animal*, is a vertue incident to the Brain, which through the Sinews coming like little conduit-pipes from the Brain, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the Body. The *power Vital* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth give life and Spirit to all the Body by means of the Arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the cheif Fountain of natural heat, carry in their little chanels over the whole body, that air and Spiritual blood which makes it full of lightness and alacrity. The *power Natural* is a vertue belonging to the Liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by means of the Veins, which do likewise proceed from the Liver, like greater conduits, carrying the blood from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, into every part of the Body. Besides, the *power Natural* containeth four other vertues, that is, the vertue *Attractive*, which draweth Food, meat to sustain the Body; the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the Food received; the Vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these Powers or vertues being of no less validity than you perceive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a more careful and vigilant respect unto them; for if one any of them fail, the Horse cannot live. Therefore, whensoever you see that either your Horse refuseth his Food, or that he cannot retain and keep his food, but casteth it up again; or that he doth not digest his food, but keeps it corruptly in his stomach; or that he cannot avoid his excrements in a natural manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certain signs of mortal sickness: and Thus much of Powers and Vertues.

CHAP. VII.

Of Actions or Operations, And whereto they belong.

AS touching *Actions*, or *Operations*, which are the sixth column or pillar which doth uphold this natural body of which we treat, they are not only belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediatly spoken of in the former Chapter, as thus: The action and operation of the *power Animal*, is to discern, to move, and to feel. Horses discern by means of the vertue *Imaginative*, *Discoursative*, and *Memorative*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the Brain, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *power Animal*. Horses move by means of the vertue *Motive*, whose action and Operation is to restrain, or let slack the sinews, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by means of the vertue *Sensitive*, whose action or Operation is busied in the five Senses, as to *See*, *Hear*, *Smell*, *Tast*, and *Touch*, and all these Actions Spring from the *Power Animal*.

The Action or Operation of the *Power Vital*, is to restrain and loosen the Heart, and the Arteries which proceed from the Heart, which Action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a Horses Body, is easily known of every good *Farrier*, or *Horse-Marshal*, by the unequal beating of his pulse; that is to-say, of the Arteries, which come down from the Heart to the insides of both his fore Leggs, a little below the Knuckles of his Shoulders, and likewise cross both the Temples of his Head, a little higher than his eyes. And if any man be so simple, to imagine that the thickness of the Horses skin shall be an impediment to the feeling of this motion; let him Remember, that as a Horses skin is thicker than a mans, so also are his Arteries greater, and beat with more violence, and so consequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The Actions or Operations of the *Power Natural*, are *to Ingender, to Encrease, to Nourish, to desire with Appetite, to Attract, to Change, to Digest, to Retain, and to Expel, and many other of like kind.* These Actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier*, to the intent that he may Learn by them, not only the whole estate of a Horses Body, but also what particular member thereof is evil affected, as thus: if either in your Horse you find much Forget-

fulness,

fulness, Unnimbleness of his Limbs, or Dulness upon Correction, it is a sign of sickness in the Brain, and that the *Power Animal* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do beat extraordinary slow, or much too fast, it is a sign that his heart is grieved, and his *Power Vital* evil affected: but if you find that he doth consume, pine away, and loseth his stomach, it is a sign that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power Natural* evil affected.

Now you shall again understand, that of Actions, some be *Voluntary*, some not *Voluntary*.

The *Voluntary* Actions be those, which a *Horse* may either further or hinder, stay or let, when themselves please, as the moving of the Leggs: for they may go, stand, or lye down at their own pleasure.

The Actions not Voluntary, are those, which depend not upon the will of any Beast, but be done of their own accord, and naturally, as the moving of the heart, and of the Arteries, and the passage of the Blood; the first, whereof beateth *Sleeping* and *Waking*; and the other hath his course every minute. And thus much of the Actions and *Operations*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Spirits, and in what part of the Horses Body they remain.

SPirits, which is the seventh natural Builder of this natural Work, are to be understood, to be that fine, pure, clear, and Aery substance which is engendred of the finest part of the Blood, whereby the vertue of every principle Member may visit all the other parts of the Body, making them to do their duties, according to the Rules of Nature. Now of Spirits, according to the Opinion of some Physicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit Animal* and the *Spirit Vital*: The *Spirit Animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Brain from whence through the sinews, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: and it is engendred of the *Vital Spirit*, being more vehemently wrought and Laboured, and partly of continual breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Caul* of the *Brain*, which doth hourly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit Vital* is contained in the Heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the Body, being the chief cause of all natural heat: and it is preserved and nourished both by breathing and blood.

To

To these two Spirits, there be most *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third Spirit, and call it the *Spirit Natural*, saying, it hath his residence in the *Liver*, and the veins, but the two former are of such *Power*, and have such Superiority; that the Body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: Wherefore, it is the Office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines, to have some comfortable Simple, which may maintain and keep the Spirits in their full strength, lively-hood and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven natural things which compact a natural Body.

CHAP. IX.

Of the six things not Natural, how they Profit, and how they Hurt.

HAving spoken of the Natural things, whereof a Horses Body is Compounded, it is needful now that we speak something of the other six which be not natural, so far forth as they concern the Office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters we have not to do. The first thing then which is not natural, yet preserveth a Horses Body in good state, is the Air, which being pure, sharp, clear, and piercing, giveth great life and nourishment to a horse: but being contrary, that is, gross, thick, and full of putrefaction, it cannot choose but alter the good habit of his body, and breed in him many Infirmities: Therefore every *Farrier*, shall have great respect to the Air wherein a Horse either liveth, or was bred in, as if a Horse that was bred in a Hot Air, Come to Live in a Cold, and through the Exchange grow sick, the *Farrier*, shall by warm diet, close house, and Moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: Also when a Horse exceedeth in any of the four qualities, that is, in heat, moistness, Coldness, or Drines it is best for him to live in that Air which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly, in many Diseases, the change of the Air is most wholesom, as shall be shewed at large in the particular Diseases.

For the Meat and Drink of a *Horse*, which is the second thing not Natural in a Horses Composition, it is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, clean, and good, as bread well made and baked, dry *Oats*, dry beans, dry Pease, sweet Hay, sweet Straw, or short Grass, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the *Horses* body: But if it be fusty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barly,

then muſt he needs be unſound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* ſhall be careful to keep him from all ſuch Food, as breeds naughty evil blood. As for his water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy, thick, and pleaſant, ſo much the more unhealthful.

Now for this Moving and Reſt, that is, either his Travel or Standing ſtill, which is the third thing not natural in a Horſes compoſition, doubtleſs they be great *Preſervers* of a Horſes Health: for as moderate Exerciſes diſſolve groſs Humors, ingender Appetite, and add ſtrength unto the Limbs, ſo likewiſe indifferent Reſt cauſeth Digeſtion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the Heart cheerful againſt inſuing Labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate Travel or Exerciſes, when a Horſe is Ridden beyond his ſtrength, breedeth many dangerous and mortal ſickneſſes, as the Foundring in the Body, the Conſumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten *Greaſe*, and ſuch like, beſides the piſſing of *Blood*, *Mangineſs*, *Farcy*, and ſuch like: All which inward Diſeaſes crave ſtrong *Purges*, and the outward *Sharp* and *Corroding* Medicines. Immoderate Reſt, which is, when a Horſe doth ſtand long ſtill without any Exerciſe, Feeding foul and groſly, is as great an enemy to a Horſes health as the other: For it congregateth and bindeth together all ſorts of ill humours, breeds corruption in the Blood, Rottenneſs in the Fleſh, and generally as many Diſeaſes as any ill Diet whatſoever.

The Sleep or Watch of a Horſe, (which is the fourth thing in our Compoſition) is ſo neceſſary a comfort to a Horſe, that he cannot live without it: it is the greateſt mover of Digeſtion; and ſo conſequently gives comfort to the whole Body. For whilſt the Horſe ſleeps, the powers Animals do take their Reſt, which otherwiſe would be over Wearied, and neither able to diſcharge their Duties nor to continue their Actions and Operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only: and whilſt a Horſe doth ſleep; the powers Natural have more Liberty to do their work, in Concocting the Meat and comforting the Body, inſomuch as I account ſleep to be the only quieting of the Senſes, ordained by Nature to ingender ſtrength. Sleep is begotten by ſweet, fatty and groſs Vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raiſed from the Heart to the Brain; with the Coldneſs of which Brain, thoſe Vapours being congealed and thickned together, do ſtop the pipes of the Senſitive Spirits, ſo as they cannot reſort to the Inſtruments of the Senſes, to give the Body Feeling and moving, whereby the Body at that time is deprived of thoſe Motions.

And

And according as those Vapours do more or less fill the Pipes, so is the Horses sleep more or less sound and undisturbed; but when this shall sleep at any time grow into excess, and you shall perceive a Horse to sleep beyond both Nature and Custom, then you shall know that such sleep cometh from an evil habit of the Body, and is a sign either of a *Lethargy*, and a numness of the Spirits, or else that he hath some inward grief and pain in his Limbs when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him covet a continual rest and sleeping. Now for the Watch of a Horse, because it is the meer contrary to sleep, there needs little to be said more than this; that as the excess of the one sheweth the want of the other, so the natural wanting of either, shews the evil state of a horses Body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing sickness.

Now for emptiness and Fulness, (which is the fifth not natural Compositor) forasmuch as it is only an adding to, and taking away; some *Farriers* have held opinion, that all Physick belonging to a Horses body, consisteth in them two only; and truly I am of this mind, that whosoever can take away Corruption, and add Perfection, shall without doubt ever keep an able and substantial Body. But to our purpose, of this Fulness there are two sorts, the one fulness by excess of Humours, the other fulness by excess of Meat; either of which perturbing the Spirits, are the grounds of sickness. Again, excess of humours are of two kinds, the one an equal encrease of all manner of Humours gathered together, and the other particular excess, either of too much *Melancholly Flegm*, or other Watrish Humours whatsoever, the first being termed an abundance of humours, the latter an excess of evil Juice or Nutriment. Lastly, there is fulness in quantity and fulness in quality. Fulness in quantity, is, when a Horse is full of Blood, or any other simple humour. Fulness in quality, is, when any of these humours are too hot, or too cold, too gross, or too thin. Now for emptiness, as all Diseases of Fulness must be cured by it only, so all Diseases of Emptiness must be healed by Fulness, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a World of such like, as shall be very largely set forth hereafter, in its proper place.

Lastly, touching the affections of a Horses mind, you shall understand, that so far forth as the Sensitive Soul doth stretch, so far they have sense and feeling of Affections as namely, to Love, to Hate, to be angry, to Rejoyce, to be sorry, and to Fear: For all which there needs

needs no great *Apology*, sith, we have it in daily Experience: as who seeth not the love of some *Horses* to their keepers, their hate to Strangers, their Angers in their Sights, their joyes in their Prides and Wooings, their sorrows in their Sicknesses, and their fear, unto their Riders; now these Affections, sith many times they are the grounds of strange Motions in the body; therefore, they ought carefully to be looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the *Horse be not overpressed with any of Them*; especially fear and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the blood and Spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without sense or feeling; and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce and raging; both together breed distemperature in a Horse, and those distemperatures ingender mortal sicknesses. *And thus much for these six things, being held not Natural in a Horses Composition.*

CHAP. X.
Of Horses Complexion.

HAVING spoken of those Thirteen Natural and not Natural things, whereof a Horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speak of the Complexions of Horses, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of a Horses Infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the Colour of the Horse, you shall ever judge his Complexion: For, look which of the Elements is most predominant in him, from that Element we draw his Complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other elements, then we hold him to be a Cholerick Horse, and his Colour is either a bright *Sorrel*, *a coal Black* without any white, or an *Iron Gray* unchangeable, that is, such a Gray as neither will ever turn a Dable-Gray, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and these Horses are of Nature *Light*, *Hot*, *Fiery*. and seldom of any great strength; these Horses are much subject to pestilent *Feavers*, Yellows, and Inflammations of the Liver. Wherefore every Farrier shall be careful in his composing of any Medicine for such a horse, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the Portion or Drench; because, the Horse being in his best strength not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him, that little

strength

strength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole Body.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Air, than of the other Elements, then he is of Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is Either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mayly Mouth, nor white Flank, or a white Flea bitten, white lyard like Silver, or Black with a white *Star*, white Rach, or white Foot. These Horses are of Nature *Pleasant*, *Nimble*, *Free*, and of good *Strength*. The Diseases to them most incident, is Consumption of the Liver, *Leprosie*, *Glanders*, or any Disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong Constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Water, than of the other Elements, then is he of a Flegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk vvhite, a Yellow dun, *Kite-Glewd*, or a *Pydeball* in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours, that is as much white as of the other Colour. Otherwise, if the Bay, the Black, or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that Complexion of which the Colour is greatest. These *Horses* are of Nature slow, and apt to lose flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them, are *Colds*, *Headach*, *Reumes*, *Staggers*, and such like. They are able to indure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *Flegm* which is in them, sufficeth both nature, and the portion to work upon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: The first, because it bindeth too soon; the latter, because it disperses too suddenly, therefore simples of a moderate mean are the best.

If the *Horse* participate more of the Earth, then of the other Elements, then he is of a Melancholly complexion, and his Colour a *Mouse-dun*, *Russet*, *Chesnut*, *Ashy*, *Gray*, *dark Bay*, with *mayly Mouth*, *Red* or *white* Flank, or a *Reddish Bay*, having long white *Hair* like *Goats Hair*, growing on his Leggs. These Horses are of nature heavy and faint-hearted; The Diseases to them most incident, are Inflammations in the *Spleen*, *Frenzie*, *Dropsie*, and such like. They are commonly of better strength, than they will suffer to appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable Medicine: all Cicatrizing and Dry simples are hurtfull unto them; the Cold and Moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these four Complexions, *Cholerick*, *Sanguine*,

Sanguine, *Flegmatick*, and *Melancholly*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now, that amongst *Farriers* there is another complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is called the Composition or mixture of complexions : That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser than another, and this Complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this complexion, is ever of one of these Colours ; that is to say, either a fair brown bay, Dabled, or not dabled, a dabled gray, a Black full of Silver Hair, or a fair *Roan*, *Red* or *Black*. And these horses are of *Nature* most excellent, most Temperate, Strongest, gentlest, and most *Healthful* : though they may have any *Disease*, yet are they *Naturally* inclined to no *Disease* : But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is *Meerly Accidental*, and not through any overflow of natural distemperature. All *Medicines* must be compounded for them, according to the *Nature* of the *Sickness*, and the time of their *Languishment*. For if the *Sickness* be *Young*. and New *Bred*, Then they are *Able* to receive any well composed *Receipt* ; *But* if it be *Old*, and the inward *Powers* and *Faculties* feebled, then you must be Careful to help *Nature*, by adding to every *Medicine* of *What* Nature soever, some *Simple* of *Comfort*, that, As ill *Humours* be *Cleansed*, so *Strength* may still be repaired and *Maintained*. And thus much for *Complexions*.

CHAP. XI.

Of Inward Sicknesses, *the Causes, and several kinds thereof.*

SIth I have already passed over all those things which have a natural and perfect working in a Horses Body, and do maintain, uphold and preserve the same in good state and Health, except accidentally they be incountred and crossed by some Excess, Either in *Diet* or in *Exercise*, it shall now be *Meet*, that we begin to speak of the *Things* which be *Contrary* and against *Nature*, which are all those *Things*, whereby at any time the *Healthful* Estate of the *Horses Body* is any way impeached: and they be three in *Number* ; that is, the *Causes*, the *Sickness*, and the *Accidents*, which follow every *Sickness*.

Now the *Causes* of *Sickness* are all *Unnatural Affects*, and evil dispositions, which going *Before*, do as it were by *Violence*, bring *Sickness* after them: and of these *Causes* there to be 2 *Sorts*, some *Internal*, some

some *External:* The Internal be those which breed within the Body of the *Horse*, as evil Humours, evil Obstructions, and evil Juyce, External are they which communicate with the outward parts of the Body, as Heat, Cold, Worms, and such like, of which I shall speak more in the second Book: And for so much, as I intend at the beginning of every particular Disease, to shew the Cause of that Disease, I will at this time speak no more of that subject.

Now for *sickness* it self, which is any thing that is contrary to Nature, it is divided into three general kinds: the first, an *Evil Temperature*, the second, an *Evil State and Composition*; and the Third, A *Loosing or Dividing of an Unity*. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speak in this place, because they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reserve for the second Book: But for the first kind, which is an Evil Temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either simple or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry: Compound, when more qualities than one do grow into excess, as for a horse to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moist. Again, sicknesses are said some to be long, as *Consumptions*, *Glanders*, and such like, which Linger and wear a *Horse* away by small degrees; Some short, as the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and such like, which as soon as they be perceived, so soon they be mortal.

Now of Inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole Body, some but particular parts: those which occupy the whole body, are *Feavers*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: those which occupy Parts or Members, are Colds which annoy the Head: Surfeits which perplex the Stomack: And so likewise all Outward infirmities, proper to every particular Member, as *Splents* upon the leggs, *Spavens* on the Hoofs, *Pearls* in the eyes and such like; as shall be amply shewed hereafter, with their several Cures. And thus much for sickness, and the several kinds thereof.

CHAP. XII.

Of the signs of sickness, and of what nature it consisteth.

THe signs and Faces, by which sickness is discerned, are many, and almost numberless: yet in the best sort, that I may, I will shew you such, and so many, as shall amply serve for any *Mans* understanding. Know then first that there be, according to the Rules

in Physick ? Four especial ways to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First by accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity and place of the Member grieved: for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or less in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then questionless it is diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too hot, too Cold, too Moist, or too Dry. Thirdly, when any Member of the Body is hindred from doing his Office; as when the eye cannot see, or the Foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by Excrements, as by his dung or Urine. But for as much, as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, Distract or Deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of People, I will briefly, and plainly shew you the most undeceivable signs of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus: If a Horse be slower in labour, or Duller to the *Spurr* than he hath been accustomed; If he be shorter-Breathed; If his Ears hang down more than they were wont; If his hair be more staring; If his Flank, be more than usually hollow; If he burn betwixt his Ears, or about his Pasterns; If in Travel his Stomach fail him, or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to be Foaming, become dry; all these are most apparent signs of Inward Sickness.

When a *Horse* holdeth down his head, which was wont to be of cheerful Countenance, it is a sign either of a Feaver, Head-ach, or else *Foundering* in the *Body*.

If a Horse be dimm of sight, which was clear sighted, it is a sign either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore-eyes*.

When a *Horse* turneth his head back-ward to the place grieved if it be to the *Right side*, it is a sign of *Obstructions* in the *Liver*: but if he turneth down to his Belly, then it is a sign either of *Cholick*, *Bots*, or *Worms*.

When a Horse hath water running from his mouth, it is a sign of the Staggers, or *Wet Cough*.

If a Horses breath stinks, or foul matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an *Ulcer* in the Nose or Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a sign of *Glanders*; if the matter be black, then it is a sign of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver*; But if he cast little Lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottenness of the *Lungs*.

If a Horses Body and Breath be hot, It is a sign of a *Fever*, and heat

heat of the stomach; if therewithall he forsake his Meat, it is a sign of Inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moist *Yellows*.

If the Temple of a *Horses* Head be very hollow, it is a Sign either of the *Strangle* or old Age.

Shortness of Breath, and a beating Flank, is a sign either of a *Feaver* or the *Strangle*, but if the passage of the throat be stopped, it is a sign the film of the *Lungs* is broken, and the Spleen troubled, or else broken-Winded.

If any thing lie on both sides the Fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a *sign* of the *Staggers*.

If there be any thing swelling about the Ears, it is a sign of the *Pole-evil*: swelling under the Ear, is a sign of the *Vives*; and swelling in the Mouth, a sign either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampasse*.

Swelling under the Throat, is a sign of the *Glanders*; and swelling about the tongue roots, a sign of the *Strangle*: But if there be about the Tongue roots, nothing but little small knots, like wax kernels, then it is a sign but of Cold only.

Swelling on the Left side is a sign of a sick *Spleen*. Swelling in the Belly and Legs, a sign of the *Dropsie*, and swelling in the Flanck, of *Cholick* only.

To Cough, or to offer to Cough, is a sign either of the *Glanders*, or the Mourning of the Chine, of a Feather in the Wesand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the Film broken, of the dry malady, of a Consumption, or of Foundring in the Body.

Staggering is a sign either of a *Feaver*, of the Staggers, or of Swaying in the Neck: But if he stagger or role behind only, then it is a sign either of Foundring in the Body, or of pain in the kidneys.

Trembling is a sign of a *Feaver*, or of a foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that a Horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold Water, hath during that time of trembling, a very certain fit of an Ague; and if any *Farrier* or other, will but observe it, he shall find that the Horse, after he hath done trembling, will burn and glow in as great Extremity, at least an hour and a half after; and some Horses after their burning will sweat also.

The Hollowness of a Horses back is a sign of a dry Malady, or the Dropsie.

Hair staring is a sign either of a cold *Stomach*, or of Foundring in the Body, but generally of a Cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a Horse stale with much pain, it is a sign either of Foundring

in the Body, the wind *Cholick*, or the *Stone*; and if the Urine which comes from him be *Yellow*, it is a sign of the *Glanders*, but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of a Pain in the Kidneys.

Leanness and *Gantness*, is a sign of *Hide-Bound*, or of a *Consumption*, of the dry *Malady*, of Foundring in the *Body*, Inflammation, of the *Liver*, the Yellows, *Cholick*, or *Worms*.

Laxativeness, or looseness of the *Body*, is a *sign* of a Hot *Liver*.

Costiveness in the *Body*, is a sign of dry Yellows, or of Diseases in the *Gaul*.

If a Horses *Dung* stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver if it have no smell, then of a cold *Liver*; but if it be undigested, then either of a *Consumption*, or of a dry *Malady*.

If a Horse go stiff, it is a sign either of Wrenching, Hipping, Stifling, or Foundring either in Body or *Legs*: If he go crouching behind, and stiff before, then the grief is in his *Fore-Legs*, but if he go only Weak behind, then is the grief in his hinder *Legs* only.

If a *Horse* desire *Extraordinarily* to lye down on his Right side, it is a *Sign* of *Heat* in the *Liver*. If on the *Left Side* then of a *Diseased Spleen*. If he be oft up and down, finding no rest, then it is a sign of *Bots*, *Worms*, *Cholick*, or *Griping* in the *Belly*; if when he is down, he spreads himself abroad, it shews the dropsie; if he groan when he is down, it shews either a sick *Spleen*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, *Bots*, or film broken; if he be not able to rise when he is down, then either mortal *Weakness*, or *Foundring* in the Body or Legs.

To be troubled with much *Wind*, is a sign either of grief in the Spleen or loss of much Blood.

If a *Horse* forsake his *Meat*, it is a sign either of a Feaver, Headach, Strangle, Staggers, Consumption or dry Malady, Anticor, Foundering in the *Body*, a *Hot* and consumed liver, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or the *Worms*; but if when he forsakes his *Provender*, he doth as it were *Chavel*, or *Chaw* a little *Hay*, and in his *Chawing* doth make a certain sharp Noise in his *Mouth*, as if his Tongue could not well part from the Roof without a kind of Chattering, it is then a certain *sign* that the *Horse* is troubled with the falling of the Pallet of the *Mouth*, a Disease which only cometh by over-much Travelling, or too sore a Burthen.

If a *Horse* desire to *Eat* much, and drink little, it is a sign of a *Cold Liver*, but if he desire to drink much, and eat little, it is then a *sign* either of a *Fever*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the Stomack, heat in the *Liver*, or the dry Yellows.

If

If a Horse both *Eat* and *Drink* with an *Extraordinary Greedines*s, it is a *Sign* of Rotten *Lungs*, or a *Diseased* Spleen.

Lazy, heavy-going, *Contrary* to true *Nature*, is a *Sign* either of a *Fever*, *Sick Spleen*, *Yellows*, or else *Obstructions* of the *Liver*.

If a Horse strike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a sign of the *Cholick*, but if when he striketh, he *Fisk* with his *Tail* also, then it is *Either Bots*, or rough *Worms*.

If a *Horse* be *Scabby*, and *Ulcerous* all over his *Body* and about his *Neck*, it is a *sign* of the *Mangy*: if it be an *Ulcer* full of *knots* creeping alongst a *Vein*, it is the *Farcy*, if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fistula*: But if it be a spungy *Wart*, full of *Blood*, it is then an *Anbury*.

If an Horses *Tongue* hang out, and be *Swoln*, it is a *Sign* of the *Strangle*.

To conclude, if a Horse in health beat short, thick, and fast in the *Slank*, it is a *Sign* of *Sickness* in the *Lungs* and *Lights*, which we call *Broken Winded*, with a *World* of other such like *Signs* and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

General Observations in the Physicking of Horses.

AFter you can by these *Signs* and *Characters*, judge and approve, either the health or sickness of a *Horse*, it is then necessary that you learn some *General Rules* and *Observations* which belong to the *Physicking* of a Horse; lest that either by your *Rashness*, *Unskilfulness*, or *Uncleanness*, in what you go about to do, you commit errors more *Gross* than the *Medicine* you *Administer* hath *Power* to do good. Know then first, that *Whensoever* you go about to give your Horse any inward *Potion* or *Drench*, you must first take very careful *Heed*, that your *Drink* be no *More* than *Milk* warm, for there is nothing more mortal to a Horse, then the scalding of his stomack. Next, you must be very carefull that you give the *Drench* easily and gently, lest in making too much *Haste*, the *Drink* pass into his *Wesand* or *Wind Pipe*, and so force him to an *Extream Coughing*, and almost *Suffocate* him; which if it do, *You* must then let his *Head* loose, and walk him up and *Down* till the passion be past. *Lastly*, you

you shall observe, in giving a Drench, to Draw out the *Horses* tongue before you put in the *Horn*, and then presently let it loose again; for that will compel him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used, when you give your *Horse* Pills, as Butter and Garlick, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Savin: Also, every Drench will work the better, the longer you keep the sick *Horse* fasting both before and after his Medicine; wherein is likewise to be Observed, that moderate Exercise, (as gently Walking, or Trotting up and down, according to the horses strength, after his Drench received) is most wholesome, and maketh the Medicines work a great deal the better.

You shall likewise Observe, if your horses *sickness* be a Feaver, to mix always your simples either with warm Water, with honey, or with Oyl, but if the Disease be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of Cold causes, then you shall mix your simples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your Horse be brought low and weak with *sickness*, then you shall mix your simples with Milk and Eggs.

You shall also observe, that in Blood-letting, you must take but half so much from a young Colt, as from an old horse, and but the fourth part from a Yearling Foal: Also in letting blood, you must carefully regard the Age and Strength of your horse, Taking more or less according to his Ability of Body. Lastly, letting of Blood is either to divert *sickness*, and preserve *Health*, or to refresh, and cool the Spirits, or to diminish Blood, or else to purge gross and bad Humours.

Observe, before you let your Horse Blood; first moderately to chase, or exercise him: then let him take rest a day before his letting Blood, and three days after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seasons of the Year for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe, whensoever you Rake your *Horse* with your hand, (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot Dung) that then, first you anoint all your hands with Sallet Oyl, or Butter: the like you must ever do when you put up any Suppositary; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister-pipe only. Many other Observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall find annexed to the several Cures of every Disease. Thus much then of these general Observations.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horse.

AFter you have made your Memory acquainted with the Sign and Observations before specified, and so in the end find a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these Signs, appeareth most certainly to be sick and diseased: My advice is then, (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the Sickness do not urge the contrary) that before you Administer any thing unto him, in any case you see his Urine, from which Urine you shall reap these Knowledges.

First, If the Urine of a Horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour like unto Amber, and therewithal somewhat strong smelling, and not very clear, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of Body, strong and healthful; but if it be extraordinary White, as it were Creamy, then it is a sign the Horse hath weak Reins, and is subject to the Stone, and the stopping of the Kidneys.

If the Urine of a Horse be somewhat high coloured, Bright and Clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a Cup of strong March Beer; then it sheweth the Horse hath Inflammation in his Blood, and that he hath either a Fever, or else some great Surfeit, but if it be red like Blood, then is his Inflammation more great, and his Surfeit is only an over-heat taken by over-riding; Insomuch, that if present remedy be not applied, either by Scouring or other healthful Physick, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortal sickness.

If the Urine of the Horse be of a pale greenish Colour, thick and slimy, it is a sign of a Weak Back, and consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, if the Horses Urine be high coloured, yet therewithal cloudy, and full of blackness, then it is a sign that the Horses *sickness* is *Mortal*, and hardly to be preserved by any *Physick*; but if the *Blackness* and *Cloudiness* of the Urine do not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a sign that the Violence of the sickness departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government that the Horse will recover his health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a horse, which is no less worthy of Note than the Urine; you shall first understand, that if

his Dung be ever of Alliance with his Food. I mean either in part or whole Coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for Example; if your Horse go at Grass, his Dung will ever be green, and the brighter such *greenness* is, and being in a mean between Hardness and Softness the sounder and in more perfect Estate the Horse standeth; but if the *Greenness* be bright, yet the Odure so soluble and loose, that it cometh from the Horse like Water, then you shall understand, that either the Horse hath eaten up some Feather, or else he hath an inward Coldness both in his Stomach and Bowels.

If a Horses dung be of a reasonable thickness, neither too Costive, nor too Soluble, yet the *Greenness* inclined to some *Blackness* it is a sign that the *Horse* hath a hot Stomach, and is easily subject either to the *Yellows* or *Staggers*.

If the Horses dung be in round hard Pellets, and of a *Blackish* green *Colour*, like the dung of a *Sheep*, or a *Deer*, then it is without fail, that the Horse hath had some great surfeit, either by over-Riding or by ill Food, or else is certainly possest either of the *Yellows*, or *Feaver*, or Foundring in the Body.

Now if your Horse be fed only upon Straw, then its Colour will be of a high-Coloured Yellow, rather Costive than Soluble, and the Grain thereof Long, and not well couched together: And all these be good signs of great Healthfulness; but if the Colour be inclined to Redness, or if it be exceeding dry without moisture, or if it be Thin, like the Dung of an Oxe or Cow, they all be apparent signs of inward sickness; but if the Redness turn to Blackness, and that his Ordure doth loose the strength of its smelling, then it is a great sign of Death and Mortality.

If your horse be fed with Hay and Provender, then your perfect and sound Dung will be of a Brown Yellow Colour, the Grain somewhat long, yet moist and well fixt together; but if the Brownness turn to Redness, it is a sign of distemperature; and if it turn to *Blackness* then of Death. Now for the Smell of this Dung, you must understand, that the more provender you give, the greater will be the smell, and the less Provender the less smell.

Lastly, if you feed your Horse only upon Provender, as bread, Oats, and such like, then the Dung which shews a perfect and a sound Body, will be of a pale yellow Colour, like coarse honey, firm, like a thick Salve, having within it when you tread upon it or breaks it little white Grains, like those which are in Sope; or if the dung

be

be harder, like the ordinary Ordure of a Man, it is not amiss : For both be signs of health and strength ; and if the dung look Red, then it is a sign that the Horse hath taken some inward Heat, and his Stomach and Bowels do rest still inflamed.

If his Dung be brown and slimy, or if it shine and look greasie, it is a sign that he hath had some of his inward Grease molten, and that it resteth and putrifieth in his Body ; but if with his dung, you see him voyd great clods and lumps of Grease, then you may be assured that his Grease was molten, but Nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worst Danger is past already ; but if the Dung be matter undigested, so that you may either perceive therein whole Corns, or whole bits of Bread, it is a sign the Horse hath either had a late Surfeit, or is entering into a Mortal Consumption. Lastly, if his dung be black, or have lost the Smell, it is an apparent sign of death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the several knowledges attained by them.

CHAP. XV.

Of Feavers in General; and the divers kinds thereof.

THat *Horses* have Feavers, and those Feavers of divers and sundry Natures, there is nothing more certain, as by strict Observation may daily be perceived, especially when we use either much travel, or disorderly diet: for questionless from these two and none other Heads, do spring most Feavers whatsoever. But first, that I may give you an account what a Horses Feaver is, you shall know that it is an unnatural and immoderate heat, which proceeding first from the Heart, disperseth it self not only through all the Arteries, but even the Veins of a horses Body, and thereby hindereth all the Actions and wholesome Motions of the same. Now of Feavers, some *Farriers* make three sorts. The first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of Nature : The second, those which breed in the Humours, being likewise distempered by Heat : And the third, those which breed in the firm parts of the Body, and are continually hot. Now I for your Better Memory, will divide them only into two parts, that is to say, Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The Ordinary *Feavers*, are all those which are bred either in the spirits, or in the Humours : as namely. *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Feavers continual*, *Feavers hectick*, *Feavers* in

Autumn, *Summer* or *Winter*. And the Feavers extraordinary, are all those which are bred in the firm parts of the Body, and are ever hot as *Pestilent Feavers*, and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Feaver accidental*, which proceedeth from the Anguish and pain of some mortal wound.

Now for the cause, from whence these *Feavers* do proceed, you shall understand, that all these which I call ordinary *Feavers*, do generally spring either from surfeit by extreme Labour, or some surfeit by naughty meat, as *Raw Pease*, *Raw Vitches*, *Raw Oats*, *Mouldy* and Unwholsome *Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they do proceed from the extreme Violence and heat of the Sun Beams, when travelling with disorderly haste, in the extremest heat of the Day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sun*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the Horse some *Mortal* inflammation; and for my own part, I have seen Horses fall down dead in the High-way: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more than their Labour, and the heat of the *Sun*. *Feavers* sometimes spring from a contrary Cause, as from extreme cold, in this manner: When a Horse in the Winter time hath been Travelled sore all the Day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his blood and inward powers are settled and cooled, you then presently, or the same night give him cold Water as much as he will drink, you shall see him out of hand fall unto an extreme Quaking, and from that Quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Feaver.

Now for extraordinary Feavers, they ever proceed either from Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air: And albeit these Feavers are not usually known unto our *Farriers*, yet they are as common as the former; only the violence of them is so great, and the Poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other Mortal sickness, as namely, the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and such like, which never are, but a Pestilent Feaver ever goeth before them: And they, Like the Marks of the Plague are seldome seen till the Cures be desperate; and then the unskilful *Farrier*, neither noting, nor knowing, if he did not, the effects of the Feaver, doth ever mis-call the name of the Horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, fails many times to do the good Office and Cure which he intendeth.

Now the signs to know the Feaver, be these: First he will ever hold down his Head, he will quake and tremble; but when his trembling

trembling is past, then will his Body burn, and his Breath be hot, he will breathe fast, and his Flank will beat, he will reell, he will forsake his Meat, his Eyes will be swoln and closed up, yet therewithal much Watering; his Flesh will as it were fall from his Bones, an his Stones will hang down low, he will oft lye down and rise up again: as his desire will be to Drink; yet at no time drink much, neither will he at any time sleep.

Now for the general cure of these general *Feavers*, you shall understand, that some *Farriers* use to let the Horse blood in the face, Temples, and Palate of the Mouth, and the first day to give him no Meat, but warm drink only, by a little at a time: And after the finest rass, or finest Hay wet in Water, keeping him warm, and often walking him up and dovvn in a temperate Air; and giving him good store of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barley sodden, Huskt and beaten; as you do Wheat before you make Furmety, and this Cure is not amiss; for it agreeth with the Antient experience of the *Italians*: but in our English Horses, (through the *Clime*, as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best Cure therefore that I have found, is, as soon as you perceive him to begin to shake, to give him the yolks of three or four Eggs, beaten with seven or eight spoonfuls of *Aqua-vitæ* to Drink, and then chafe him up and dovvn till his shaking be past, and then set him up close and warm, and with many Cloaths make him svveat an hour: Let his Food be Oats, very well dried and sifted, and once a day, some wash'd in Ale. If his shaking fit be past, before you perceive his sickness, you shall only give him a pint of *Muskadine*, and an Ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to povvder, and brevved together to *Drink*, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid, and giving him no vvater but such as is warm: and this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every fit, if you can note them, or else every Morning, if his sickness hath no ceasing.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Quotidian, or every days Feaver, and the Cure.

THe *Quotidian*, or every days *Fever*, is that which takes a Horse and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at first appear somevvhat Violent, but seldom or never endureth long, if the

the *Feaver* have any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreme Riding, either after water, or a full stomach; and then suddenly, after his heat, being thrust into a Stable, and neither stopt, nor rubbed, a suddain *Coldness* to that suddain Heat, begets a shaking, and so consequently, the effect of a Feaver.

The signs to know it, are Watrish and Blood-shotten eyes, short and hot breathing, Panting, Loathing of his Meat and Stiffness in his Limbs; but above these, to know it is a *Quotidian* you shall observe, that these signs, together with the sickness, will not last above six or eight hours in one day, and then he will be cheerful and in health again, till very near the same hour of the next day, at what time his fit will begin again. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the hours, the more hope there is of his health; as if it takes him at seven of the Clock of the one day, and at three of the Clock of the other, and so forth. The cure is, you shall only during his fit, give him nothing but a sweet Mash made of Malt and Water being lukewarm, and walk him gently up and down in a Temperate Air; then as soon as his fit is past; you shall set him up, and rub his body and Leggs exceedingly; then four hours after you shall give him this Drink: Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyl therein half a handful of Worm-wood, of long Pepper and Grains two ounces, of the best Treacle two Ounces, and of the Powder of dried Rue one Ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and strain it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder; then when it is luke-warm give it him with a Horn to drink. Do this twice at the least, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will Recover.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Tertian Feaver.

THe *Tertian Feaver*, is that which cometh every other day, holding the Horse with one sick day, and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer Lasting; it happeneth oftest in the spring time of the year, when Blood begins to encrease, and most commonly to Colts and young horses. It proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of Rankness, and ill Blood. The signs to know it, are all the signs formerly spoken of, and this is the chiefest, that the horse will be apparently sick,

sick, as it were on the Monday, then apparently well on the Tuesday, and sick on the Wednesday following. This *Feaver* is never seen, but it beginneth with shaking. The Cure thereof, is, as soon as you perceive the horse begin to shake, you shall take a certain herb, or rather a Weed called Stone-crop, and bruising it in a Morter, take some four spoonful of the Juice thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to Drink: then walk him gently up and down in some temperate Air for an hour, then set him up, and with the help of Cloaths put him into a sweat for another hour, then cool him; and in any wise, till his fits leave him, let him Drink no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldst and driest Oats you can get, only upon his good daies before his fits come, keep him very long fasting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.
Of the Quartan Feaver.

THe *Quartan Feaver*, is that which some *Farriers* call a third daies sickness, as thus: If his fits begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday and sick again on the Thursday. It proceeds from the same Causes that the *Tertian Feaver* doth, yet in his working is not so apparently Violent, but of much longer Continuance: for if great care and help be not, these *Feavers* will last some a quarter of a year, some half a year, and some a whole year. There needs no other sign to know it, then the coming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the Cure, it is the self same which is described in the former Chapters, for the *Tertian Feaver*: only if his fits doth not leave him at the first taking of the Medicine, you shall then give it him again the second time, but not above thrice at the most in any wise.

CHAP. XIX.
Of the Feaver Continual.

THe *Feaver Continual*, is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: For there is in it the effects of all the former Feavers, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many hours till the

the Fever doth begin again. This kind of continual Fever, most often springeth from some inflammation or Violent heat ingendred in the principal Members about the Heart: and the Signs thereof are Want of Rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certain Inflammations or swellings, which will appear about his withers and Flanks. The Cure is, first to purge his head by sneezing, the manner whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter hereafter: which done, you shall give him this Drink, take of Jer.mander two Ounces, of Gum Tragacant, and dried Roses, of each half an Ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto, of Oyl Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; and when it is lukewarm, give it the Horse to drink: then walk him a little space, and after set him up close and Warm, keep him from Cold Water, and let his Provender be dry Oats.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hectick Fever.

THE *Hectick* Fever in *Horses*, is a dangerous and mortal Fever, being in a *Horse* the first Original breeder of a Consumption; it is a certain Hot and dry Humour, which runneth between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding from a sick Stomach, which having been scalded with hot Drinks, as those ill dieted Running Horses be, which feed upon much Spice, (as those which take hot drenches upon every foolish and slight occasion) hath almost clean lost the power of Digestion: It sometimes happens to those Horses which Men too carefully teaching to Drink Beer and Wine, do so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subject to this sickness. The signs to know it; the horse will never eat with any appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue, you shall find it raw, and almost scalded; his Flesh will be loose and Flaggy, and his Body subject to a continual Trembling. The Cure is, first wash his Tongue either with the sirrup of Mulberries, or with Allom, running Water, Sage and woodbine Leaves boyled together, then give him fasting in a morning this drink; Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Garlick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Annis-seeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drink it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warm, and made sweet with Sugar-candy or Honey: let him

drink

drink no drink, but warm mashes of Malt and Water, and let his meat be sweet Hay, or green Corn blades: and ever after his Medicine, let him be chased a little, kept fasting two or three hours, and stand warm and well cloathed.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Fever taken in Autumn, or the fall of the Leaf.

ALL these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to Horses in the Spring-time of the year, by reason that the new Blood is ever aptest to be inflamed: yet Notwithstanding, we find by Experience, that Fevers will sometimes come at the fall of the Leaf, which we call *Autumn*, and they are of a longer continuance than the other. The signs are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same Fevers, only altering the time of the year. If therefore your Horse do chance to catch a Fever at the fall of the leaf, you shall let him Blood on his Neck-vein, and in the Palate of his Mouth, and you shall give him to drink the same drink which is formerly set down for the Fever-continual, and there is no doubt of his Recovery.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Fever taken in the Summer-season.

A Fever taken in the Summer-season, is the worst of all Ordinary Fevers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the Dogdays; because according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious: the especial signs of this Fever are that his Arteries will beat most palpably, and whersoever he staleth there you shall perceive he sheddeth his Seed also. The Cure According to the Antients, is to let him Blood in the great Vein which he hath on his hinder Haunch, almost four Inches beneath his Fundament; but for mine own part because that Vein is not easily found by every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking, they may cut the Arterie, instead of the Vein, I hold it fully as good to let him Blood on the Neck-Vein, which done, give him this Drink two hours and a half after; Take the Juice of a handful of Purslane, and mix it with Gum-Tragacant, Annisseeds, and Damask Rose-

leaves beaten to Powder; then put them into a quart of Strong Ale; made sweet either with Sugar-candy, or Honey, and fail not to give him this Drink three morning together, keep the Horse warm during his Sickness.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Fever taken in the Winter season.

A Fever taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the Life of a Horse, as the Fever before mentioned; yet it is a Fever which will continue long, and ask great Circumspection in the Cure: the causes thereof, are the same which are formerly described; and the signs are no other than hath formerly been declared. Touching the Cure, it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him sneeze, that done, you shall let him Blood both in the Neck and the Palate of the Mouth, and then two hours and a half after give him this drink: Take of Rue three Ounces, of round Pepper half an Ounce, of Bay-berries, and the seed of Smallage, each half an Ounce, boyl these in White Wine, and give it him to Drink Luke-warm. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new Milk, and to put therein two Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of Saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seed of Smallage a spoonful, and to make him drink it lukewarm; but the Horse which taketh this drink, must be good in strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The Antient *Italians* did use for this Fever, to give this Drink: Take of *Aristolochia* half an Ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyssop, Worm-wood, of Southern-wort, of each half an Ounce, of dry fat Figs three Ounces, of the seed of Smallage an Ounce and a half, of Rue half an handful, boyl them all with running water in a clean Vessel, till almost half be consumed; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, strain it, and give it the *Horse* Luke-warm. Now there are not any of these drinks but are sufficient for the Cure; but the first is best. Now for his diet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drink be only warm mashes of malt and Water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the Horse to any weakness, you shall then to comfort and quicken the natural heat of the Horse, rub and chase all his Body over, either in the Sun, or by some soft Fire, with some wholesome Friction, of which Frictions you shall find choice in a particular Chapter here-

hereafter following together with their several natures aud uſes.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Fever which cometh by Surfeit of meat only.

THe Fever which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only, without either Diſorder in travel or Corruption of Blood, is known by theſe ſigns: the horſe will heave and beat upon his Back, his breath will be Short, Hot, and dry, and his Wind will dravv only at his Noſe with great violence. The Cure therefore is, you ſhall let him Blood in his Neck, under his Eyes, and in the Palate of his Mouth, you ſhall alſo purge his head by making him ſneeze, then keep him with very thin diet, that is, let him faſt for more than half of the day, and let him not drink above once in four and tvventy hours, and that drink to be vvarm Water; you ſhall alſo once or tvvice chafe his Body vvith a wholſom Friction; and if, during his Cure, he chance to grow coſtive, you ſhall cauſe him to be raked, and afterward give him either a Suppoſitory, or a Cliſter, of both which, and of their ſeveral natures, you ſhall read ſufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Fevers extraordinary, and firſt of Peſtilent Fevers.

WE find by many Antient *Italian* Writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Countrymen, have by experience found many Horſes ſubject to this Peſtilent Fever, which is a moſt contagious and peſtiferous diſeaſe, almoſt incurable; and for mine own part I have ſeen it in many Colts and young Horſes. Surely, it proceedeth as I judge, either from great corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air. The ſigns thereof be, the Horſe will hold down his Head, forſake his Meat, ſhed much Water at his Eyes; and many times have ſwellings or Ulcers riſing a little below his Ear roots. The Cure is, firſt you ſhall not fail to let him Blood in the *Neck-vein*: then two or three hours after you ſhall give him a Cliſter, then make him this Plaiſter: Take of *Squilla* five Ounces, of Elder, of *Caſtoreum*, of Muſtard-ſeed, and of *Euforbium*, of each two Ounces, diſſolve the ſame in the Juice of daffodil and Sage, And lay it all about the Temples of his Head, and between his Ears: then give

him to drink for three or four days together, every Morning, two Ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muscadine.*

The *Italians* use to give him divers Mornings, a pound of the Juice of elder roots, or instead of his *Hay*, a good quantity of that *Herb* which is called *Venus hair*; but if the time of the year be such that they cannot have it green, then they boyl it in water and strain it, and give it him to Drink, but I hold the first *Drink*, to be most sufficient, his *Diet* being thin, and his keeping warm.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Plague and Pestilence in Horses, of some called the Gargil or Murrain.

THis Pestilence, Murrain, or Gargil in Horses, is a contagious and most infectious *Disease*, proceeding either from surfeit of Heat, Cold, Labour, Hunger, or any other thing breeding Corrupt humours in a horses Body, as the holding too long of his Urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon gross, foul, and corrupt Foods, as in low grounds, after floods, when the Grass is unpurged and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evil Influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the earth, and Cattel too sometimes, and from divers others such like Causes; but howsoever, when the *Disease* beginneth, certain it is, that it is most infections, and if there be not care and prevention used, of multitudes, it will not leave one. Not any of the Antient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, do or can shew me any sign or token to know this Disease, more than that one or two must first die, and then by their Deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow; but they are mistaken: For this disease is as easily known by outward signs, as any Disease whatsoever; as namely, the Horse will begin to lower and hang down his head; and within two or three days after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his Ear roots, or under the roots of his Tongue, and that swelling will run universally over all one side of his Face, being very extreme hard and great. Moreover, all his Lips, Mouth, and Whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his Breath will be strong, and stink exceedingly.

The *Cure* of this *Disease*, according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French men*, is first to separate the found from the sick, even a far distance from that Air where the sick Breatheth; then let him

Blood

Blood in the Neck veins, and give every one severally to drink, two spoonful of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of strong *Sack*, of the composition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular Virtues thereof, you shall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and dissolve into it two Ounces of the best Treacle and it will serve the turn. Questionless these Medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great preservatives against all infections.

Now that which I have found far to exceed them, and to be most Excellent, not only for this Plague amongst horses, but for the Plague or Murrain, (of some called the Mountains-evil) amongst Beasts, is this; Take a good quantity of Old Urine, and mix therewith a good quantity of hens Dung, stir them well together till the Dung be dissolv'd: then with a horn give to every Horse or Beast a pint thereof lukewarm. This have I seen help hundreds.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Fever accidental, coming by some Wound received.

IF a Horse shall receive any grievous and sore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindred, certain it is, that the pain and anguish of such Wounds will bring a Horse to a Hot Fever, and then his Life is in great danger: Besides a Horse being naturally subject to moist Distillations in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and Ulcers, through the pain whereof a Horse will fall into a burning Ague.

The signs whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The Cure besides the remedies before mentioned, is, to let him Blood under his Ears, and in the Mouth: And then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steep it in Muskadine, and compel him to swallow them: It shall also be good, if once in three days you steep your Manchet in Sallet Oyl, and make him eat it. As for his drink, let it be only warm Mashes of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drink, you shall then give it him with an horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

One general, certain, and approved Cure for all the Fevers and Sicknesses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Author's breast.

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, diversities, Natures, Signs, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the Ignorance of some so great that they cannot discern; the Sloth of others such, that they will not indeavour to discern: and the Folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern: I will shew you here, one general certain, and approved Medicine, for all Fevers of what Nature or Violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signs formerly rehearsed, that your Horse doth [illegible] you shall presently let him Bleed in the Neck vein [illegible] let him bleed well, then three Mornings together after (the Fast being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder called *Diapente*, (the Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter together with the Vertues, and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pint of Muscadine, and so give it the Horse to drink with an Horn: then let him be Ridden or Walked abroad for an hour; after he cometh in, give him any meat whatsoever that he will eat. After give him a sweet Mash. In the Evening perfume his head with a sweet perfume: The Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter; at Night rub all his Limbs well with hard Wisps, and his head and nape of the Neck with a coarse harden Rubber, then feed as afore him. And this do three days together, and without doubt health will come suddenly.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Diseases in the Head.

AS a Horses Head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the Panicles, or thick skins, which cleave to the Bones, and [illegible] the whole Brain, are subject to Head-ach, Meagrim, Dizziness, Mazes; the whole Brain it self is properly subject to [illegible] Madness, sleeping evil, the taking and [illegible]

to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approved good skill have strongly held opinions, that horses have very little or no brains at all : And my self for mine own part, being carried away with their Censures, did at last, upon good Consideration, cut up the heads of divers horses, some Dead, some in Dying, and could never find any Liquid or thin Brain, as in other Beasts, but only a very thick, strong, tough, and shining substance solid and firm, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be only a Panacle, and so resolved with others, that a Horse had no Brain: But after, Upon further discourse with Men of better Learning, I had this Resolution given me : That a Horse being a Beast of extraordinary strength and ability, made even to endure the worst of all extremities, either by sore labour, or heavy Burthen, that Nature in his Creation had endowed him with Members answerable to such Vigour : As namely, that his Brain was not liquid and moist, as subject to fleet, or to be distempered with every small disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierc'd by any reasonable motion. And for the Panicles, they shewed me those thin skins over and besides that great substance: so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a Horse hath both Brain and a Panicle, and in them two are bred the Diseases before mentioned. Now in the Ventricles, or Cells of the Brain, and in those Conduits by which the lively Spirits give feeling and motion to the Body, there to breed the Turnsick, or Stirdy, the Staggers, the falling evil, the Night-Mare, the Apoplexy, the Palsie and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catarrh, or Rheum, and lasty the Glanders. And thus much of the Head in general.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Head-ach, or pain in the Head.

THe Head-ach is a pain that cometh either from some Inward cause, or of some Cholerick Humour gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or else of some extreme Heat or Cold, or of some sudden Blow, or of some noisome Savour. The signs are, the hanging down of the Horses Head and Ears, dropping of his Urine, dimness of sight, swoln and watrish Eyes. The Cure according to the opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him Blood in the Eye-veins, and to squirt warm water into his Nostrils ; and for that day give him no meat ; the next Morning fasting, give him warm

warm Water, and some Grass: at night give him Barley and Fitches mixt together, and so keep him warm till he be found: But this Cure I do not fancy. The best help is, first to make him sneez by Fanning him, then let him Blood in the Palate of the mouth, And keep him fasting at the least twelve hours after: Then pour into his Nostrils Wine, wherein hath been sodden *Euphorbium*, and *Pyrethrum*, and after feed him and keep his head warm.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Frenzy, and Madness in a Horse.

THe madness of a Horse, by the most antient and best approved Farriers, is divided into four Passions: The first is, when some naughty Blood doth strike the Panicle of the Brain but in one part only, it presently makes the Horse dull both in mind and sight, and you shall know it by this sign, the Horse will turn round like a Beast that is troubled with the Sturdy: the Reason being, Because the outside of the Head is grieved only. The second is, when the Poyson of such Blood doth infect the middle part of the Brain: Then the Horse becometh Frantick, leaping against Walls or any Thing. The third is, when that Blood filleth the veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as well the Heart as the Brain: then he is said to be mad-But the fourth and last is, when that Blood infecteth not only the Brain and *Heart*, but even the Panicles also, and then he is said to be Stark mad, which you shall know by his Biting at every man which comes near him, by his gnawing of the Manger and the Walls about him. And lastly, by tearing his own skin in pieces.

Now for the Cure, you shall cause him to be let Blood in all the lower parts of his Body, to draw the Blood from his *Head*; as namely, on the Shackle veins, the Spur-veins, the Flat veins, and the Thigh veins and you shall let him blood abundantly, then give him this Drink: Take the root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handful of Rue or Mints, and a handful of Black Elleborus, and boyl them in strong Red Wine, and give it luke-warm to the Horse in a Horn.

Some use to give Mans Dung with Wine, three Mornings together: And also to rub his Body over with a Friction at least twice a day, and not to fail to give him moderate Exercise.

Others

Others use to pierce the skin of his head, with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others as the most certain of all Medicines, use to Geld him of both, or one stone at the least, but I like it not for mine own part.

The Cure I have ever used for this grief, was either to make him ☞ swallow down hard Hens Dung, or else give him to drink, the Root or *Virga Pastoris* stamped in Water, and for his ordering during the Cure, I would have his Stable quiet, but not close, and his Food only warm Mashes of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest Diet is best.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Sleeping Evil, or Lethargy in a Horse.

THe Sleeping Evil, is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleep continually, depriving him thereby, both of Memory, Appetite and all Alacrity of Spirit. It is most incident to White and Dun Horses, because it proceedeth only from *Flegm*, cold and gross, which moistneth the Brain too much, causeth heaviness and sleep: There needs no other sign more than his sleeping only. The Cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great noises and affright; then let him blood in the Neck, and the Palate of the Mouth, and give him to drink Water luke warm, wherein hath been boyled Cammomil, Motherwort, Wheat-Bran, Salt, and Vinegar: You shall also perfume his Head, and make him sneeze, and anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Mustard mixt together: It shall not be amiss, if with the ordinary Water which he drinketh, you mix either Parsley seed, or fennel seed, for that will provoke Urine: you shall also bath his Leggs, and stop his Hoofs with Bran, Salt, and Vineger Boyled together, and applied as hot as may be, and his Stable would be lightsom and full of noise.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of a Horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

THose Horses are supposed by Farriers to be taken, or as some all it, Planet strook, which are deprived of Feeling or moving, not being able to stir any Member, but remain in the same Form as they were at their time of taking. Some hold it proceeding of Choler

and Flegm, when they are superabundantly mixt together, or of Melancholy Blood, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppress and sicken the hinder part of the Brain. Other antient Farriers hold, it cometh of some extreme cold, or extream heat, or raw digestion striking into the empty Veins suddenly: or else of extreme Hunger, caused by long fasting. The signs thereof are numbness, and want of motion before spoken of: As for the cause, it is diverse, for first you must note, whether it come of Cold or heat: If it come of Cold, you shall know it by the stuffing and poze in the Head, which is ever joyned with the Disease: if of heat, by the hotness of his Breath, and clear fetching of his Wind. Now if it proceed from Cold, you shall give him to Drink one ounce of *Laserpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyl and Muskadine lukewarm: if it proceed of heat, you shall give him one Ounce of *Laserpitium* with water and Honey luke-warm: But if it proceed of Crudity, or any raw digestion, then you shall help him by fasting: and if it proceed of fasting, then you shall heal him by feeding him often with good Meat, as with wholsome Bread and dry Oats; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good stomach.

Now for the *French* Farriers, as Monsieur *Horace* and the rest, who call this Disease *Surprius*, they hold, it cometh only from Cold causes, following hot accidents, and they use for their Cure to let him blood on the Breast veins, and then put him into a sweat, either by Exercise, or multiplicity of Cloaths, but many cloaths are better, Because the horse is not capable of Labour: And sometimes they will bury him all save his head in an old Dunghil, till through the heat thereof his Limbs receive such feeling, that he begins to struggle out of the same. All which Cures are not much amiss; Yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way. First, to let him blood in the Neck and Breast, then to anoint all his Body with Oyl *Petrolium*, then give him this Drink. Take of Malmsey three pints, and mix it with a quartern of Sugar, Cinamon, and Cloves, and let him drink it luke-warm, then take old Rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet Hay, and with Cloaths, Surfingles and Cords, swaddle all his whole Body over with the same of a good thickness, and renew it once in three days till he be whole; let his Stable be warm, his Exercise moderate, and if he grow costive, let him first be raked, and after give him either a Clister, or a Suppositary, according to his strength, There is also another kind

of

of taking, and that is, when a Horse is Planet-strook, or stricken with Thunder: but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speak further of it. The last kind of taking is when a Horse is shrow-run, that when a horse lieth sleeping, there is a certain Venemous field-Mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, and her Feet shorter of the one side than the other. This Mouse if she happen to run over any of the Limbs of the horse, presently the horse loseth the use of that Limb she ran over, and if she run over his Body, he commonly loseth the use of his hinder loins: and these accidents having been often found unexpected common Farriers have held the horse to be taken, or Planet-strook. As for the Cure thereof, the best is to seek out a Brier, which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or Beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine own part, I have heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the Cure, but I have had no experiencce of it, but only in one young Foal which being suddenly Lame, was as suddenly helped, to my much Contentment.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Staggers.

THe *Staggers* is a dizzy madness of the Brain, proceeding from corrupt blood, or gross, tough and heavy Humours, which oppress and make sick the Brain, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous Spirit, dissolved by a weak heat which troubleth all the whole head: it is almost of all Diseases the most common, yet very Mortal and dangerous; it cometh many times from surfeit of Meat, surfeit of Travel, or from corruption of blood. The signs to know it is Dimness of sight, swoln and watrish Eyes, a moist Mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beuting of his head against the Walls, or thrusting it into his Litter. The Cure is divers: for almost every Smith hath a several Medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The Antient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, use to let the horse blood in the Temple-veins; and then with a knife make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore-head, Underneath his foretop, and raising the skin up with a Cornet, some two or three inches about, stop the hollowness with a tent dipt in Turpentine and hogs grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this Cure fail, except the Disease be very young, use to stop the

hollowneſs with Dock roots. Others with a Clove or two of Garlick. Others uſe for this Diſeaſe to take Selladine, and ſtamping it to ſtop it into his Ears, and ſo tye up his Ears, or ſtitch the tips of his Ears together, that he may not ſhake the Medicine out. Others uſe to mix Salt and Water together thick, and to put it into his Ears. Others uſe to mix *Groundſel* and *Aqua-vita* together, and to put that into his Ears. Others uſe to take Garlick, Rue, and Bay Salt, and beat them groſly, then mix Vinegar with them, and put it into the Horſes Ears, then wet Wool or Tow in the Medicine, and top that in his Ears alſo: let the Medicine reſt ſo four and twenty hours, and if he forſake his Meat, waſh his tongue with Vinegar, and it will recover his Stomach. Others uſe firſt to perfume the Horſes Head, to make him ſneeſe, then to take half a handful of Selladine, and as much Herb-of-Grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, and a little bay Salt, and ſtamp them together: then mix therewith two or three ſpoonfuls of Vinegar or Verjuice, and thruſt it hard into the horſes Ears: then tye up his Ears with a ſoft inkle ſtring, that no Air may come in, And let this Medicine remain the ſpace of a Day and a Night: then let him blood in the Neck-vein, and give him a comfortable Drench, of which Drenches you ſhall find great plenty, together with their uſes, in a Chapter following. There be ſome Smiths which only take Rue and Selladine, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them with white Salt, thruſt it into the horſe's Ear, and it helpeth. Others take an Ounce and a half of the Oyl of bitter Almonds, two drams of Oxe-gall, and a half penny in black Ellebor ſtamped, and five drams of the grains of Caſtoreum, Vinegar, and Verjuyce, ſeethe them altogether till the Vinegar be conſumed, then ſtrain them, and put it into the horſes Ears. All theſe Medicines have been divers times approved to be ſingular good, and for mine own part, I have found great effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times moſt Excellent, is, If the Diſeaſe be young and early taken, (that is, before the horſe be grown into an extremity of Weakneſs) to take only Verjuice and Bay Salt, and mixing them well together, to ſtop it into the horſes Ears. But if the Diſeaſe be old, and the horſe brought to a deſperate ſtate of Mortality, then you ſhall take Aſſa fætida, and having diſſolved it in Vinegar, warm it upon a Chafingdiſh of Coals, and with round balls of Tow, ſtuff it hard into the horſes Ears, and ſo bind them up for four and twenty hours, after which time give him a comfortable drink. Now where-

as

as some Smiths do use to stamp Aqua-vitæ and Garlick together, and stop that into his Ears: I for my part, think it too strong, except the horse be in great lust, and full of flesh, which if he be, doubtless it may do well enough; only for a general rule you must observe, ever to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, two or three Mornings together, and every time take a great abundance of Blood from him.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the falling evil.

THis Falling evil, or as the Italians call it, This *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in Men the *Falling sickness*, in Beasts the Falling evil: for it doth for a certain Season, deprive them of all sense whatsoever. It is a Disease not commonly incident to our English Races, but amongst the Italian, Spanish, and French horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best English Stables are furnished even with some horses of these Countries, I think it good to write something touching the Disease. It proceeds from cold and gross Flegm, gathered together in the fore-part of the Head, betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot vapour dispersed over the whole Brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose it to be governed by the Moon; and that by a certain course thereof, both horses and other Beasts do fall, and as it were die for a small time. The sign to know the Disease, is, the horse will fall suddenly, both through the Resolution of his Members, and the Distension of his Sinews, all his Body will quake and quiver, and they will foam much at their Mouths, yet when you think them past all hope of Life, they will still start up suddenly and fall to their Meat. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldom, you shall feel the Gristle betwixt his Nostrils, and if it be Cold, he will oft; but if it be warm, he will fall seldom. The Cure is, you shall first let him blood in the Neck-vein, taking good store of Blood away: then within four or five days after, you shall let him Blood on his Temple-veins, and on his Eye veins: then anoint all his Body over with a comfortable Friction, then bathe his head and Ears with Oyl de Bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the same put some into his Ears:

then

then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvafe, quilted with Woull to keep his head warm : then give him a Purgation or fcouring, of which you fhall find plenty in a Chapter hereafter : you fhall alfo force him to fneeze, but if the Difeafe notwithftanding continue ftill, you fhall then with a hot Iron pierce the skin of his Fore head in divers places, and after anoint it with fweet Butter, for thereby you fhall draw out the grofs humours which do oppreſs the Brain, and in any wife during the time that he remaineth in Phyſick, let his Stable be kept exceeding warm, and his Diet thin.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Night-Mare.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Night-Mare, is an infirmity which only troubleth the horſe in the Night ſeaſon, ſtopping the drawing of his Breath, in ſuch violent ſort, that with the ſtruggling and ſtriving he will be driven into a great ſweat and faintneſs · It Proceedeth, according to the opinion of antient Farriers, from a continual Crudity, or raw Digeſtion of the ſtomach, from whence groſs Vapours aſcending up into the head, do not only oppreſs the Brain, but all the Senſitive parts alſo. Now for my part, I Rather hold it an infirmity of the Stomach and inward Bowels, which being cloyed with much Glut and Fat, doth in the Night ſeaſon ſo hinder the Spirits and Powers from doing their natural Office, that the Beaſt having, as it were, his breath ſtrangled, doth with unnatural ſtruggling in his ſleep, put his Body into an extreme heat, and with that paſſion is brought to much faintneſs ; of which I have had much and continual experience not only in horſes, exceeding fat, and newly taken from the Graſs, but eſpecially from ſuch horſes as are either fatted upon Eddith Graſs, which in ſome Countrys is called after-Mathes ; or ſuch as are taken up fat in the Winter ſeaſon. The ſigns to know this Diſeaſe is, that in the Morning when you come early to your horſe, you ſhall find him all of a great ſweat, and his Body ſomething panting ; or perhaps you ſhall but only find him ſweat in his flanks, upon his Neck, and at the Roots of his Ears : either of both are ſigns of this ſickneſs, eſpecially if at Night when you litter him, if you find that he is dry of his Body, and giveth no outward ſign of inward ſickneſs. Now there be ſome that will Object againſt me, and ſay, that this infirmity is not the Night Mare, but

but an ordinary Infirmity ingendred by superfluity of Cold, Gross, and unwholsom Food, got in the Winter-season; which Nature, through the help of warm Cloaths, and a warm house, expells in this manner, in the Night-season. To this Objection I answer, that if they do disallow this sickness to be the Night-mare, that then without Contradiction, there is no such Disease as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but only a name without any substance or consequence; but forasmuch as this sickness is not only very usual, but also carrieth with it all the effects and Attributes ascribed unto the Night-Mare, and that it is as yet a Disease unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper Term than to call it the Night Mare. The Cure whereof is, every Morning and Evening, both before and after his water, to give the Horse some moderate Exercise, as to make him go at least a mile and more for his water; and after he is Watred, to Gallop him gently on the hand a good space; then when he is brought into the house, and well rubbed, to give him his Provender, (being Oats) and to mix therewith a handful, or better, of Hempseed, only in this Cure you must be careful, that your Exercise do not inforce him to sweat, nor shall you have need to use it longer, than you find that he sweateth much in the Night season. This exercise and Medicine will not only Cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Apoplexy, or Palsie.

THese Palsies or Apoplexies which happen unto horses, are of two sorts: the one general, the other particular. The general Palsie is, when a Horse is deprived of all sense, and moving generally over his whole Body, which is seldom or never found out by our Farriers; because the Mortality and suddenness of Death which pursues the Disease, takes from them, all Notes and observations of the Infirmity: and indeed, for the general Palsie, there is no Cure, and therefore there needs no Description of sign or Cure. For this particular Palsie, that is when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his Body, and most commonly it is but the Neck only, as both my self and others have found by daily experience. This Disease proceedeth from foulness of food, or from sen-feeding, which breedeth gross and tough Humours, which joyned with Crudities

and

and raw Digestions, oppress the Brain violently altogether: it also cometh many times by means of some Blow or Wound given upon the Temples of the Head. The signs to know the Disease are, the gathering together of his Body, going crookedly, and not straight forward, but seldom and holding his neck awry without Motion: yet never forsaking his Provender or Meat, but eating it with greediness, and much slavering. The Cure is, to let him blood on his Neck-vein, and Temple-vein, on the contrary side to that way he wryeth: then anoint all his Neck over with the Oyl Petrolium, and with wet hay Ropes swaddle all his Neck over, even from his Breast to his Ears, but having before splented his Neck strait with splents of Wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose: then for three Mornings together, give him a pint of old *Muldadine*, with two spoonfuls of this Powder to drink. Take of Opeponax two Ounces, of Storax three ounces, of Gentian three ounces, of Manna Succary three ounces, of Myrrh one scruple, and of long Pepper two scruples, beat them all these into fine powder.

Now there be some Farriers, which for this Disease use to draw the Horses neck on the contrary side with a hot Iron, even from the Neck to the Shoulder, and on the Temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little Scar in this manner , and from his Reins to his middle back, small lines in this manner

But I that know this sickness proceedeth from the Brain and Sinews, cannot conceive how any help should come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and straightned: And therefore I would wish every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unless he apparently see, that the skin it self through dislike and weakness, is shrunk also, and then the Cure is not amiss.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the general Cramps, or Convulsion of sinews.

THese general Cramps, or Convulsion of sinews, are most forcible Contractions, or drawings together of the sinews, and muscles: and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the Body, sometimes particularly, as but into one Member and no more: When they are generally dispersed in horses, they proceed commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is half cut and no more, and so there runneth

runneth a general Contraction over the whole Body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one Member, then they proceed either from cold Windy causes, or from the want of Blood. For the general contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall read the Cure thereof in the Book of Chirurgery following, where the sinew being cut in two pieces, the contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you shall know it by these signs: The Member will be stark and stiff, insomuch that neither the Beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: The sinews will be hard like sticks, and the Horse being down, is not able to rise during the time of the Contraction, he will also halt extremely whilst the fit is upon him, and presently go well again, as it were in one moment. The Cure is, to chafe the Member exceedingly, either with Linseed Oyl, Sheepsfoot Oyl, or Neatsfoot Oyl, and during the time of his Chafing, to hold up the contrary foot that he may stand upon the Limb which is most pained. There is also another Cramp or Convulsion of sinews, which doth extend into the Neck and reins of the Horses back, and so almost universal over the horses whole Body; It proceeds ever, either from some extreme cold, as by turning a horse suddenly out of a warm Stable, and warm Cloaths, into the piercing rage of the cold Winter, or by the loss of Blood, whereby great Windiness entreth into the Veins, and so benummeth the sinews: or else by too much Physicking and Drenching of a Horse, whereby the natural heat is much weakned or dried. The signs of this Convulsion be, his head and Neck will stand awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eat, and his back will rise up in the midst like the back of a Camel; the Cure hereof is, with great store of warm woollen Cloaths, as Blankets, and Coverlids, some folded double about his body, and some girded all over from his head to his tail, to force him into a sweat; but if the Cloaths will not force him to sweat, then you shall either fold all his Body over with hot wet Horse Litter, or else bury him all save the Head in a Dunghil or Mixon; then when he hath sweat an hour or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall anoint him all over with this Ointment, (holding hot Barrs of Iron over him, to make the Ointment sink into his Body:) take of Hoggs-grease one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder half a dram, of old oyl Olives one pound; boyl all these together; and use it being

made warm. There be other Farriers which use this Ointment: Take of new Wax one Pound, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Oyl de Bay as much, Opoponax two Ounces, of Deers suet, and of Oyl of *Styrax* of each three Ounces, melt all these together, and use it warm.

There be others which use, after his sweat, nothing but Oyl of *Cypresse*, or of *Spike*, and Oyl de Bay mixt together, and with it anoint his Body over. After this Unction thus applied, you shall take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two Ounces, of *Nitre* one Ounce, of *Laserpitium* as much as a Bean, and mingle all these together with a Gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart thereof to drink every Morning for four days. Now for his Diet and Order, let his Food be warm *Mashes*, and the finest Hay, his Stable exceeding warm, and his exercise gentle Walking abroad in his Cloaths, once every day about high noon,

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Cold or Poze in the Head.

THe Cold or Poze in a *Horses Head* is gotten by divers sudden and unseen means, according to the Temper and Constitution of the *Horses Body*, insomuch, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his *Horse* from that infirmity. Now according as this Cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of Humours which abound in the *Head*, and as those *Humours* are of thickness or thinness, so is the Disease and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand, that if the *Horse* hath but only a cold that is newly taken, the signs are, he will have many Knots like Wax Kernels between his Chaules about the Roots of his Tongue; his *Head* will be somewhat heavy, and from his Nostrils will run a certain clear Water; but if about his Tongue roots be any great Swelling or Inflammation like a mighty Botch or bile, then it is the strangle; but if from his Nostrils do issue any thick, stinking or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speak hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary Cold, which is ordinarily taken, (the signs whereof, besides his much Coughing, are before declared) you shall understand; that for the Cure being very easie, it is helped sundry ways: Some Cure it only by purging his head with Pills of Butter and Garlick,

lick, the manner whereof you shall find in the Chapter of Purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to sneeze, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of Neesing; which done you shall give him to drink Water wherein hath been sodden *Fenugreek*, Wheat-meal, and Anniseeds; and then to trot him up and down half an hour after. Others Use to give him Neesing powder, blown up into his Nostrils; and then this drink: take a pint of *Malmsey*, and the whites and yolks of four or five Eggs, a head of Garlick bruised small, Pepper and Cynamon, and Nutmegs, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of sweet Butter, mix them together, and give it lukewarm with a horn three days together: then keep him fasting at least two hours after. Others use to let the Horse blood in the vein under his Tail, and to rub all his Mouth over with a Bunch of Sage bound to a sticks end, and then to mix with his Provender the tender crops of black Berries; but I take this Medicine to be fittest for such Horses, who with the cold Rheume are troubled with pain in their Chaps, and not with stuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of these Medicines are faultworth, yet some for mine own part, I have ever found to be most Excellent for these slight colds, moderate Exercise, both before and after a Horses water in such sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-Mare, without any other fuming or drenching except I found the cold to be more than ordinary, and that for want of heed taking it was like to grow to some Ulcer about the Roots of the Tongue, In this case I would for one time and no more, give the horse a pint of Sack, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl made lukewarm, and well brewed with good store of *Sugar candy*, to drink in the Morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweat, and it hath never failed to work the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring me at any time of my Travail or Journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this Medicine, and you must notwithstanding Travail your Horse, then take a spoonful of *Tarr*, and folding it in a fine Cloath, fix or tye it fast to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffel, and so Travail your horse therewith, and it will take his cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his stomach.

CHAP. XL.

How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any Inward Medicine.

IF your Horse have taken any extreme Cold, or Poze in his Head, and being matcht either to Hunt, or to run for any great Water, the day is so near that you dare not give him any inward Drench, without which, none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold; you shall then, or at any other time, (for there is no Medicine in the World more Soveraign) take as much sweet Butter as a big Wallnut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searit, work them either with your Knife, or a Splatter together, till the Butter be brought to a high Cold-Colour; then take two clean Goose-feathers, the longest in all the Wing, and first at the quills ends, with a Needle, fasten two long Threds: Then with your Salve anoint all the Feathers clean over; which done in the dry powder of Brimstone role them over and over; then putting the Feathers ends foremost, open the Horses Nostrills, and thrust them up into his Head: then take the threds which are at the quills ends, and fasten them on the top of the Horses Head: which done, Ride him abroad for an hour or two, ayring him in this manner Morning and Evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tied up a pretty Season, untie the Threds, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next Occasion to use them. This Cure of all others is most certain, and taketh away any stopping in the Head how extreme soever.

CHAP. XLI.

The Perfection and best of all Medicines for Poze or Cold.

TAke (if you can get it) an Ounce of the fine and pure paste of Elicampane, which hath the strings at the Roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an Ounce of the Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a Horn in the Morning fasting, and then Ride him half an hour after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at Ordinary times: and thus do for two or three mornings together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

Of a Horse that is Hide-bound.

THis Disease which we call Hide-bound, is, when a Horses skin cleaveth so hard to his Ribbs and Back, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometimes from su feit of over Riding; especially if when he is extreme hot, he be suffered to stand long in the Rain or wet-Weather: And lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drines of the Blood, which wanting his Natural course, forceth his skin to shrink up, and cleave to the Bones. The signs, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leannes of Body, gauntnes of Belly, and the Standing up of the Ridgebone of his Back: It drieth up the Entrails, torments the Body, and makes his Dung stink extraordinarily: and if he be not remedied, Mangines will presently follow after it. The cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers Workmen: The most antient Farriers did use to let him blood on the Spur-veins, of both sides his Belly, somewhat toward his flank, which done, they give him this *Drink*: Take of white-wine, or strong Ale a Quart, and add thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, of *Cummin* one Ounce, of *Anniseeds* two Ounces, of *Licoras* two Ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warm with a horn; when he hath Drunk, let one chafe his Back, from the Huckle bone upward, for the space of an hour or more: then set him in a warm Stable, with good store of Litter; then fold about his Body a thick Blanket, soaked in water, and Wrung; then over it a dry Blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the sursingle about with great wisps, for the wet Blanket will put him into a great Heat, and for want of a wet Blanket, if you fold his body in wet Hay, it will do the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a Week, during which time he shall drink no cold water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet Blanket will anoint all the horses Body over with Wine and Sallet Oyl, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this Disease, use to let the horse Blood in the Neck, then bathe his sides with warm Water, wherein hath been sodden Bay Leaves: then anoint him all over with the Oyl of Rue or Camomile, holding a hot Iron

over

over him to make the *Oyl Sink* into his *Skin*, then give him this *Drink*: Take of *Carots*, *Rue*, *Wild Mint*, of each an *Ounce and a half*, of *Worm-wood* two *Ounces*; dry them, and beat them to *Powder*, then give two spoonfuls thereof in a Pint of *Malvesie*. Where be other *Receits*, which take *Fenugreek*, *Turmerick*, *Aristocas*, *Bay*, *Licoras*, and *Cumin*, of each a like quantity. dry them, and beat them to powder, and give the Horse two spoonful thereof with a quart of Ale or Beer luke-warm: Use this at least three Mornings together, and it will not only help the Disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the coming thereof: This drink is also good for a Cold. Now although every one of these *Medicines* are very good, yet for mine own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

First, let him Blood in the *Neck-vein*, then give him this Drink: Take two handfulls of *Celladine*, if it be in the Summer the Leaves and Stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take Leaves, *Stalks*, Roots, and all, chop them small, then take a handful of Worm-wood, and a handful of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beer, and boyl them till it come to a quart; then take it from the fire, and strain it till you have left no moisture in the herbs; then dissolve it in three Ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the Horse luke-warm to Drink: then for a Week together, once a day, rub all the *Horses* body over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and Beer, against the Hair, and feed him with warm masshes of Malt and Water, and for his Provender, let him have Barley sodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not until it sower.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Glanders.

TOuching this Disease which we call the *Glanders*, My Masters the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for some of them do hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the Kernels, which lie on each side of the Throat, underneath the Roots of the Tongue, near the swallowing place; and their Reason is, that because those Kirnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandulæ*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a Horse which is troubled with this Disease, hath great Kirnels underneath his Jaws,

easie to be felt, paining him so, that he cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling upon the Jaw Bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot. But both these Opinions I hold in part erroneous: For although our old Farriers might (according to the Custom of our Nation, which loveth inmitation of Strangers) borow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandula*; yet these Inflammations under the Chaps of the Tongue Roots, is that Disease which we call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they could call the *Strangle*, the *Quinsie*, or *Squinancy*, there is no such matter, neither hath an horse any such Disease, except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is far more fitter for the application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you shall understand, that it is a Running Impostume, engendred either by Cold, or by Famine, or by long Thirst, or by Eating corrupt or musty meat, or by being kept in Unsavoury Places, or is taken by standing with infected *Horses*. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt *Humours*, which runneth at the Nose; or may be said to be a flux of Rheum, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the Nostrils: the cause being, the Wideness of the passage, so that the Cold liberally entring into the Brain, bindeth it and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there to distil; which descending to the spiritual parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the Horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal parts; or else by congealing there by little and little, over-runneth the natural heat. Now that distillation, that by cold cometh from the Brain and breedeth this *Glanders*, is of three sorts. The first is a cold, which maketh indigested *Humours* to pass from the Brain, which cometh by taking off the Saddle suddenly when the Horse is hot, or by letting him drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his Body be dried: This distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is easie to be cured; for it is no inward *Ulcer*, but only abundance of *Humor*, the substance whereof is gross and white. The second is a great cold ingendred and congealed, causing *Humours* something thin and slimy, of the Colour of *Marrow*, Or the White of an Egg: this descendeth to the Throat, and lyeth there till it be discharged through the *Nostrils*. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the Colour thereof be yellow like a Bean then is the *Glanders* most desperate, and lyeth also in his

Throat,

throat: but if it be a brown or darkish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the Disease. To these three distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is *Dark*, *Thin*, and *Reddish*, like little *Sparks* of Blood: but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the Mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this Cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the Horses Nose: For if the humour be clear and transparent, so that it may be seen through, then it is not greatly hurtful, or of much moment. If it be White it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be Yellow, separate him from the Sound Horses, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: If that Yellow be mixed with Blood, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stink, or have lost the smell; The first is the sign of an Ulcer, the latter of death: Also whether he cougheth with straightness in his Chest or no; for that also is a sign of an inward Ulcer, and that the disease is past cure. Now for the Cure of these three Distillations, which are all that make up a complete *Glanders*, you shall understand, that when the *Glanders* is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and warm keeping: but if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warm Mashes of Malt and Water and perfume his Head well, and purge it by Sneezing; and into his Mashes you shall put Fennel seed bruised Others will take a pint of white-Wine, and a handful of Soot, a quart of Milk, and two heads of Garlick bruised; brew them together, and give it the Horse to Drink. Others will take a pottle of Urine, a handful of Bay Salt, and a good quantity of Brown Sugar-candy, boyl it to a quart; then add Licoras and Anniseeds beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warm to Drink. Others will take Lard, or Swines Grease and boyl it in Water: Then take the Fat from the water, and mingle it with a little Oyl Olive, and a good quantity of Urine, and half as much white-Wine, give a quart, of this luke-warm to drink Others use to give of Ale a quart, of grated bread one ounce and an half, the yolks of two Eggs, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Spikenard, or Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of each a pretty quantity, mix these together, and give it to Drink. Now if the Distillation be of the third sort, which is the

worst

worst of the three, you shall take half a pound of Swines Blood, and melt it at the fire, add to it a pound of the juice of Beets, with three Ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little take it from the fire, and add another Ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this Oyntment, and anoint therewith two very long Feathers or little Rods, lapt with linnen about, and so anointed, put them into his Nostrils, and after rubbing them up and down, tye them to the Nose-band of the Bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three daies together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the Eye sore. Others use to take a quart of Ale, an half penny worth of long Power, a little Brimstone, a penny-worth of *Galingal*, two penny-worth of Spikenard of *Spain*, two penny-weight of Saffron brayed, with two Ounces of Butter boyled in the Ale: When it is luke-warm, cast the Horse, and holding up his head, pour it equally into his Nostrils; then holding his Nostrils close, till his Eyes stare, and that he sweat; which done, give him Bayes and Ale to Drink: then let him rise, and set him up warm; feeding him with warm Grains and Salt, or with sweet Mashes; but the best is, if the Weather be warm, to let him run abroad at Grass. Other Farriers use to dissolve in Vinegar three drams of Mustard-seed, and as much *Euforbium*; then to give him one dram at his Nostrils every day before he drink. Others use to take of *Myrrh*, *Iris Illyrica*, seeds of Smallage, *Aristolochia*, of each three Ounce, *Salniter*, *Brimstone*, of each five Ounces, Bayes two Ounces, Saffron one Ounce; make this into powder, and when you give it, give part in pills, made with Paste and Wine, and part by the Nostrils with strong Ale: do this for the space of three days at the least. Others use to take of Malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of Aqua-vitæ four spoonfuls, and brew them together, with a pretty quantity of Anniseeds, Licoras, Elicampane Roots, long Pepper, Garlick, and three or four new laid Eggs, and a little Butter; give this luke-warm to Drink; then walk him abroad, and set him up warm; do this every other day for a Week together. Others use to take stale Urine that hath stood three or four days, and ten Garlick heads, and seething them together, give it the horse to Drink. Others use to take swines grease well clarified, and as much Oyl de Bay as a Walnut, and give it the Horse to Drink, with fair Water luke-warm.

But better than all these it is, to take of Elicampane, Anniseeds, and Licoras, of each one penny worth, boyl them in three pints of

Ale or Beer till one pint be consumed, then add unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oyl and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Euforbium* up into his Nostrils, and within three Days after, take of Mustard four spoonful, Vinegar a pint, Butter three Ounces boyl them together, then add thereunto half an Ounce of Pepper, and give it the horse luke-warm to Drink; use this Medicine a fortnight. Others use to take a handful of pill'd Garlick and boyl it in a quart of Milk tell a pint be consumed, then add thereto two Ounces of sweet Butter, and a pint of strong Ale: stir them well together, and give it the Horse fasting to drink luke-warm which done, Ride him a little up and down, and use this the space of nine days.

☞ Thus I have plainly shewed you the Opinion and Practice of all the best *Farriers* both of this Kingdom and of others, and they be all very good and effectual; yet for mine own part, that which I have found ever the best in my practice, is, if the Disease be of the first or second sort, to give the horse to drink fasting every Morning for a fortnight together, a pint of strong Ale, and five spoonful of the Oyl of Oats, the making of which Oyl, you shall read in a particular Chapter following; but if the Disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate, you shall then take of Tanners ouse a pint, and of new Milk a pint, and of Oyl Olive half a pint and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruised, and a little Turmerick, mix these well together, and give it the Horse to Drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help if any help be to be had.

CHAP. XLIV.

Two most certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail Cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible.

☞ IF your Horses cold be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continual running at the Nose, and hath run by the space of divers Months, so that your Farriers can do you no good; you shall then take better then two handful of the white Cankerous Moss which grows upon an old Oken pale, and boyl it in two quarts of Milk, till one quart be almost consumed; then strain it, and squeze the moss well, which done, give it the Horse luke-warm to drink: then take the Goose-feathers, Brimstone, and Butter, in such manner as is set down in the new Additions for the Cold, or Poze in a Horses head, before

fore and having put them up into his Nostrils, Ride him forth an hour or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the Feathers, and keep his Body warm. This Disease you shall understand cometh not suddenly, but grows out of long process of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leisure; therefore you must continue your Medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at least thrice a week, if it be for four or five Months together, and be assured in the end it will yield your desire.

Now the second certain and well approved Medicine is, to take Elicampane Roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap: Then with a horn give them to the Horse, together with the Milk luke-warm, being no more then will make the Roots Liquid: then having anointed your Goose-feathers, put them up into his Nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mourning of the Chine.

THe Disease which we call the *Mourning of the Chine*, or as some Farriers term it, the *moist Malady*, is that fourth sort of Corrupt Distillation from the Brain, of which we have spoken in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signs thereof: *to wit*, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his Nostrils will be dark, Thin, and Reddish, with little streaks of Blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this Disease is a foul Consumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the Liver wasted in those Horses which I have opened upon this Disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a Cold, which after grows to a Poze, then to a Glanders, and lastly to this Mourning of the Chine.

The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the eldest *Farriers*, is, to take clear Water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, and pour it into his Nostrils each Morning, the space of three days: and if that help not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two days at the least, a quart of old Wine, mingled with some of the soveraign Medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost

of every *Apothecary*. Others use to take *Garlick*, *Honibuk* and *Cresses*, and stamping them together, thrust it up into the Horses Nostrils.

Others use to let the Horse fast all Night, then take a pint and an half of Milk, three heads of *Garlick* pill'd and stamped, boyl them to the half, and give it the Horse, some at the Mouth and some at the Nose: then Gallop him a quarter of a Mile, then rest him; then gallop him half a Mile, then rest him again: thus do twice or thrice together, then fit him up warm, and give him no water till it be high-Noon; then give him a sweet Mash: use this Cure at least three days together. Others use to take half a peck of Oats, and boyl them in Running water till half be consumed, then put them into a Bagg, and lay them very hot upon the Navel place of his Back, and there let it lie thirty hours, using thus to do three or four times at least. Others use to take *Worm-wood*, *Peucedanum*, and *Centory*, of each a like quantity: boyl them in Wine, then strain them, and pour thereof many times into his Nostrils, especially in that which most runneth. Others use to take Hare-hound, Licoras, and Annifeeds, beaten to powder; then with sweet Butter to make Pills thereof, and give them fasting to the Horse. Others use to take Wheat-flower, Annifeeds, and Licoras stamped in a Mortar, five or six Cloves of Garlick bruised; mix all these together, and make a past of them; then make it into Pills as big as Wall-nuts, and taking out the Horses tongue, cast the Balls down the Horses throat three or four at a time, then give him two new laid Egg shells and all after them.

☞ Now after all these, the best and most approved Medicine, is, to take as much of the middle green bark of an Elder Tree growing on the Water side, as will fill a reasonable Vessel putting thereunto as much running water as the Vessel will hold, and let it boyl till half be consumed, and then fill up the Vessel again with Water, continuing so to do three several times together; and at the last time when the one half is consumed, take it from the fire, and strain it exceedingly through a Linnen cloath; then to that Decoction add at least a third part of the Oyl of Oats, or for want of that, of Oyl Olive, or of Hoggs grease, or sweet Butter; and being warmed again, take a quart thereof, and give it the Horse to drink, one horn-ful at his Mouth, and another at his Nostrils, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case, let the Horse be Fasting when he taketh this Medicine; for it not only cureth this, but any

sickness

ſickneſs proceeding from any Cold whatſoever. It ſhall be alſo good to uſe to his Body ſome wholſome Friction, and to his Head ſome wholſome Bath, of which Baths you ſhall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his Diet, his meat would be ſodden barley, and ſweet Hay, and his drink warm Water, or maſhes: but if it be in the Summer-ſeaſon, then it is beſt to let him run at graſs only.

CHAP. XLVI.

A moſt Rare and Certain approved Medicine, to Cure any High Running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all Men incurable.

THis Diſeaſe to my Knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdom, can tell how to Cure; for it comes not to the extremity, till the horſe have run at his Noſe a year or more; and have at the Roots of his Tongue, a hard lump gathered, which will not be diſſolved. Now for mine own part, it is well known I have cured many with this Medicine only. Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tuſſilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them four Drams: then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paſte, then make of it little Cakes, or Troches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, ſo that the ſmoak, may come out only at the end thereof, and ſo without any loſs aſcend up into the Horſes head through his Noſtrils; then Ride the Horſe till he begin to ſweat; do this once every Morning before water, till the running be ſtopt, which will be in a very ſhort ſpace, conſidering the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Cough.

COughing is a Motion of the Lungs, raiſed naturally from his Expulſive Power, to caſt out the hurtful cauſe, as Neeſing is the Motion of the Brain. Now of Coughs, there be ſome outward and ſome inward: thoſe are ſaid to be outward, which proceed of outward cauſes, as when a horſe doth *Eat or Drink* too greedily, ſo that his Meat goeth the *wrong Way*, or *When* he *Licketh* up a Feather,

or

or eateth dusty or sharp bearded straw and such like, which tickling his Throat, causeth him to Cough; those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speake more hereafter. Now of these outward Coughs, they may proceed from the Corruption of the Air, which if it do, you shall give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sack, and it will help. It may also proceed from dust, and then you must wash it down by pouring into his Nosthils Ale and Oyl mingled together. It may come by eating sharp and sowre things, and then you must put down his Throat pil's of sweet Butter, whose softness will help him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken Cold, and then you shall take the whites and yolks of two Eggs, three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, two handful of Bean flower, one Ounce of Fenugreek, mix them with a pint of old Malmsey, and give it the Horse to drink three days together: or else take Tarr and fresh butter, mix them together, and give Pills thereof to the Horse four times in seven days: that is, the first, the third, the fifth, and the seventh day. There be others which use to take a Gallon of fair water, and make it ready to seethe; then put thereto a peck of ground Malt, with two handful of Box leaves chopt small, and a little Groundsel, mix them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a week together. If to the Box leaves you add Oats and Bettony, it is not amiss so you keep the Horse warm. Others use to give the Horse a pint of swines Blood warm. Others use to boyl in a Gallon of water one pound of Fenugreek, then straining it, give the water Morning and Evening by a pint at a time to Drink, then drying his Fenugreek give it the horse with his Provender. Others use for all manner of Coughs to take a quartern of white Currants, and as much Clarified Honey, two Ounces of sweet Marjoram, with old fresh Grease, and a head of Garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and pun that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the horse a pint thereof, better than three Mornings together. Others use to give the Horse the gut of a young Pullet dipt in Honey, and being warm; and certainly, there is not any of these Medicines but are most Soveraign and well approved. Now whereas some Farriers use to thrust down the Throat of the horse a Willow-wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and anointed all over with Hony, (I for my part) do not like it; for it both torments the horse, more than there is occasion, and doth but only go about to

take

take away that which is gone in the ſtruggling, before the Medicine can be uſed, for it is only for a Cough, which cometh by a Feather, or ſome ſuch like matter.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the inward, or wet Cough.

TOuching inward Coughs, which are gotten and engendred by Colds and Rheumes of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but ſometimes mortal, you ſhall underſtand, that they are divided into two kinds, the one wet, the other dry; the Wet Cold proceedeth from cold cauſes taken after great heat; which heat diſſolving humours, thoſe humours being again congealed, do preſently cauſe Obſtructions and ſtopping of the Lungs. Now the ſigns to know this Wet Cough, is, the Horſe will ever after his Coughing, caſt out either water or matter out of his Noſtrils, or champ or chaw with his Teeth the Thick matter which he caſteth out of his Throat, as you ſhall eaſily perceive, if you heedfully note him; he will alſo Cough often without intermiſſion, and when he Cougheth, he will not much bowe down his head, not abſtain from his meat: and when he drinketh, you ſhall ſee ſome of his Water to iſſue out at his Noſtrils. The Cure is, firſt to keep him exceeding warm; then foraſmuch as it proceedeth from cold Cauſes, you ſhall give him hot drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or ſtrong Ale brewed with Cinamon, Ginger, Cloves, Treacle, long Pepper, and either Swines greaſe, Sallet-Oyl, or ſweet Butter; for you ſhall know, that all cold cauſes are Cured with Medicines that open and warm; and the hot with ſuch as cleanſe and Cool. Some uſe to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamine*, and the yolk of an Egg, which being well mixt together, and put into an Egg-ſhel caſt all down into the Horſes throat, and then moderately Ride him up and down for more than a quarter of an hour: And do this three or four Mornings together. Others uſe to keep him Warm, and then to give him this Drink. Take of Barley one peck and boyl it in two or three Gallons of running water, till the Barley, burſt, together with bruiſed Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Raiſons, of each a pound; then ſtrain it, and to that Liquor put of Honey a pint, and a quartern of Sugar-candy, and keep it cloſe in a pot to ſerve the horſe therewith four ſeveral mornings, and caſt not away the Barley, nor the reſt of the ſtrainings, but make it hot every day to perfume

the

the Horſe withal in a cloſe Bag; and if he eat of it, it is ſo much the better, and after this, you ſhall give the Horſe ſome moderate Exercife; and for his Diet, let him drink no cold water till his Cough abate, and as it leſſeneth, ſo let the Water be the leſs warmed.

Now for mine own part, though all theſe Receits be exceeding good, and very well approved, yet in this caſe, thus have been and ever ſhall be my practice; if I found either by the heavineſs of the Horſes head or by the Ratling of his Noſtrils, that the Cough proceeded moſt from the ſtopping of his Head, I would only give him four or five Mornings together, three or 4 good round pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) faſting, then Ride him moderately an hour after; but if I found that the ſickneſs remained in the Cheſt or Breaſt of the Horſe, then I would give him twice in four days a pint of Sack, half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and two Ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made luke-warm, and then Ride him half an hour after, and ſet him up warm, ſuffering him to drink no cold water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all Wet Coughs, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any ſuch moiſt Diſeaſe, ſee the new Additions for the Mourning of the *Chine*, and it is a certain Cure.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the Dry Cough.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the dry Cough, is a groſs and tough Humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which ſtoppeth the Wind-pipes, ſo that the Horſe can hardly draw his Breath. It doth proceed by ill Government, from the Rheume, which diſtilleth from the head, falleth down to the Breaſt, and there inforceth the Horſe to ſtrive to caſt it out.

The eſpecial ſigns to know it, is, by eating hot Meats, as bread that is ſpiced, Straw dry, Hay, or ſuch like, his extremity of Coughing will increaſe; by eating Cold and moiſt meats, as graſs, Forage, Grains, and ſuch like, it will abate and be the leſs: he coughteth ſeldome, yet when he coughteth, he Coughteth Violently, long time together, and dryly, with a hollow ſound from his Cheſt: he alſo bowweth his head down to the ground, and forſaketh his meat whilſt

he

he Cougheth, yet never casteth forth any thing either at his Mouth or Nostrils.

This Cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time is incurable: For it will grow to the Pursick or broken-winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot Humours, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold Simples, as *Camomile*, *Melliloe*, *Licoras*, dried red *Roses* and *Camphire* boyled in water, and the Fume made to pass up into his mouth and Nostrils.

Others use to take a close earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the strongest Vinegar, and four Eggs, shells and all, unbroken and four heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and set the pot being very close covered in a warm dunghill of a horse-mixen, and there let it stand 24 hours, then take it forth and open it, and take out the Eggs which will be as soft as silk, and lay them by untill you have strained the Vinegar and Garlick through a linnen Cloath: then put to that Liquor a quartern of Honey, and half a quartern of Sugar-candy, and two Ounces of Licoras, and two ounces of Anniseed beaten all into fine powder, and then the Horse having fasted all the night early in the morning, about seven or eight a Clock, open the Horses mouth with a Drench-staff and a Cord, and first cast down his throat one of the Eggs, and then presently after it a Horn full of the aforesaid drink, being made luke-warm: then cast in another Egg, and another Hornful: and thus do till he hath swallowed up all the Eggs, or three at the least; then Bridle him and cover him warmer than he was before; and set him up in the Stable, tying him to the bare Rack for the space of two hours: then unbridle him, and give him either some Oats, Hay, or Grass; yet in any case give him no Hay, untill it hath been somewhat sprinkled with water: For there is no greater enemy to a dry Cough than dry hay, dry Straw, or Chaff; then let him have cold water the space of nine days. Now if you chance the first morning to leave an Egg untaken, you shall not fail to give it him, and the remainder of the Drink the Morning following. If you find by this practice that the Cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his head with Pills, of which you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations: after his Pills received, you shall let him fast three hours, standing warm cloathed and littered in the Stable: you shall also now and then give him a warm Mash, and once a day trot him moderately abroad:

There be other Farriers which for this dry *Cough* take only the Herb called *Lyons Foot*, *Ladies Mantle*, *Spurge*, and *Smallage*, of each a like quantity, seeth them in a quart of old Wine, or a quart of running Water till some part be consumed, and give it the horse to drink; if instead of the herbs themselves, you give the juice of the herbs in Wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of Penyrial, with five pounds of fresh Grease, and nine Heads of *Garlick*, beat that which is to be beaten and melt the rest; give this in four or five days like pills dipt in Houey. Others use to take *Myrrh*, *Opoponax*, *Iris*, *Hericа*, and *Galbanum*, of each two Ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of *Turpentine* four Ounces, of *Henbane* half an ounce, of *Opium* half an ounce, beat them to fine powder, and give two or three spoonful with a pint of old Wine, or a quart of Ale.

☞ Others use to take forty grains of Pepper, four or five roots of raddish, four Heads of Garlick, and five Ounces of sweet Butter; stamp them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the Horse for a Week together, making him fast two hours after his taking of it: and surely it is a most Excellent approved Medicine for any old over grown Cold, or Cough. Other Farriers use to take of oyl de Bay and sweet Butter, of each half a pound, Garlick one pound, beat it together unpilled, and being well beaten with a pestle of Wood, add your oyl and butter unto it: then having made it unto Balls, with a little Wheat-flower, give your Horse every morning for a Week and more, three or four Balls as bigg as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meat three hours, and from drink till it be night, provided that still his Drink be warm, and his meat, if it possible may be, Grass, or Hay sprinkled with water: as for his Provender, it would be Oats and Fenugreek sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fort-nights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another Week give him again the same Physick and Diet; but truly for mine own part, I have never found it to fail in any Horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward Medicines, except they be well assured that the Cold hath been long, and that the Cough is dangerous.

CHAP.

CHAP. L.

Two Excellent true and well approved Medicines for any Cold, dry Cough, shortneſs of Breath, purſineſs or Broken-winded.

THE firſt is, take of Tarr three ſpoonful, of Sweet Butter as much, beat and work them well together with the fine powder Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-Candy, till it be brought to a hard paſte; then make it in three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and ſo give them to the Horſe, and warm him with Riding both before and after he hath received the pills, and be aſſured that he be faſting when he takes it, and faſt at leaſt two hours after he hath taken it. ☞

The ſecond is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almoſt two fingers thick both ways; then with your knife making many holes into it, ſtop it with as many Cloves of garlick as you can conveniently get into it, then rolling it in the powder of Licoras, Anniſeeds, Sugar-candy and Brimſtone, all equally mixt together, give it your horſe faſting in a Morning at leaſt twice a Week continually, and ride him after it, and be ſure that all the hay he eats be finely ſprinkled with water.

CHAP. LI.

The beſt of all other Medicines for a Dry-Cough never before mentioned, nor revealed.

TAke of the Sirrup of Colts foot two ounces, of the powder of Elicampane, of Anniſeeds, and of Licoras, of each half an ounce, of Sugar-candy divided into two parts, two Ounces, then with ſweet Butter work the Sirrup and the powders, and one part of the Sugar-candy into a ſtiff paſte, and thereof made Pills or ſmall Balls, and role them in the other part of the Sugar-candy, and ſo give it to the Horſe faſting, and exerciſe him gently an hour after it: and thus do for divers Mornings till you find amendment.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Frettized, Broken, and Rotten Lungs.

COughs do many times proceed from the corruption and Putrifaction of the Lungs, gotten either by some extreme Cold, Running or Leaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the Lungs being inclosed in a very thin film, they are therefore the much sooner Broken; and if such a Breach be made, without instant Cure, they begin to inflame and Apostume, oppressing and sicking the whole Lungs. Now the signs to know this Disease, is, the Horses Flanks will beat when he Cougheth, and the slower they beat, the more old dangerous is the disease: He will also draw his wind short, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearful and loath to Cough; and often turn his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he will champ in his Mouth after. The Cure is, give him two or three ounces of Hoggs-grease, and two or three spoonful of Diapente brewed in a quart of Barly-water, wherein Currants have been sodden. Other Farriers use to take a pound of Licoras, and being scraped and sliced, to steep it in a quart of water four and twenty hours; then to strain it, then to boyl three or four ounces of Currants in it, and so give it the horse to drink and keep him fasting three or four hours after. There be other Farriers which use to take of *Fenugreek* and Linseed, of each half a pound, of Gum-Dragant, of Mastick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of fitch-flower, of each one Ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warm water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two ounces of the Oyl of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the Disease be new it will certainly heal; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him Drink no cold Water: And for his Food, Grass is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best Cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of Honey three spoonful, mix them together, then take of *Myrrh* of *Saffron*, of *Cassia* and *Cinamon*, of each a like quantity, beat them to a fine powder, and give two spoonfuls thereof in the Wine to drink, do this at least a fort-night together, and it is certain it will help these frettized and broken Lungs, but for the putrified and rotten Lungs, we will speak more in this next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the Putrified and Rotten Lungs.

THIS Disease of Rotten and Exulcerate Lungs, you shall know by these signs: he will cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his Coughing he will cast little Reddish lumps out of his Mouth, he will decay much in his flesh, and yet eat his Meat with more greedinesse than when he was sound: And when he Cougheth, he will cough with more ease and clearnesse, than if his Lungs were but only broken. The cure whereof, according to the practice of our ordinary English Farriers, is, to give the Horse divers Mornings together a pint of strong Vinegar warm, or else as much of mans Urine, with half so much Hoggs-grease brewed warm together.

But the more antient Farriers take a good quantity of the Juice of Purslain mixt with the oyl of Roses, adding thereunto a little *Tragacanthum*, which hath before been laid to steep in Goats milk, or for want thereof in barly, or oaten milk strain'd from the Corn, and give him a Pint thereof every morning for seven days together. This Medicine is but only to ripen and break the Impostume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the sore is broken, his breath will stink exceedingly: Then shall you give him the other seven days this drink. Take of the Root called *Costus*, two ounces, and of *Cassia*, or *Cinamon*, three Ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drink, with a pint of Malmsey Others use to take of *Frakincense* and *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces, beaten into fine powder, and give the Horse two or three spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Malmsey. Others take of unburnt Brimstone two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and a half beaten to powder, and give it the Horse with a pint of Malmsey.

CHAP. LIV.

Of shortnesse of Breath, or Pursinesse.

THIS Disease of short Breath or Pursinesse, may come two several ways, that is, Naturally, or accidentally: Naturally, as by the straightnesse of his Conduits, which convey his Breath, when they want liberty to carry his Breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, force stoppings and obstructions in his Wind-pipe, and thereby make

make his Lungs labour and work painfully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after Drinking, or upon full stomach, by which Humors are compelled to descend down into the Throat and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the Breath. The signs of this Disease are continual panting and heaving of his Body without any Coughing, great heat of Breath at his Nostrils and a squeezing or drawing in of his Nose when he breatheth; besides a coveting to hold out his head whilst he fetcheth his Wind. The Cure, according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is, to give him in his Provender, the Kirnels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must give them plentifully. The warm blood of a sucking Pigg is excellent good also. Other Farriers use to take Venus hair, Ireos, Ashkeys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a half: Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle seed, Aristolochia, and Colloquintida, of each two Drams; Algaritium one dram and a half, Honey two pound, dissolve them with water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, and give him one pint every Morning for three or four Mornings. Others use to take Molline or Long-wort, and make a powder thereof, and give two spoonfuls thereof with a pint of running water, or else powder of Gentian, in the afore-said manner, and do it for Divers Mornings.

☞ Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, grains of Paradise, of each three drams, Carraway seed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and half an Ounce of Licoras; beat them all into fine powder, then put two or three spoonfuls thereof to a pint of White-wine, and the Yolks of four Eggs, and give it the Horse to Drink; then tye his head up high to the Rack for an hour after: that done, either ride him, or Walk him up and down gently, and keep him fasting four or five hours after at the least, the next day turn him to Grass, and he will do well There be others which use to let the Horse blood in the Neck-vein, and then give him this Drink: Take of Wine and Oyl, of each a pint of Frankincense half and Ounce, and of the juice of Hare-hoof half a pint, mix them well together and give them to Drink.

☞ Others use to give him only somewhat more than a pint of Honey, Hoggs Grease and Butter molten together, and let him Drink it luke-warm. Eggs made soft in Vinegar, as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry Cough, is Excellent for this shortness of breath, so you give the Eggs increasing, that is, the first day one, the second day three

three and three and five: and withal, to pour a little Oyl and Wine into his Mouth is very good also. There be other Farriers which use to take a Snake, and cut off her Head and Tail, and then take out the Guts and Entrails, boyl the rest in Water till the Bone part from the Flesh: then cast the Bone away, and give every Third day of this Decoction more than a pint, till you have spent three Snakes and this is excellent good for the dry Cough also.

Now the last and best Medicine for this shortness of Breath, (for indeed in this Case I do not affect much Physicking) is only to take Annisseeds, Licoras, and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take four spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a pint of white-wine, and half a pint of Saliet-Oyl: and use this ever after your Horses travel, and a day before he is travelled.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Broken winded, Pur-sick Horse.

THis Disease of Broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either Horse or Horse-leach craft, very much disputed with my self: and for many years did constantly hold (as I still do) that in truth there is no such Disease; only in this I found by daily experience, that by over-hasty or sudden running of a horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the Stable with no exercise and foul Food, that thereby gross and thick Humours may be drawn down into the Horses Body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and stopping up the wind-pipes, the Wind may be so kept in, that it may only have its resort backward, and not upward, filling the Guts, and taking from the Body great part of his strength and Liveli-hood: which if from the Corruption of our old Inventions, we call broken winded then I must needs confess, that I have seen many broken-winded Horses. The signs of which disease are these, much and Violent beating of his flanks, especially drawing up of his Belly upward, great opening and raising of his Nostrils, and a continual swift going to and fro of his Tuel: besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow Cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extremity, (for it is the worst of all the evils of the Lungs, which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the horses health and his daily Service, are very

many

many, as namely, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to purge your Horse by giving him this Drink. Take of *Maiden-hair*, *Anes*, *Aspe*, *Licoras*, *Fenugreek*, *Basnis*, of each half an ounce, of *Cardamum*, *Pepper*, *butter Almonds*, *Borage*, of each two ounces, of *Nettle seed*, and of *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces, boyl them all together in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that Decoction dissolve half an ounce of Agarick, and two ounces of Colloquintida, together with two pound of Honey, and give him a pint and a half of this at a time, for at least a week together; and if this Medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thin with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden; and some Farriers also besides this Medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the Flanks of the Horse to restrain their beating, and slit the horses Nostrils to give the wind more liberty, But I do not affect either the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this case, is Grass in Summer, and Hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this infirmity hold, that to give the Horse three or four days together sodden wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet Wine, or other good Wine, mixt with Licoras Water, is a certain remedy. There be other Farriers, which for this Disease take the Guts of a Hedg-hog, and hang them in a warm Oven till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: then give your horse two or three spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Wine or strong Ale: Then the rest mixt with Anniseeds, Licoras, and sweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give the Horse two or three after his Drink: and so let him fast at least two hours after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, be sure to wash it in Ale, or Beer; then take Cummin, Anniseeds, Licoras, and Sentuary, of each a just quantity, make them being mixt together into fine powder, and strew two spoonfuls thereof upon the provender being wet. This Physick must be used for a fortnight at the least Others use to take of Cloves and Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale and *Cardamomum* three drams, of Root, of Bay-seeds, and *Cummin*, of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white-Wine being well tempered with a little Saffron, then put to so many Yolks of Eggs as may countervail the other quantity: then mix them with water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, making it so thin that the Horse may drink it, and after he hath drank the quantity of a pint and a half of this drink, tye up his head to the rack, and let him

so

so stand at least an hour after, that the drink may descend unto his Guts, then walk him gently abroad that the Medicine may work; and in any case give him no water for the space of four and twenty hours after: The next Morning give him some Grass to eat, and the branches of willows or Sallow, which will cool the heat of the Potion.

Now there be other *Farriers* which take of *Pances*, *Long-wort*, ☞ *Maiden-hair*, the crops of *Nettles*, *Carduus*, *Benedictus*, herb *Fluetin*, the roots of *Dragonus* bruised, the roots of *Elicampane* bruised, of Water-hemp, of *Penyryal*, of *Light wort*, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handful, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: bruise them, and lay them all night in two or three Gallons of water, and give it a boyl in the Morning, and let the Horse drink thereof as much luke-warm as he will, then after this Drink, give him a pretty quantity of sodden wheat; use this diet for a week or more at the least: and then if the Season be fit, put him to Grass. This Cure is of great Reputation, and thought to help when all other fail: for mine own part, I wish every man to judge it by the practice.

There be others, which only for nine or ten dayes together, will give their horse water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a most soveraign help.

There be others, which will only give new Milk from the Cow: but I despair of that Cure, because Milk being only Flegmatick, Flegm is the only substance of this Disease. Other Farriers use to keep the Horse fasting four and twenty hours, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of Fenugreek, half a quarter of Bayes, of the green bark of Elder trees, of Sugar-candy, of Water-cresses, of red Mints, of red Fennel, or Haw-tree leaves, and of Primrose leaves, of each half an ounce, the whites of six Eggs; beat these in a Mortar and seeth them in the Ale, give it him to drink, then let him fast after it two hours; Then give him meat and Provender enough, yet but a little drink. Others use to give him wet Hay, and moderate Travail: Then take twenty Eggs, steep them in Vinegar four and twenty hours, giving the Horse two every morning, and after the Eggs are spent, a pottle of new milk from the Cow.

Now there be other Farriers, which only will dissolve in Vinegar fifteen Eggs, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third day seven, and hold it a good help. Others will

take an ounce of Frankincense, two ounces of Brimstone, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and half a pint of Honey. Others will take *Sal nitre*, burnt with the powder of Pitch, and give it with the same quantity of Wine and Honey. Others will only give *Sal nitre* mingled with his meat, provided always, that in every Cure you keep your Horse from Cold and Labour, and daily chafe his head with Oyl and Wine. But of this, look in the last new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus ☞.

CHAP. LVI.

Of the dry Malady or Consumption.

THis Disease of the dry Malady, or as the Antient Farriers term it, a general Consumption, is nothing but a meer Exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a Cankerous fretting and gnawing Humour ingendred by Cold and Surfeit, which descending from the Head, sickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived, that the mourning of the Chine doth ever cast some filthy Matter from the Nose, and the dry Malady never casteth forth any thing.

The signs to know this dry Malady or Consumption, are these: His flesh, and strong estate of Body will consume and waste away, the belly will be gaunt, his Back-bone hid, and his skin so stretched or shrunk up, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a Tabor: his Hair will hardly shed, and either he will utterly deny his Meat, or the meat he eateth will not Digest, prosper or breed any flesh on his Body; he will offer to Cough, but cannot except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten small bones; and truly, according to the opinion of others, so I find by mine own practice of fifty years, that it is incurable, yet that a horse may be long preserved to do much service, I have found it by these helps: First, to purge his head with such Fumes and Pills, as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of Purgations, then give him Colewarts small chopt with his Provender, and now and then the blood of a sucking Pig warm.

There be other well experienced Men, that instead of the Blood, will give either the juyce of Leeks mixt with Oyl and Wine, or else Wine and *Frankincense*, or Sallet oyl and the juyce of Rue mixt together:

gether; but in my conceit, the best Cure, is, to purge his Body clean with comfortable and gentle Purges, and then to be suffered to run at grass, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no question, but he must necessarily end or mend, for languish long he cannot. ☞

CHAP. LVII.

Of the consumption of the Flesh.

THIS Disease which we call the Consumption of the flesh, is an unnatural or general dislike, or falling away of the whole Body, (or, as we term it,) the wasting of the flesh, which proceedeth from divers grounds: as namely, from inward Surfeits, either by naughty Food, or ill Diet, or from unclean, moist and stinking Lodging, but especially from disorderly Labour, as by taking great and suddain Colds after violent heat, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signs whereof are these: first, an unnatural and causeless Leanness, a dry and hard skin cleaving fast to his sides, want of Stomach or Appetite to his Meat, a falling way of his Fillets, and a general Consumption both of his Buttocks and shoulders: The Cure whereof, according to the Antients, is, to take a Sheeps Head unflaied, and boyl it in a Gallon and a half of Ale, or running water, untill the flesh be consumed from the Bones; then strain it through a cloath, and put thereto of Sugar half a pound, of Cinamon one ounce, of Conserve of Roses, of Barberries, and of cherries, of each one Ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horse every morning a quart thereof luke-warm, till two Sheeps heads be spent; and after every time he drinketh, let him be gently walked or ridden up and down according to his strength, that is, if the weather be warm, abroad, if it be cold and windy, then in the Stable, or some close house, suffering him neither to eat nor Drink for two hours after his Medicine; and from cold water you shall keep him the space of fifteen dayes. Now for his ordinary Food or Provender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best, whatsoever it be; and that you shall give him by little and little, and not any gross or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of Food taketh away both the Appetite and Nutriment which should proceed from wholsome Feeding.

CHAP. LVIII.

How to make a lean Horse fat.

BEsides this general Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sickness; there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from Nesshness, Tenderness, Freeness of Spirit, and the Climate under which the Horse is bred: as namely; when a Horse that is bred in a warm Climate comes to live in a cold; or when a Horse that is bred upon a fruitful and rich Soil, comes to live in a Barren and dry place. In any of these cases, the Horse will be lean without any apparent sign of grief or Disease, which to recover, there be many Receipts and Medicines, as namely; the Ancient Farriers did use when a horse either grew lean without sickness or wound or any known distemperature, to take a quarter of a peck of Beans, and boyl them in two Gallons of Water till they swell or burst, then to mix with them a peck of Wheat Bran, and so to give it the Horse in manner of a Mash, or instead of Provender: for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Coleworts and having sodden them, mix them with Wheat Bran, and Salt, and give them instead of Provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoises being well sodden, (their heads, Tails, Bones, and Feet being rejected) and giving it the Horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly; or if you mix the flesh of the Tortoise so sodden with your Horses provender, that is good also. But as the simples are Italian, and not English, so I for mine own part, refer the use rather to them than to my Country-men. There be others which use to fat up their Horses, By giving them a certain grain which we call Bock, in the same manner as we give Oats or Pease. There be others, which to fat a Horse will give him only Parched Wheat, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender always some Wheat Bran; and be exceeding careful that the horse be clean dresst, well rubbed, and soft Littered; for without such cleau keeping, there is no Meat will injoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There be other Farriers, which to feed up a lean horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth Nuts, Bears grease, to drink with a quart of Wine, Others will give the Entrails of a Barbil or

Tench

Tench with white-wine; others will give new hot draff, and new Bran, and twenty hard roasted Eggs, the shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mix all together, and give a good quantity thereof to the Horse at Morn, Noon, and at Evening for his Provender; and once a day (which will be at high *Noon*) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the Horse beginneth to be glutted upon this Meat, then give him dried Oats: if he be glutted upon that then give him Bread, if he leave his bread, give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite, observing ever to keep the Horse very warm, and with this Diet in fourteen days the leanest Horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a Horse fat, will take a quart of Wine, and half an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a penny weight of the powder of *Myrrh*; mix altogether, and give it the Horse to drink many mornings together. Others will take three-leaved grass, half green, and half dry, and give it the Horse instead of Hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, only it will breed much Rank blood. Other Farriers use to take two penny worth of Pepper, and as much Saffron, Anniseeds and Turmerick, a penny worth of long Pepper, two penny-worth of Treacle, a penny worth of Licoras, a good quantity of Penirial and Arch-Angel: give the Horse these with the yolks of Eggs in Milk to drink. Others use to take Wheat made clean, and sod with Salt and Lard dried in the Sun, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale *Myrrh* Sallet Oyl, and twenty grains of white Pepper, and instead of the Ale you may take the Decoction, that is, the water wherein Sage and Rue hath been sodden, it will soon make the Horse fat. Others take sodden Beans well bruised and sprinkled with Salt, adding to the water four times so much Bean-flower, or wheat Bran, and give that to the Horse, and it will fat him suddainly. Wine mixt with the Blood of a Sucking Pig, made luke warm, or Wine with the juyce of Feather-few, or an Ounce of Sulphur, and a penny weight of *Myrrh* well made into powder, together with a new laid Egg, will raise up a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burst, either will fatten a Horse.

But the best way of fatting a horse, (for the most of the ways before prescribed are not to breed fat that will continue) is, first to give your Horse three Mornings together a pint of sweet wine and too spoon-

full

full of *Diapente* brewed together: for that drink will take away all infection, and ſickneſs from the inward parts; then to feed him well with Provender at leaſt four times a day, that is, after his water in the Morning, after his water at noon, after his water in the Evening, and after his water at 9. of the Clock at Night, Now you ſhall not let his Provender be all of one ſort, but every meal, it may be changed as thus: If in the Morning you give him Oats, at Noon likewiſe you ſhall give him Bread, at Evening Beans or Peaſe mixt with Wheat Bran, at night ſodden Barly, &c. and ever obſerve, of what Food he eateth beſt, of that let him have the greateſt plenty, and there is no queſtion but he will in ſhort ſpace grow fat, ſound, and full of Spirit, without either diſlike or ſickneſs.

CHAP. LIX.

The Mirror and Maſter of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leaneſt and unſoundeſt Horſes that may be, fat, ſound, and fit either for Market or Travail, in the ſpace of fourteen days.

☞ IF your Horſe be full of all inward Diſeaſes that may be, and brought to that diſlike and poverty that you are deſperate of his life, you ſhall take of Anniſeeds, of Cumminſeeds, of Fenugreek, of Carthamus, of Elicampane, of the flower of Brimſtone, of Brown Sugar candy, of each of theſe two Ounces beaten and ſearſt to a very fine powder, then take an Ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and diſſolve it in half a pint of white-wine, then take three Ounces of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet-Oyl, and of live Honey, of each half a pint, then mix all this with the former Powders, and with as much Wheat flower as will bind and knit them altogether, work them into a ſtiff paſte, and make thereof Balls as big as French Walnuts, Hulls and all, and ſo keep them in a cloſe Gally-pot, and when you have occaſion to uſe them, take one and anoint it with ſweet Butter, and give it the horſe in the manner of a Pill, and Ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus do (if it be to prevent ſickneſs) for three or four Mornings together.

But if it be to take away infirmity, as glanders, &c. then uſe it at leaſt a week or more.

But if to take away molten-greaſe, then inſtantly after his heat, and in his heat.

But if it be to fatten a Horſe, then uſe it at leaſt a fortnight: now

as

as you give them thus in the manner of a Pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweet Wine, Ale, or Beer.

Lastly, if it be to fatten a horse, then you shall take the second Balls: That is to say, of wheat-meal six pound, or as Physicians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Aniiseeds two Ounces, of Cummin seeds six drams, of *Carthamus* one dram and a half, of Fenugreek seeds one Ounce two Drams, of Brimstone one Ounce and a half, of sallet Oyl one pint two Ounces, of honey one pound and a half, of white wine four pints: This must be made into paste, the hard simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into Balls as big as a Mans fist, and then every Morning and Evening when you would water your Horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these Balls, by lathering and Chafing the same in the water, and then give it him to drink. The Horse it may be will be coy at the first to drink, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it: for before two Balls be spent, he will refuse all waters for this only. This is the Medicine above all Medicines, and is truly the best scouring that can be given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderful Feeding, it cleanseth the Body from all bad Humours whatsoever. ☞

CHAP. LX.

Of the Breast-pain, or pain in the Breast.

THough most of our Farriers are not curious to understand this Disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both my self and others find it is a Disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horse with Death. The *Italians* call it *Grannezza dipetto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of Blood and other gross humours which being dissolved by some extreme and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the Breast and paineth the horse extreamly that he can hardly go. The signs are, a stiff staggering, and weak going with his fore legs, and he can very hardly, or not at all bow down his head to the ground, either to eat or drink, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The Cure is first to bath all his Breast, and fore-booths with the Oyl of Peter, and if that do not help him within three or four days, then to let him Blood on both his Breast-veins in the ordinary place, and then put in a Rowel either of hair, Cork, Horn, or Leather, of all which, and the manner

of

of Rowelling, you ſhall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the Book of *Chyrurgery*.

☞ Now there be other *Farriers*, which for this ſickneſs, well firſt give the Horſe an inward Drench, as namely; a pint of ſweet Wine, and two ſpoonful of *Diapente*, then bath all his Breaſt and Legs with Wine and Oyl mingled together, and in ſome ten or twelve days it will take away the grief.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the ſickneſs of the Heart called the Anticor.

THIS ſickneſs of the Heart, which by the Ancient *Farriers is called Anticor*, as much as to ſay, againſt or contrary to the Heart, is a dangerous and mortal ſickneſs, proceeding from the great abundance of Blood which is bred by too Curious and proud Keeping, where the horſe hath much meat, and little or no labour, as for the moſt part your Geldings of Price have, which running all the Summer at Graſs, do nothing but gather their own Food, and ſuch like, where the Maſters too much Love and tenderneſs is the means to bring the Horſe to his Death, as we find daily in our practice: for when ſuch naughty and corrupt Blood is gathered, it reſorteth to the inward parts, and ſo ſuffocateth his heart. The ſigns whereof are the horſe will many times have a ſmall ſwelling riſe at the bottom of the breaſt, which ſwelling will increaſe and riſe upward even to the top of the Neck of the horſe, and then moſt aſſuredly it kills the Horſe; He will alſo hang his head either down to the Manger, or down to the Ground, forſaking his Food, and groaning with much painfulneſs. This Diſeaſe is of many an ignorant Smith taken ſometimes for the Yellows, and ſometimes for the Staggers, but you ſhall
☞ know that it is not by theſe obſervations: Firſt, neither about the whites of his Eyes, nor the inſides of his Lips ſhall you perceive any apparent *Yellows*, and ſo then it cannot be the *Yellows*; nor will he have any great ſwelling about his Eyes, nor dizzineſs in his head, before he be at the point of Death; and ſo conſequently it cannot be the Staggers. The Cure whereof is twofold: the firſt a prevention, or preſervative before the Diſeaſe come; the ſecond, a Remedy after the Diſeaſe is apparent.

For the prevention, or Preſervative, you ſhall obſerve, that if
☞ your Horſe live idly, either at graſs or in the Stable, and withal grow very

very fat, which fatnefs is never uncompanied with Corruptnefs, that then you fail not to let him blood in the Neck-vein before you turn him to Grafs, or before you put him to feed in the Stable; and likewife let him blood two or three months after, when you fee he is fed, and at each time of letting blood, you muft make your quantity according to the goodnefs of the Blood: for if the blood be black and thick, which is a fign of Inflammation and Corruption, you fhall take the more: if it be pure red, and thin, which is a fign of Strength and healthfulnefs, you fhall take little or none at all. There be others which ufe for this prevention, to give the Horfe a Scouring or purgation of Malmfey, Oyl, and Sugar-candy, the making and ufe whereof you fhall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horfe to feed, and as foon as you fee his skin full fwoln with fatnefs.

Now for the Remedy, when this Difeafe fhall be apparent; you fhall let him blood on both his plat-veins, or if the Smiths skill will not extend fo far, then you fhall let the horfe blood on the Neck-veins and that he bleed abundantly: then you fhall give him this Drink. Take a quart of Malmfey, and put thereunto half a quartern of Sugar, and two Ounces of Cinamon beaten to powder, and being made warm give it the horfe to drink: then keep him very warm in the Stable, Stuffing him round about with foft Wifps very clofe, efpecially about the Stomach, left the wind do annoy him: and let his ordinary Drink be warm Maffhes of malt and Water, and his Food only that, whatfoever it be, which he eateth with the beft Stomach.

Now if you fee any fwelling to appear, whether it be foft or hard, then befides letting him blood, you fhall ftrike the fwelling in divers places with a Fleam or Launcet, that the corruption may iffue forth, then anoint it with Hogs-greafe made warm: For that will either expel it, or bring it to a head, efpecially if the fwelling be kept exceeding warm. There be other Farriers which for this Difeafe ufe to let the horfe blood as is aforefaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmfey, well brewed with three fpoonfuls of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the Swelling arife, to lay thereunto nothing but Hay well fodden in old Urine, and then keep the fame Diet as is aforefaid: Others ufe after the letting of blood, to give the horfe no Drink, but only ten or twelve fpoonfuls of that water which is called Doctor Stephens Water, and is not unknown to any Apothecary:

heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the Consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this Book, and to bathe his Legs with a comfortable bath, of which you shall find choice in the Chapter of Baths, or else charge them with this Charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheat-flower, of each half a pound, and a little Rosin beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them well together, and cover all his Legs therewith, and if it be in the Summer, turn him to Grass and he will recover his weariness, others use to take a slice of fresh Beef, having steeped it in Vinegar, lap it about your bit or snaffle; and having made it fast with a Thred, Ride your Horse therewith and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, be sure to give your horse rest, much warmth and good feeding, that is, warm mashes and store of Provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he lives.

Now if it be so that your horse tire in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, and that you must seek unnatural means to controul Nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glass before spoken of cannot be had) three or four round Pibble stones, and put them into one of his Ears, and then tye the Ear that the stones fall not out, and the noise of those stones will make the horse go after he is utterly tyred; but if that fail, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the horses ear and thrust a long rough stick, full of nicks through the same; and ever as the horse slacks his pace, so saw and fret the stick up and down in the hole, and be sure whilst he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which be needless to rehearse, only this is my most general advice, if at any time you tyre your Horse, to take of old Urine a quart, of Salt-peter three Ounces, boyl them well together, and baths all the Horses four Legs in the same, and without question it will bring the sinews to their natural strength and nimbleness and for other defects, warm and good keeping will cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers do hold, that Oaten dough will prevent tyring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any Horse that would eat it, the dough will so stick and clam in the Horses mouth: Therefore I hold the Cures already recited to be fully sufficient. But for farther satisfaction use these, which I reserved for mine own privacy.

☞ Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the

powder

powder of Elicampane, and brew them well together, and give it the horse with a horn.

Take a bunch of Penerial, and tye it to the mouth of your Bit or Snaffle, and it will preserve a horse from tyring. Now if all these fail, then take off your horses Saddle, and rub his back all over very hard with the herb called Arsemart, and lay Arsemart under his saddle, and so ride him.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Diseases of the Stomach, and first of the loathing of Meat,

THIS Disease of the loathing of Meat, is taken two ways; the one a forsaking of Meat, as when a Horses mouth, either through the inflammation of his Stomach, doth break out into Blisters, or such like venemous sores, or when he hath the Lampass, Gigs, Wolfs-teeth, and such like. The Cure of all which, you shall readily find in the second part of this Book, which treateth of Chyrurgery: the other dislike of his meat through the intemperature of his Stomach, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankness of Blood, or extremity of travail, as you may perceive by daily experience, when a horse is set up in his Stable very hot, and meat instantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I do ever hate the Noon-tide baiting of Horses, because mens journeys commonly crave haste, the Horse cannot take such a natural cooling as he ought before his meat, and thereby breeds much sickness and disease: for meat given presently after Travail when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomach, being too cold, as being caused by some natural defect. Now if it proceed from heat only, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his Meat, or the extreme heat of his Mouth and Breath: Then to cool his Stomach again, you shall either wash his Tongue with Vinegar, or give to him drink cold water mingled with Oyl and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which use to give this drink: Take of milk and Wine, of each one pint, and put thereunto of Mel Rosatum three ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the Drink luke-warm with a Horn. But if the loathing of his meat proceed from the Coldness of his stomach, which only is known by the standing up and staring of the hair, Then by

the

the opinion of the Antient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and oyl mixt together divers mornings to drink : but others of our late Farriers give Wine, Oyl, Rue, and Sage boyl'd together by a quart at a time to drink. Others to the former compound will add white Pepper and Myrrh. Others use to give the Horse Onions pilled and chopt, and Rocket seed boyled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mix Wine with the blood of a Sow-pig. Now to conclude, for the general forsaking or loathing of meat, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the Stomach, there is nothing better than the green blades of Corn, (especially Wheat) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the year serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the Horse sweet wine and the seeds of Gith mixt together, or else sweet wine and Garlick well peel'd and stampt, being a long time brewed together.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the casting out of the Horses Drink.

THE antient Farriers, especially the Italians, constantly do affirm, that a Horse may have such a Palsy, proceeding from the Coldness of his stomach, that may make him unable to retain and keep his drink, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up again : for mine own part from other causes as from cold in the Head, where the Rheume bindeth about the Roots and Kirnels of the Tongue, hath as it were strangled and made straight the passages to the stomach : There I have many times seen a Horse cast his water that he drank, in very abundant sort back again through his Nostrils, and sometimes strive with great earnestness to drink, but could not at all. The signs of both (from which cause soever it proceed) is only the casting up of his Drink or water, and the Cure thereof is only to give him Cordial and warm Drinks, as is Malmsey, Cinamon, Aniseeds, and Cloves, well brewed and mixed together, and to anoint his Breast, and under his shoulders, with either the Oyl of Cypress, Oyl of Spike, or the Oyl of Pepper, and to purge his head with fumes or Pills, such as will force him to sneeze, of which you may see store in a Chapter following : for such Fumigations joyning with these hot Oyls, will soon dissolve the Humours.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Surfeiting with glut of Provender.

THERE is not any Disease more easily Procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a Horse, than the Surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender, it cometh most commonly by keeping the Horse extreme sharp and hungry, as either by long Travail, or long standing empty: and then in the height of greediness, giving him such super-abundance of Meat, that his stomach wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great pain and extremity. The signs are great weakness and feebleness in the Horses Limbs, so that he can hardly stand, but lieth down oft, and being down, vvallovveth and tumbleth up and down as if he had the Bots.

The Cure thereof, according to the common practice of our common Farriers, is, to take half a penny-worth of Black Sope, and a quart of new milk, and as much sweet Butter as Sope, and having on a Chasing-dish and Coals, mixt them together, and give it the horse to Drink: this will cleanse the Horses Stomach, aud bring it to it's strength again.

But the antient Farriers did use first, to let the Horse blood in the Neck-vein, (because every Surfeit breeds distemperature in the blood then trot the Horse up and down an hour or more, and if he cannot stale, dravv out his Yard, and wash it with white-wine made luke-warm, and thrust into his yard either a Clove of Garlick, or a little Oyl of Camomile, with a piece of small wax-candle. If he cannot dung, first with your hand take his Fundament, and then give him a Clister, of which you shall read hereafter: when his Clister is received, you shall walk him up and down till he have emptied his Belly, then set him up, and keep him hungry the space of two or three days, observing ever to sprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drink be warm vvater and bran made mash wise: After he hath drunk the drink, let him eat the Bran if he please, but from other Provender keep him still fasting, at the least ten days.

There be other Farriers, that in this case, use only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two penny-worth of Sallet-Oyl, and as much Dragon-water, a penny-worth of Treacle, and make all these warm upon

upon the coals, then put in an ounce of Cinamon Anniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the Horse luke warm to drink.

All these receits are exceeding good, yet for mine own part, and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, that there is nothing better for this Disease than moderate Exercise, much fasting, and once in four or five days a pint of sweet Wine, with two spoonfuls of the powder of Diapente.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Foundring in the Body, being a surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour.

THIS Disease of Foundring in the Body, is of all Surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are daily Travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much Provender suddenly after Labour; The Horse, being then, as it were; panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilful horse-men do at this day) whereby the meat which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evil and gross humours which by little and little spread themselves through the Members, do at length oppress and almost confound the whole Body, absolutely taking away from him all his Strength, insomuch that he can neither go nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise again: besides it taketh away from him his instrumental powers, as the office both of Urine and Excrements which cannot be performed but with extreme pain. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather lean, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the Horse to drink too much in his Travel, being very hot, whereby the Grease being suddenly cooled it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome faluess, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of Death only. Now whereas some Farriers do hold, that this Foundring in the Body, should be no other than the Foundring in the Legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evil humours which resort down-ward, they are much deceived: for it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of Corporal and Substantial evils, which by an Unnatural accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawn from the French word

Fundu,

Fundu, signifying melting, truly I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers which knew not how to intitle the Disease, than any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: for mine own part, I am of opinion, that this Disease which we call Foundering in the body, doth not only proceed from the causes aforesaid, but also and most oftest by suddain washing Horses in the Winter-season, when they are extream fat and hot with instant Travail, where the Cold Vapor of the Water striking into the Body, doth not only astonish the inward and vital parts, but also freezeth up the skin, and maketh the Blood to lose his Office. Now the signs to perceive this Disease are, holding down of his head, stairing up of his hair, Coughing, Staggering behind, trembling after water, dislike of his Meat, Leanness, Stiff going, Disability to rise when he is down: And to conclude, which is the chiefest sign of all other, his belly will be clung up to his Back, and his Back risen up like a Camel.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the Farriers, is, first to ☞ rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Clister: which done, and that the Horses belly is emptyed, then take of Malmsey a quart, of Sugar half a quartern, of Cinamon half an ounce, of Licoras and Annisseeds, of each two spoonfuls beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warm them together at the fire, so that the Honey may be molten, then give it the Horse luke-warm to drink which done walk him up and down either in the warm Stable, or some warm Road the space of an hour, then let him stand on the Bit fasting two hours more, only let him be warm cloathed, Stopt, and Littered, and when you give him hay, let it be sprinkled with Water, and let his Provender be very clean sifted from dust, and given by a little at once; and let his drink be warm mashes of Malt and Water. Now when you see him recover and get a little streingth you shall then let him blood in the Neck-vein, and once a day perfume him with Frankincense to make him sneeze, and use to give him exercise abroad when the weather is warm, and in the house when the Weather is stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which use for this Disease, to take a half penny worth of Garlick, two penny-worth of the powder of pepper, two pennyworth of the powder of Ginger, two penny worth of Grains bruised, and put all these into a pottle of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drink by a quart at a time, dieting and ordering him as aforesaid; And when he getteth strength, either let him blood in

the Neck-vein, or the Spur-veins, or on both : to conclude, there is no Drink nor Diet which is comfortable, but it is moſt Soveraign good for this infirmity.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the greedy Worm, or hungry Evil in Horſes.

THIS hungry Evil is a Diſeaſe more common, than found out by our Farriers, becauſe the moſt of our Horſe-Maſters being of great ignorance, hold it a ſpecial vertue to ſee a Horſe eat eagerly, whereas indeed this over-haſty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and ſickneſs of the inward parts ; and this Diſeaſe is none other than an inſatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old Cuſtom, and for the moſt part, it followeth ſome extreme great emptineſs or want of natural Food, the Beaſt being evén at the pinch, and ready to be chap-faln. There be ſome Farriers which ſuppoſe that it proceedeth from ſome extreme Cold outwardly taken by travelling in cold and barren places, as in the Froſt and Snow, where the outward Cold maketh the Stomach cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The ſigns are only an alteration or change in the Horſes feeding, having loſt all temperance, and ſnatching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger : The Cure according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, firſt to comfort his Stomach by giving him great ſlices of white-bread toaſted at the fire, and ſteeped in Muskadine, or elſe Bread untoaſted, and ſteeped in Wine, and then to let him drink Wheat-flower and Wine brewed together. There be others that uſe to knead ſtiff Cakes of Wheat-flower and Wine, and feed the horſe therewith. Others uſe to make him bread of Pine-tree-nuts and Wine mingled together, or elſe common Earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better than moderately feeding the Horſe many times in the day with wholſome Bean-Bread, well baked or Oats well dried and ſifted.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of the Diseases of the Liver in general, and first of the Inflammation thereof.

THere is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many Diseases, as either the Liver of a man or any other Creature, only through the ignorance of our common Farriers, (who make all inward Diseases one sickness) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let pass, and many times poysoned with false potions; but true it is, that the Liver sometimes by the intemperateness thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by means of evil humours, as Choler, or Flegm overflowing in the same, heat ingendring Choler, and Coldness Flegm, the Liver is subject to many sicknesses, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, Apostumation, or Ulcer, or by obstructions, Stoppings, or hard knobs: or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signs to know if the Disease proceed from hot causes, is leanness of Body, the loathing of Meat, voiding dung of a strong scent, great Thirst, and looseness of Belly. The signs to know if the Disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of Body, appetite of Meat, Dung not stinking, no Thirst, and the Belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceed to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it cometh by means that the blood through the abundance, thinness, boyling heat, or sharpness thereof, or through the Violence of some outward causes breaketh out of the veins, and floweth into the Body or substance of the Liver; and so being dispossessed of his proper Vessels, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it cometh, that for the most part, the hollow side of the Liver is first consumed, yea, sometimes the full side also: This Inflammation by a natural heat is sometimes turned to Putrifaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or art, it doth break and run, then it is called an Ulcer, or filthy sore. Now the signs of an inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver, (which is the least hurtful) is loathing of meat, great Thirst, looseness of Belly, and a continual unwillingness to lye on the left side: but if the

Inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signs be short Breathing, a dry Cough, much pain, when you handle the Horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingness to lie on the right side. The signs of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of Breath, and a continual looking to his side. The signs of Ulceration, is continual coldness, starting up the hair, and much feebleness and fainting, because the filthy matter casting evil vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occasion Death. Now for the Cure of these Inflammations, some Farriers use to take a quart of Ale, an Ounce of Myrrh, an ounce of Frankincense, and brewing them well together, give it the Horse divers mornings to drink. Others use to take three Ounces of the seeds of Smallage, and three Ounces of Hyssop, and as much Southern-wort, and boyl them well in Oyl and Wine mingled together, and give the Horse to drink; keep the Horse warm, and let him neither drink cold water, nor eat dry dusty Hay.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver.

THESE Obstructions or Stoppings of a Horses Liver, do come most commonly by Travelling or Labour on a full stomach, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth gross and tough Humours, which humours by the extremity of Travel, are violently driven into the small veins, through which the Liver ought to receive good Nutriment, and so by that means breedeth obstructions and Stoppings. Now from these Obstructions, (when they have continued any long time) especially if the humours be Cholerick, breedeth many times hard knobs on the Liver, which knobs maketh the Horse continually lye on his right side, and never on the left, because if he should lye on the left side, the weight of the Knob would oppress the Stomach, and even sicken all the vital parts in him.

The signs of these Obstructions or Stoppings; are heaviness of Countenance, distention or swelling, great Dulness and Sloath in the Horse when he beginneth his Travail, and a continual looking back to his short Ribs, where remaineth his greatest pain and torment. Now the cure thereof, *i.e.* to seeth continually in the water which he drinketh, *Agrimony*, *Fumitory*, *Camomil*, *Wormwood*, *Licoras*

Licoras, *Anniseeds*, *Smallage*, *Parsley*, *Spikenard*, *Gentian*, *Succory*, *Endive* and *Lupins*, the Virtues whereof are most comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose capacities are unable to dive into these several distinctions, and that this Work (or Master-piece) is intended for the weakest Brain whatsoever : You shall understand, that there be certain general signs to know when the Liver of a Horse is grieved with any grief, of what nature or condition soever it be ; and so likewise general Receits to cure all the griefs, without distinguishing or knowing their Natures : You shall know then if a Horse have any pain or grief in his Liver by these signs. First, by a loathing of his Meats, next by the wasting of his Flesh, driness of his Mouth, and roughness of his Tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lie on the side grieved : and lastly a continual looking backward.

Now the general Cure for the sickness of the Liver, is, according to the opinion of the Ancient Farriers, to give the horse Aloes dissolved in sweet Wine, for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others use to give him to Drink Ireos stampt and mixt with Wine and Water together, or instead of Ireos, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polimonia. Others give Savory with Oyl and Wine mixt together. Others use Liver-wort and Agrimony with Wine and Oyl. Others use comfortable Frictions, and to steep his provender in warm water, and to mix with his Provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him stand warm, and lie soft : But that which is generally praised above all Medicines, is, to give the Horse a Wolfs Liver beaten to powder, and mixt either with Wine, Water, Oyl, or any other Medicine.

Now for a conclusion of this Chap: If the Farriers skill be so good ☞ that he can distinguish the nature of each several infirmity about the Liver ; then I would have him for to understand, that for Inflammations (which are the first beginners of all Diseases) would be used simples that mollifie and disperse humours, as by these, Linseed, Fenugreek, Camomil, Anniseeds, Mellilot, and such like ; to which mollifying simples, would be ever added some simples that are astringent or binding, as are these, red Rose leaves, Bramble leaves, Worm-wood, Plantain, Myrrh, Mastick, Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and Ulcers must be cleansed and scoured downward, either by excrement or Urine, and therefore the use of such simples as provoke either the one

or

or the other, of which you shall find plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the Consumption of the Liver.

OF the Consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the Mourning of the Chine: yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it cometh only from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it cometh of any humour, especially of Cholerick matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the Liver, which rotting by leasurable degrees, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they think, from corrupt meats and sweet Drinks. And the last thinketh it cometh by extreme heat gotten in Travail, which inflaming the Blood, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver: because the Liver is spongious like the Lungs, therefore the Cure of this Disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth not so speedy or sudden Death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the Body for want of good Nutriment, doth in time consume. The signs of this Disease is a loathing of Meat, and a stretching forth of the Horses Body at length as he standeth, he will seldom or never lye down, his breath will stink marvellously, and he will continually cast exceeding foul matter, either at one nostril, or both, according as one side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, he will ever have betwixt his neather jaws, about the midst of them, a hard knob or Kirnel about the bigness of a Walnut. Now the preservative of this Disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take half a pint of Malmsey, and as much of the Blood of a young Pig, and to give the Horse Luke warm to drink. Other Farriers use to give the Horse no other Food for the space of three dayes, then warm wort, and Oats baked in an Oven, being sure that the Horse be kept fasting the first Night before he receive his Medicine. Others suppose, that if into the Wort which he drinketh, you do not put every Morning two or three spoonful of the powder made of Agrimony, red Rose leaves, Sac-

carum

carum Rosaceum, Diarrhadon Abbatis, Disantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of a Wolf, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goats milk lukewarm, is very good. Others hold that Malmsey, and the juyce of Featherfew given to drink is also good.

Others use (and hold it equal with the best) to take an ounce of Sulphur Vive beaten into fine powder, and a penny weight of Myrrh beaten to fine powder, mix them together with a new laid Egg, and give them to drink with half a pint of Malmsey; use this divers times, and keep the Horse fasting, yet separate him from other horses, for this Disease is infectious.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the Diseases of the Gall.

AS is the Liver, even so the Gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many Infirmities, as to Obstruction, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulness and emptiness of the Bladder, and Stone in the Gall. And these obstructions do chance two several ways: First, when the passage by which Choler should pass from the Liver unto the Bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper Receptacle, is stopped, and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth empty: for you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing than a long, slender, little greenish Bladder fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholerick bitter moisture, which would otherwise offend not only the Liver, but the whole body also. Now if the passage of this necessary Vessel be stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either Vomiting, the Lax, the Bloody-flux, or the Yellows.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall, down into the Guts and Excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulness of Spirit, suffocating, Belching, heat, Thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any Beast there is not a more dangerous Disease, than the overflowing of the Gall: But our latter experience findeth that a Horse hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent, either by Sweat, Exercise, or else doth turn to infirmity. The signs of both these kinds of evils, or obstructions, are yellowness of the skin,

infected

infected with the yellow Jaundise, and a continual Costiveness of the Body: and the cures of them are, according to the most Antient Farriers, to give the Horse Milk, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or instead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Annifeeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold, that Selladine roots and leaves chopt and bruised, and boyled in Beer; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or Herb of grace, and given the Horse luke-warm to drink, is most soveraign.

Now for the Stone in the Gall, which is of a Blackish colour, it comes from the Obstruction of the Conduits of the Bladder, whereby the Choler being too long kept in, becometh dry, and so converteth first into Gravel, and after into a sollid and hard Stone, of which both the signs and the Cures are those last before rehearsed.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of all such Diseases as are incident to the Spleen.

THE Spleen is a long, narrow, flat, spungy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the Receptacle of Melancholly and the Dregs of the Blood, and is as subject to infirmity as any inward member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, Knobs and Swellings; it is through the Sponginess, apt to suck in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same over the whole body: The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribs, where you shall perceive some small Swelling, which swelling gives much grief to the Midriff, especially after a full Stomach, taking away much more of the Horses digestion than his Appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob, or Stony Substance.

This Disease, or Diseases of the Spleen, are incident to Horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit or greedy eating of green Meats. The signs of which Diseases are these, Heaviness, Dulness, pain on the left side, and hard swellings, short Breath, much groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his Meat. The Cure, according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is, to make the Horse sweat either by Labour or Cloaths, then to give him to drink a quart of White-Wine, wherein hath been boyled the Leaves of Tamarisk bruised,

bruised, and a good quantity of Cummin seed beaten to powder, and give it lukewarm. Others use, after the horse hath sweat, to pour into his left Nostril every day the juyce of Myrabolans, mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a Pint: Others take Cummin-seed and Honey, of each six Ounce, of Laserpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night, and give the Horse a quart thereof next Morning, having fasted all night. Others make the horse to drink of Garlick, Nitrum, Hare-hound, and Worm-wood sodden in sharp Wine, and to bath all the Horses left side with warm water, and to rub it hard. There be others which use to Cauterize or Scarifie the Horses left-side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practice.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Yellows or Jaundise.

AS before I said, from the Obstructions or Over-flowings of the Gall and Spleen, doth Spring this Disease which our common Smiths call the Yellows, and our better Farriers the Jaundise: and you shall understand, that of this Yellows or Jaundise, there are two kinds, the first an over-flowing of Choler, proceeding from the sickness of the Gall, and it is called simply the Yellows, or yellow Jaundise; because the outward parts of the Body, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inside of the Lips, and the like, are dried and coloured Yellow: the other an over-flowing of Melancholly, proceeding from the sickness of the Spleen, and is called the black Yellows, or Black Jaundise, because all the outward parts are Black. Now both these Jaundise or Yellows, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the Yellow Jaundise, when the Liver by inflammation hath all his Blood converted into Choler, and so overwhelms the Body: And the black Jaundise, when some Obstructions in the Liver-vein, which goeth to the Spleen, hindreth the Spleen from doing his Office, and receiving the dregs of Blood from the Liver, or else when the Spleen is surcharged with such Dregs of Blood, and so sheddeth them back again into the Veins.

Now although this distinction of the Black Jaundise, or black Yellows, will appear strange unto our common Farriers, yet it is most certain, that whensoever a Horse dyeth of the Yellows, he dieth only

of the black Yellows: For when it cometh unto the case of Mortality, then are all the inward powers converted to blackness, and the Yellow substance is clean mastered; but whilst the matter is yellow, so long the Horses Body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these Yellows do ever follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preheminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward Diseases in a horses Body, that is most common, oftnest in practice, and yet most mortal, if it be not early prevented. The signs of this Disease of yellow Jaundise, are yellowness of his Eyes, Nostrils, inside of the Lips, the Skin, the Yard. and the Urine: his Ears and his Flank will sweat, and he will groan when he lyeth down, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forsake his meat also. The Cures which are at this day in practice for this Disease, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and Poysonous: Every Smith almost making a Medicine of his own invention, God knows weak, and to little purpose, but for the best Receipts, which at this day are used by any good Farriers whatsoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

First, For the Antient Farriers, both Italian and French, they did use to take of Thyme and Cummin, of each a like quantity, and stamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and Water; and then to let him blood in the Pasterns.

But now the Farriers of later days use, first to let the horse blood in the Neck-vein, suffering him to bleed, till you perceive the Blood to grow pure, then to give him this Drink: Take of white-Wine; or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron, and Turmerick, of each half an ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great handfull of Selladine, and being luke-warm give it the horse to drink, then keep him warm the space of three or four dayes, giving him warm water with a little Bran in it. Others use after the Horse is let blood in the Neck-vein. First to Rake him, then to give him a suppositary made of Salt, Honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drink half an ounce of Myrrh dissolved in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after blood-letting, only cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after Blood-letting will only stop his Ears with Selladine, and then bind them fast up and let him have no exercise for twelve hours after. Others use, after the letting him Blood, to give him a Clister, then to take Saffron, and Turmerick, and mixing them with a quart of Milk, give it him

to

to drink luke-warm. Others use to let the Horse blood in the third barr of the Roof of his Mouth, with a sharp knife and after he hath bled well, to take an half penny worth of English Saffron, and a penny worth of Turmerick, and a new laid Egg, with the shell and all small broken, and mix it in a quart of stale Ale or Beer, and so set him up warm.

Others use to take after Blood-letting, of Turmerick, and Saffron, alike quantity, and two or three Cloves, and six spoonfuls of Vinegar aud Verjuyce, and to put into each Ear of the Horse, three spoonfuls thereof, and then stop his Ears with black Wool, and so tye them up for seven or eight dayes after. Others take long Pepper, Grains, Turmerick, and Licoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong beer or Ale, And give it the Horse to drink. Others use after taking and Blood-letting, to take the juyce of Ivy-leaves, and mingling it with wine, to squirt it into the Horses Nostrils; and to let him drink only cold water mixt with Nitrum, and let his Food be grass, or new Hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirm, all the best practices which are at this day known for this Disease, and where they all fail, there is no hope of Cure, as the (old Farriers affirm) yet let me thus far further inform you, This Disease of the Yellows, or Jaundise, if the Keeper and Master be not a great deal the more skilfull and carefull, will steal upon you unawares, and (as I have often seen) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any Town that can give you succour, it may be your Horse will fall down under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour questionless he will be dead.

In this extremity you have no help, but to draw out a sharp pointed Knife, Dagger, or Rapier for a need, and as near as you can, opening the Horses mouth, strike him blood about the third Bar of the Roof of his mouth, and so letting him eat and swallow his own Blood a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to a place of rest, then be sure to blood him, and give him half an ounce of the powder of Diapente in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus do three or four Mornings together, and let him be fasting before, and fast two hours after; and after the Potion give him a little moderate Exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the Black Jaundise, which of some Farriers

is called the dry Yellows, though for mine own part: I hold it to be incurable, Yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary Humour, and prescribe this Physick for the Cure thereof: First, to give the Horse a Clister made of Oyl, Water, Milk and Nitrum, after his Fundament is raked, then to pour the decoction of Mallows, mingled with sweet Wine in his Nostrils, and let his Meat be Grass or Hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats: he must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this Disease would only have the horse drink the decoction of wild Colewarts sodden in Wine; the effects of all which I only refer to experience.

CHAP. LXXIV.

Of the Dropsie or evil habit of the Body.

WHereas we have spoken before of the Consumption of the Flesh, which proceedeth from Surfeits, ill Lodging, Labour, Colds, Heats and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another Drineſs or consumption of the flesh, which hath no apparent cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evil habit of the Body, which is most apparently seen, when the horse by dislike doth lose his true natural colour, and when Bayness turns to Dunness, Blackness to Duskishness. and whiteness to Ashiness, and when he loseth his Spirit, Strength and Alacrity. Now this cometh not from want of Nutriment, but from the want of good Nutriment, in that the Blood is corrupted either with Flegm, Choler, or Melancholly, (coming according to the opinion of our best Farriers) either from the Spleen, or the weakness of the Stomach or Liver, causing naughty Digestion.

Others think it cometh from foul feeding, or much idleness, but for mine own part, albeit I have had as much tryal of this Disease, as any one man, and that it becometh not me to controul men of approved judgment; yet this I dare aver, that I never saw this Disease of the evil habit, or evil Colour of the Body, spring from any other grounds, than either disorderly or Wild riding, or from hunger, or barren woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no difference. For the Dropsie being divided into three kinds, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universal swelling of the Body, but especially the Legs, through the abundence o'

wat

water lying between the skin and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the covering or bottom of his Belly, as if the horse were with foal which is only a watrish humour abiding betwixt the skin and the Rim: And the third, a swelling in the same place by the like humours abideth betwixt the great Bag and the Kell.

The common signs of this disease, are shortness of Breath, swelling of the Body or legs, loss of the horses natural colour, no appetite unto Meat, and a continual Thirst; his Back, Buttocks and Flanks will be dry, and shrunk up to their Bones; his Veins will be hid that you cannot see them, and wheresoever you shall press your finger any thing hard against his Body, there you shall leave the print behind you, and the flesh will not arise of good space after: When he lyeth down he will spread out his Limbs, and not draw them round together, and his hair will shed with the smallest Rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but only two Dropsies, that is a wet Dropsie, and a Windy dropsie, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same Signs and the same Cure, which according to the Ancient Farriers is in this sort: first, to let him be warm covered with many Cloaths, and either by Exercise, or otherwise drive him into a Sweat; then let his back and body be rubbed against the hair, and let his Food be for the most part Coleworts, Smallage and Elming Boughs, or whatsoever else will keep his Body soluble or provoke Urine, when you want this Food, let him eat Grass or Hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may give him a kind of Pulse called ciche, steeped a day and a night in water, and then taken out and laid so as the water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would have the horse drink Parsley stampt and mixt with Wine, or else the Root of the Herb called Panax stampt and mixt with Wine. Now whereas some Farriers advise to slit the Belly a handful behind the Navel, That the wind and water may leisurely issue forth, of mine own Knowledge, I know the Cure to be most vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter spoiling and killing of the horse: For the Horse is a Beast and wanting knowledge of his own good, will never be drest but by violence, and that violence will bring down his Kell, so as it will never be recovered. Now for these Dropsies in the Belly, although I have shewed you the signs and the Cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other Dropsie, which is the swelling of the egs, and the loss of the Colour of the

hair

hair, it is very ordinary and in hourly pr[illegible]e: the best Cure where-of, that ever I found amongst the Farri[illegible] this.

☞ Take of strong Ale a Gallon, and set [illegible] the fire, and then skum off the white froth which riseth, then [illegible]e a handful of Worm-wood with stalks. and put them into th[illegible], and let them boyl till it be come almost to a quart: then take [illegible] and strain it exceeding-ly, then dissolve into it three Ounces [illegible]t Treacle, and put in also an ounce, and a half of long P[illegible] grains beaten to very fine powder: then brew them [illegible] till it be no more but luke-warm, and so give it the Hor[illegible]k; the next day let him blood on the Neck-vein, and [illegible] Fore legs with train Oyl, and so turn him into good Grass, and fear not his Recovery.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Diseases in the Guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick.

A Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities: as namely, to the Wind Cholick, fretting of the Belly, Costiveness, Lax, Bloody-flux, and Worms of divers kinds. Now for the Cholick, it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or Bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive matters, which do breed divers infirmities, especially Wind, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the Body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the Stomach and other inward Members. This Disease doth not so much appear in the Stable, as abroad in Travail, and the signs are these: the Horse will often offer to stale, but cannot; he will strike at his Belly with his hinder foot, and many times stamp; he will forsake his Meat, and towards his Flank you shall see his Belly appear more full than ordinary, and he will desire to lie down and wallow. The Cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is, only to give him a Clister made either of wild Cucumbers, or else of Hens dung, Nitrum, and strong Vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of Clisters, and after the Clister labour him.

Others use to give the Horse the Urine of a Child to Drink, or a Clister of Sope and Salt water. Others use to give him five drams of Myrrh in good Wine and then Ca[illegible] gently thereupon. Others use to give him smallage and [illegible] with his Provender, and then

then to travail him till he sweat. But for my own part, I hold it best to take a quart of Malmsey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each half an ounce, of Sugar half a quartern, and give it the Horse luke-warm, and then ride him at least an hour after ; but before you Ride him, anoint all his Flanks with Oyl de bay, or oyl of Spike. Now if whilst you ride him he will not Dung, you shall then Rake him, and if need be, enforce him to dung, By thrusting into his fundament a pill'd Onion Jagged cross wayes, that the tickling of the Juyce may inforce Ordure : And by no means, for 4 or 5 dayes, let him drink no cold water, or eat any Grass or green Corn, but keep him upon wholsom dry meat in a warm Stable.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Belly-ake or fretting in the Belly.

BESIDES, the Cholick, there is also another grievous pain in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or Fretting in the Belly ; and it proceedeth either from eating of green Pulse, when it grows on the ground, or raw undried Pease, Beans or Oats, or else when sharp fretting Humours, or Inflammations. or abundance of gross matter is gotten between the great Gut and the Pannicle. The signs are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his Belly, and gnawing upon the Manger. The Cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, first to anoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl, Butter or Grease, and then thrusting it in at the Horses Fundament, pull out as much Dung as you can reach, which is called raking a Horse ; then give him a Clister of water and Salt mixt together, or instead thereof, give him a suppositary of Honey and Salt, and then give him to drink the powder of Centuary and wormwood brewed with a quart of Malmsey. Others use only to give the Horse a Suppositary of New-castle Soap, and for mine own part, I hold it only the best.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Costiveness or Belly-bound.

COstiveness, or Belly-bound, is, when a Horse is so bound in his Belly that he cannot Dung, it is a Disease of all other most incident

incident to Running Horses, which are kept in a dry and hot Diet. Now my Masters, the great Farriers, affirm, that it proceedeth from Glut of Provender, or over-much feeding, and Rest; or from wind, grosh humours, Cold, causing Obstructions, and Stoppings in the Guts; but I suppose (and imagine that all the best keepers of Hunting or Running Horses will consent with me) that it rather proceed, from much fasting, whereby the Gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of its own great heat, Lake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certain Rule, that nothing can overflow before it be full. Or else it may proceed from eating too much dry and hot Food, which sucking up the flegm and moisture of the Body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The signs are only abstinence from the office of Nature, (I mean Denging) which is most usual in all Beasts. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the Ancientest Farriers, is, to take the water wherein Mallows have been long boiled, to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto half a pint of Oyl, or instead thereof, half a pint of Butter very sweet, and one ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and pour that into his Fundament Clisterwise: then with a string fasten his Tail hard to his Tuel, and then trot the horse up and down a pretty while, that the Medicine may work so much the better; then let his Tail loose, and suffer him to void all that is in his belly; then bring him into the Stable, and having stood a while, give him a little well-clarified honey to drink; then cover him and keep him warm, and let his Drink for three or four days be nothing but sweet warm Mashes of Malt and Water. Other Farriers use to take eleven leaves of Laurel, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the Horse to drink with one quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to powder and mixing it with Sugar, to give it the horse in a mash to drink. Now for mine own part, I could wish you, if the Disease be not very extremely vi l nt, only but to take the horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his Cloaths till he sweat, and then give him a handful or two of clean Rye, and a little Latin one mixt with it: for Brimstone being given with Provender at any time will scour; but if the Disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a pound of white Soap, a handful of Sponge, a handful of Hemp-seed, bray them very well together, and give it the horse to

drink

drink with a quart of Ale luke-warm, then let him Fast, and Exercise him more than half an hour after ; and be sure to keep him very warm, and let his Drink be only warm mashes. A World of other Scouring Receipts there be : but you shall find them more at large in the Chapter of Purgations, Clisters, and Suppositories.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of the Lax or too much scouring of Horses.

THe Lax, or open flux of a horses body, is a dangerous disease and quickly bringeth a horse to great weakness and faintness ; It proceedeth sometimes from the abundance of Cholerick Humours, descending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold water immediately after his Provender, sometimes by suddain Travelling upon a full stomach before his Meat be digested ; sometimes by hasty Running or Galloping presently after Water ; and sometimes by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens-dung: there is no Disease that taketh more sore upon a horse in a short time than this, and yet, sith nature her self in this Disease seemeth to be a Physician to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to go about too suddenly to stop it ; but if you find that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her own strength and the horse the good estate of his body, then you shall seek remedy ; and the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of Ancient Farriers, is this: Take of bean-flower, and bole-Armeny, of each a quartern, mix them together in a quart of red Wine, and give it the horse luke warm to drink, and let him be kept very-warm, and have much rest : also let the water that he drinketh be luke-warm, and mixt with bean flower ; yet by no means let him drink above once in four and twenty hours, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pint of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, half an ounce of Cinamon, and as much of the rind of Pomegranet, and mixing them together, give it the horse lukewarm to drink, & let him not drink any other drink, except it be once in four and twenty hours, half a horses draught of warm water mixt with bean-flower. Other take a half-penny worth of Allom beaten into fine powder, and Bole-Armeny beaten small, and a quart of good Milk, mingle them together till the Milk be all on a Curd, and then give it the horse to drink, observing the Dyet before rehearsed : But if this Disease shall happen to a sucking

Foal, as commonly it will, and I my self have seen many that for want of experience have perished thereby, you shall then only give it a pint of strong Verges to drink, and it is a present Remedy. For the Foal only feeding upon milk, and that milk avoiding in as liquid from as it was received, The Verges will curdle it, and so make it avoid in a grosser and more tougher substance.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the bloody-flix in Horses.

IT is not to be doubted, but that a horse may have the Bloody-Flix, for in my Experience I have seen it, besides the confirmation of all my masters, the old Farriers. Now of the Bloody-flix they make divers kinds, for sometimes the fat of the slimy filth which is avoided, is sprinkled with a little Blood; sometimes the Excrements is watrish Blood, like the water wherein bloody flesh hath been washed; sometimes Blood mixed with melancholy, and sometimes pure Blood: but all these proceeding from one head, which is the Exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by one Cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Guts, or in the outward great Gut, you shall observe if the matter and Blood be perfectly mixt together, then it is the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the Blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thick outward Guts. Now this Bloody Flix cometh most commonly of some sharp humours, ingendring either by a naughty raw Food, or unreasonable Travel, which humours being violently driven, and having passed through many crooked and narrow ways, do cleave to the Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them and cause Exulcerations and grievous pain. Sometimes this Bloody-flix may come from extreme cold, extream heat, or extreme moistness, or through the Violence of some extreme scouring formerly given, wherein some poisonous simple as Siomony, Stibium, or such like, may be applied in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weakness of the Liver, or other members, which serve for Digestion. The sign of this Disease, is only the avoiding blood with his Excrements, or Blood instead of Excrements: And the Cure, According to the opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is to take Saffron one ounce, of Myrrh two ounces, of Southern-wood three ounces, of Parsley

Parſley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittle-wort, and hyſſop of each two ounces, of Caſſia, which is like Cinamon, one ounce, let all theſe be beaten into fine powder and mingled with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar wrought into a paſte, of which paſte make little Cakes, and dry them in the ſhadow, and being dried diſſolve ſome of them in a pint and a half of Barley-milk, or for want thereof, in that juyce which is called Crimor Priſame, and give it the horſe to drink: for it not only cureth the Bloody-flix, but being given with a quart of warm water, it healeth all grief and pain either in the Belly or Bladder, which cometh for want of ſtaling.

Now for mine own, I have ever uſed for the Bloody-flix, but this Medicine only. Take of Red Wine three pints, half a hand- ☞ ful of the herb called Burſa Paſtoris, or Shepherds purſe, and as much Tanners bark taken out of the the Fat and dried, boyl them in the Wine till ſomewhat more than a pint be conſumed, and then ſtraining it very hard give it the horſe luke-warm to drink, if you do add unto it a little Cinamon it is not amiſs. There be other Farriers which uſe to diſſolve in a pint of Red Wine, four ounces of the conſerve of Sloes, and give it the horſe to drink: but either of the other Medicines are fully ſufficient.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of the falling down of a Horſes Fundament.

HOrſes ſometimes, by means of the Diſeaſe formerly ſpoken of, which is the Bloody-flix, and ſometimes by a natural weakneſs in the inward Bowels, coming thro[illegible]h the Reſolution of the Muſcles, ſerving to draw up the Fundame[illegible], will many times have their Fundaments fall down in great length, both to the much pain of the horſe, and great loathſomeneſs to the beholders. Now the reſolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much ſtraining to dung when a Horſe is coſtive, and partly by over-great moiſture, as it happens in young Children: For, than a horſe, no creature hath a moiſter body. Now the ſigns are apparent, hanging down of the Fundament, and the Cure is this. Firſt, you ſhall look whether the Fundament be inflam'd, that is whether it be much ſwell'd or no, if it be not inflamed, then you ſhall anoint it with Oil of Roſes warmed on a Chafing-diſh and coals, or for want of ſuch

Oyl, you shall wash it with warm red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge, dipt in the decoction of Mallows, Camomil, Linseed, and Fenugreek, and also you shall anoint it weil with Oyl of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to asswage the Swelling, and then with a gentle hand, and warm Linnen Cloaths, thrust it fair and softly up into his true place; that done, bath all the Tuel with red Wine, wherein hath been sodden Acatium, Galls, Achron Cups, and the pairing of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of Bole-Armonick, or of Frankincense, or SanguisDraconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or such like, and then give him to drink the dry Pills of Pomegranets beaten to powder, either with wine or warm water, and be sure to keep the horse very warm, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a mean and soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtfull.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horses Body.

MY Masters, the old Antient Farriers, are of opinion, that the Guts of a Horse do breed three sorts of Worms, that is to say, little short Worms with great red heads, and long small white tailes, which we call Bots: short and thick worms all of a bigness like a mans Finger, which we call Truncheons, and great long worms as big as a mans Finger, and at the least six inches in length, which we call by the Simple name of Worms only.

Now in mine own Experience, and all other Mens, I find a fourth ☞ sort, which is of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thick, short, sharp heads, and are called poysonous red Worms, and are of all other most poysonous and dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the throat of the Horse, and will choak and kill him, and sometimes they will eat through his stomach, and so confound him.

Now for mine own part I am of opinion, that the first which are Bots, are not Bred in the Guts, but the Stomach only, because having cut up many horses, I never could yet find any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other worms, nor ever cut up the stomach of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Worms: whence I am confidently opinionated, that Bots are ever bred in the stomach, and both the other sorts of worms in the Guts:

Guts: Truth it is, that all three do proceed from one self-same cause, which is a Raw, Gross, and Flegmatick matter, apt to putrefaction, and ingendred by foul and naughty Feeding, and as they proceed from one self same cause, so have they all one sign and all one Cure. The signs then are, the horse will forsake his Meat, and not stand upon his Legs, but wallow and tumble, and beat his Belly with his feet, and sometimes the pain will be so extream, that he will beat his Head against the ground, and truly, the Violence of the Red Worms are wonderfull, for I have seen Horses whose stomach have been eaten quite through with them, so that the meat which they eat, could not abide in their Stomach, but fell upon the swallowing into the Body making the Body swell like a Tun, and so have died with huge torment Now the Cure according to the antienst Farriers is, to take a quart of sweet Milk, of Honey, a quartern, and give it him luke-warm: then walk him up and down for the space of an hour after, and so let him rest for that day, with as little Meat and Drink as may be; and by no means suffer him to lye down. Then the next day when the Horse is fasting, take of Rue a handfull, of Savin as much, and being well stampt, put thereunto a little Brimstone, and a little Soot of a Chimney beaten into fine powder, put all these things together in a quart of wort, or new Ale, and there let them lye in steep the space of an hour or two; then strain it hard through a fair cloath, and give it the horse to drink luke-warm, then bridle him, and walk him abroad the space of an hour, then set him up, and let him stand on the Bit two or three hours after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other Antient Farriers use only to give the Horse for this Disease the warm Guts of a new slain Hen or Chicken, being thrust down the Horses throat, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little salt be mixed with them: and this must be done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or four hours after. Others use to take three ounces of the Roots of Caphers, beaten with half so much Vinegar, and put it down the Horses Throat: or else a pint of Milk, and a spoonful of Sope given the Horse to drink: or Brimstone and Milk given to drink, all very soveraign. Others use to bind about the Snaffle or Bit, Mans-dung new made, and so ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an ounce, and brew them together with Honey and strong Ale. Others use to take only a quart of cold sweet Wort. Others take Savin and Southern-

Southern-wort, or else Wormwood, and the tops of Broom small chopt, and mix it with the horses Provender. Others use to give the horse to drink luke-warm, Elder-berries sodden in Milk. Others use to give the horse with his Provender, his own hair chopt small, and mixt with Bay-Salt. Others put hot Embers in Water, and presently strain it, and give it the Horse to drink. Others make little round Balls of Honey, and the fine powder of Chalk, and putting them into Ale, make the horse swallow them. Others use to take, especially for the long Worms, a half penny worth of Fenugreek, of Anniseeds a quarter of a pound, half a penny worth of Bay-berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmerick, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beat them into powder, put them into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse fasting luke-warm to drink: then ride him an hour after, then set him up warm four and twenty hours after. ☞ Others use, especially for the Truncheons, to take two spoonful of the powder of Wormwood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand and soak all night, and then give it the horse in the morning fasting, then keep him without meat or drink four hours after. Others use to give the horse to drink, two spoonful of Wormseed, and as much Brimstone as powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale, or Beer. Others use to take as much black Soap as a Walnut, and as much Brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlick pill'd and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the horse luke-warm to drink.

This Medicine may also be administred to a Mare great with Foal, if she be troubled with the Bots or other Worms, so that the black Soap be left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foal in the Mares Belly; yet for mine own part, I never give any inward Physical Medicines to a Mare great with Foal, but if I find her troubled with Worms, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her Breath, by the sliminess of her Mouth, and by the greatness of the Worm-veins under her Lips, then presently I do nothing but let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own blood; for that I know will both kill worms, and help most inward Maladies. But leaving Mares with Foal, let us return again unto horses. There be other Farriers which use to take a handful of new hens dung, and a quart of stale Ale, and Bray them well together; then take a handful of Bay Salt, and put two

Eggs

Eggs to it, and having mixt them all well together, give it the Horse to drink. Others use to take half a pennyworth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mix them with a pint of Milk, and give it the horse to drink: or else give him green Willow, and green Reed to eat. Others use (and think it the best of all other Medicines) to take the Guts of a young Hen or Pigeon, and roul it in a little Black Soap, then in Bay Salt, and so force it down the horses throat. Others use (especially for the Truncheons) to let the Horse drink hens dung, Mint, Sage, and Rhue, with Beer or Ale, and to let him blood in the Nostrils. To conclude, except you see the horse very much pained, you shall need to give him nothing but Rozen and Brimstone mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having care that you ever give it fasting, and long before the horse do drink.

Lastly, and as the chief of all Medicines for all manner of Worms, ☞ take as much precipitate as will lie on a silver two pence, and work it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another piece of Butter as big as a hens Egg, and so give it the horse fasting in the manner of a Pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two hours, then feed as at other times.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the Pain in a Horses Kidneys.

THere is no question, but the same Infirmities which do belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a Horse, do also belong unto the Kidneys, as Inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Ulcers; and truly in opening of Horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes wasted, which I imputed to some matter of inflammation; I have likewise found much Gravel, which was only through obstructions; and I have seen the Kidneys as black as Ink, which could not come without an Ulcerous Apostumation. But forasmuch as a Horse is a Beast, who cannot tell the manner of his pain, nor we so heedful as we might have been, to observe the Symptoms of every grief, we are inforc'd to conclude all under one name, which is the pain in the Kidneys, gotten either by some great strain in Leading, or by some great burthen bearing.

The signs, are the horse will go roling and staggering behind, his Urine will be blackish and thick, and his Stones (if he have any)

will

will be shrunk up into his body; if he have not, you shall perceive the sheath of his Yard to be drawn backward, and the great Vein which runneth up the side of his Thigh, called the Kidney-vein, will slack and beat continually. The Cure according to the opinion of the Antient Farriers, is, first to bathe his Back and Loins with Oyl, Wine, and Nitrum, warmed together, and after he is bathed cover him with warm cloaths, and let him stand in Litter up to the Belly, then give him to drink water wherein hath been sodden Dill, Fennel, Annisseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Myrrh, and Cassia, or as many as you can conveniently get of these Simples. The next Morning fasting, give him to drink a quart of Ews Milk, or for want thereof half so much Sallet-Oyl, and Deers suet molten together: or if you can get it, the root of Dassodill boyled in Wine, and let his Provender be dried Oats; and in his Diet keep him about ten days, and he will recover.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of the diseases belonging to the Bladder or urine, and first of the strangury.

ACcording to the determinate opinion of all the best and Antientest Horse-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous Diseases, as first, the Strangury, or Strangullion; the second, the pain-piss, and the third the Stone, or Piss-uppresst. Now for the first, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the horse is provoked to stale often, and avoideth nothing but a few drops; it cometh without doubt, either by the heat and sharpness of Urine, caused either by great Travel, or by sharp and hot meats and drinks, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by means of some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which Aposthume being broken, the matter resorteth down into the Bladder, and with the sharpness thereof causeth a continual provocation of pissing. The signs are (as I said before) a continual desire to piss, yet avoiding nothing but a few drops, and those with such pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat his Tail as he Pisseth.

The Cure whereof is, to bathe the horses hinder Loins with warm water, and then take Bread and Bayberries, and temper them together with May Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof down his throat three days together.

Others

Others use, (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give it the horse to drink six mornings together, observing to keep the horse from all sharp meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran, and such like.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Of the Pain-piss, or pissing with pain.

THis Disease of Pain-piss, is, when a horse cannot piss but with great pain and labour, and doth proceed sometimes from the weakness of the Bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof; and sometimes through the abundance of Flegm and gross humours, stopping the neck of the Bladder. The signs whereof are, the horse will stretch himself out as though he would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, And with a pain Clap his Tail betwixt his Thighs to his belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantity.

The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, ☞ to take the juyce of Leeks, sweet wine, and Oil, and mingling them together, to pour it into his right Nostril, and walk him a little up and down upon it: or else to give him to drink Smallage Seed, or else the Roots of wild Fennel sodden with wine. Others use to put fine sharp Onions clean pill'd, and a little bruised, into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a man's hand: or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses own Hoofs, beaten into powder, and mingled with wine, and pour it into his right Nostril, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the horse to Sheep coats, or Sheep-pens, where great store of Sheep are wonted, and making the horse to smell of the dung, and piss of the Sheep, it will provoke him to stale presently. Others use to give the Horse white dogs dung dried and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, and Wine to drink: or else hogs dung only with wine, or the dregs of horse piss and wine.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the Stone, or Piss-suppreſt in a Horſe.

THe Stone, or Piſs-ſuppreſt in a horſe, is, when a horſe would fain ſtale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the ſuppreſſion of the Urine. It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Maſters, the old Farriers, ſometimes from the weakneſs of the Bladder, when the water Conduit is ſtopped with Groſs humors, or with matter deſcending from the Liver, or from ſome Inflammation or hard Knobs growing at the mouth of the Conduit, or for that the ſinews of the Bladder are numbed, ſo as the Bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horſe being long in Travel, and not ſuffering him to ſtale; but moſt commonly and oftеſt it cometh from obſtructions in the Kidneys, where, by the cauſes aforeſaid, a certain red Gravel being bred, and falling down into the Conduits, by mixture of Flegm and other groſs humours, is there brought to be a hard ſtone, and ſtoppeth the paſſage of the Urine. For the ſigns there needeth no more but this, that he would fain piſs, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the moſt antienteſt Farriers, is, firſt to draw out his Yard, and bathe it well with white wine, and Pick it, and ſcour it well, leſt it be ſtopped with dirt and filthineſs, then put a little Oyl of Camomil into his Yard with a wax Candle, and a bruiſed Clove of Garlick: but if that will not force him to ſtale, then take of Parſley two handful, of coriander one handfull, ſtamp them and ſtrain them with a quart of white wine, and diſſolve therein one ounce of Cake Sope, and give it luke-warm unto the horſe to drink and ſee that you keep him as warm as may be, and let him drink no cold water for the ſpace of five or ſix days, and when you would have him to ſtale, let it either be on good plenty of ſtraw or upon the graſs, or in a Sheep Coat. Others (and thoſe of the beſt eſteem for horſe-leachcraft at this day) uſe only to give white-Wine, Cake-ſope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horſe drink it warm.

Others uſe to anoint the Horſes belly firſt with warm water, then when it is dried, to anoint it again with Sallet Oyl, Hogs-greaſe and Tar mixt together and made warm, and ſo hold a hot Iron againſt his Belly whilſt it is anointing, that the Oyntment may the better

better enter the skin : But I hold this Medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other pain in the Belly, than for the Stone ; yet it is approved good for all. Others use to take a pint of white wine or Ale, and mix it with a little Garlick, and the whites of ten Eggs, and give it the horse to drink ; or else give him the juyce of red-Colewarts mixt with white wine, or the root of Alexanders bruised, and sodden in Wine to drink, and wash his Yard with Vinegar. Others use to take either Worm wood, Southernwood or Galingale, or Mallows, or Pimpernell, some of these, or any one of those, stampt and strained, and give it the horse with Ale to drink. Others use to take a pint of white-Wine, half a pint of Burr seed beaten very small, two ounces of Parsley-seed, half a handful of Hyssop, half an ounce of Black sope, mix them all well together, and warm it and give it the horse to drink : or else take un-set Leeks, and stamp them small, and Sope, Milk, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a handful of Parsley-seed, beat them to powder, then take as much Butter, and mix them all together in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse lukewarm to drink : or else take the Seed of Smallage, Parsley, Saxafrace, the Roots of Philupendula, Cherry-stone Kirnels, Grummel-seeds, and Broom-seed, of each a like Quantity, beat them into fine powder, and give it the Horse with a pint or a quart of white-Wine.

Now albeit, these Medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practice, and approved very soveraign, yet for mine own part, I have found none more soveraign than this : Take a quart of strong Ale, ☞ and put it into a pottle pot ; then take as many keen Raddish Roots, clean washed, being slit through and bruised, as will fill up the pot ; then stopping the pot very close that no Air may come in, let it so stand four and twenty hours, then strain the Ale and the Roots very hard into a clean Vessel, and give it the horse fasting in the Morning to drink : then ride him a little up and down, and so set him up warm, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must do divers Mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of a Horse that pisseth Blood.

THere is nothing more certain, than that a horse many times will piss blood instead of Urine, the cause (as the most Ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these Grounds; either over-much Labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to break some vein in his Body, and then you shall see clear blood come out and no Urine at all; but if the blood be mixt with Urine, then they suppose it cometh from the Kidneys, having some ragged Stone therein, which through great Travel doth fret the veins of the Kidneys, and make them bleed, through which as the Urine passeth, it taketh the Blood away with it also; but for mine own part I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of Blood than the taking up of a Horse from Grass in the strength of winter, (as about Christmas) and presently, without a days rest in the Stable, to thrust him into a long and weary Journey; from this cause I have seen many Horses after two or three days Journey, to piss blood in most grievous manner. The signs are needless. The Cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is this: First, let the horse blood in the Palate of the mouth, to convert the Blood the contrary way; then take of Tragagant which hath been steeped in white wine half an ounce, of Poppy seed, one dram and one scruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve pine apple Kernels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seven days, the quantity of a Walnut, infused in a quart of sweet wine. Other latter Farriers use to let the horse blood in the Neck, and boyl that blood with wheat, and with the powder of dried Pomegranate Pills; then strain it, and give it him three or four mornings together to drink and let him by no means travel thereupon: or else give him of husked Beans boiled with husks of Acorns beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drink with the Roots of Daffodil mingled with Wheat flower, and Summach sodden long in Water, and so to be given to the horse with sweet wine: or else to make him drink of Goats milk and Sallet-oyl, straining thereunto a little Frumenty: or else to give him sodden Beans and

Deers

Deers suct in wine, each of these are of like force and goodness. Now there be others which use for this Disease to take Barley, and seeth in the juyce of Gum-folly, and give him the Barley to eat, and the juyce to drink : or else take the powder of Licoras and Anniseeds rouled up in Honey, and make round Balls thereof, and cast down the horses throat two or three of them : Lastly, and the best, take Licoras, Anniseeds, and Garlick bruised together with Sallet-Oyl and Honey, and give it in a quart of new Milk to the horse to drink, it is very soveraign also; and these two Medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any Cold or Glanders. ☞

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of the Colt Evil.

THe Colt Evil by the most ancient Farriers, especially the Italians, whose hot Country affordeth the Beasts of more Hot and strong Natures than ours doth, is thought to be a continual standing Erection, together with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard, proceeding either from some wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinews, or Pipes of the Yard, or else through the abundance of Seed, provoked by the natural heat of the horse; but our Farriers, who have not seen that experience, because our horses are of a Colder temper, say, it is only a swelling of the sheath of the Yard, and of that part of the Belly about the Yard, together with the cold also proceeding from corrupt seed, which cometh out of the Yard, and remaining within the sheath, there putrifieth : and this judgment we find by experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings as well as horses are subject thereunto, because they want natural heat to expel seed any further.

The signs are only the outward Swelling of the sheath and Cod, and none other : and the best cure is, first to wash the sheath clean with luke-warm Vinegar, then draw out the Yard and wash it also; which done, ride the horse twice every day, that is, morning and Evening, into some deep running water up to the Belly, tossing him to and fro, to allay the heat of his Members, till the swelling be vanished, and if you swim him now and then it will not do amiss. Others use to bath his Cods and Yard with the juyce of House-lick, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath been sod. Now this Colt-evil will sometimes stop the horses urine that he cannot piss : then you

shall

ſhall take new Ale, and a little black Sope, and give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe to waſh the horſes Cods and ſheath with Butter and Vinegar made warm. Others uſe to wath his Yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlock, or elſe take Bean-flower, Vinegar, and bole-Armonick, and mixing them together, lay it Plaiſterwiſe to his ſheath and Cods. Others make him a Plaiſter of Wine-Lees, Houſe-Leek, and Bran mixt together, and laid to his ſheath and Cods: But if the firſt receipt will ſerve, I would not wiſh you to uſe any other medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Mattering of the Yard.

THis Diſeaſe of the Mattering of the Yard, is ſeldom ſeen but amongſt the hot Races or Breeds of Horſes, as the Jennet, the Barbary, and ſuch like; and it hapneth ever at Covering time, when the horſe and Mare both being too hot, do burn themſelves, by which means there iſſueth forth of the horſes Yard much filthy matter. The ſigns are the falling down of the Matter, and a ſwelling at the end of the Yard, and the horſe can by no means draw up his Yard, or cover it within his ſheath. The Cure is, to take a pint of white-Wine and boyl therein a quartern of Roch-Allom, and with a large Serringe or Squirt, ſquirt in three or four ſquirtful into his Yard one after another, and be ſure that your ſquirt go home unto the bottom, that the Liquer or Lotion may ſcour the bloody matter away: this do five or ſix times every day till the horſe be whole.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the ſhedding of the ſeed.

THe ſhedding of the Seed, or the falling away of the Sperm in horſes, is none other than that which we call in Men the Running of the Reins: it cometh, as our old Farriers ſay, either by abundance, and Rankneſs of Seed, or by the weakneſs of the Stones, and Seed-Veſſels, not able to retain the Seed untill it be digeſted and thickned; but truly for mine own part, I think it cometh oftner (eſpecially among our Engliſh horſes) by ſome great ſtrain in Leaping, or by teaching a horſe to bound, and making him bound

above

above the compass of his Natural Strength. The signs are only the shedding of his seed, which will be white, thin, and Watrish. Th Cure, according to the Antient Experiments, is, first to Ride the horse into some cold Water up to the Belly, insomuch that his Stones may be covered with water; which done, bathe his Fundament with Water and Oyl, then cover him exceeding warm, and give him every day to drink of Red Wine, and hogs dung, till the flux of his Seed stay; but latter experience hath found this Receipt better. Take of Red Wine a quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the juyce of Plantain, and a little Mastick, and give it him to drink; and then bathe all his Back with Red Wine, and Oyl of Roses mixt together, but other Farriers take Venice-Turpentine, and being washt, beat it well with half so much Sugar, and then make round Balls as big as walnuts, and give the horse five every morning till the flux stay. ☞

CHAP. XC.

Of the falling of the Yard.

THe falling down of the Yard, is when a horse hath no strength to draw up his Yard within the sheath, but lets it hang down between his Legs illfavouredly: it cometh (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weakness of the Member, by means of some Resolution in the Muscles and Sinews, serving the same, caused by some great strain or stripe on the Back; or else through extreme wearines and Tyring. The sign is only the apparent hanging down of the Member: and the Cure is, (according to some opinions) to wash the horses Yard in Salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof with Water and Salt: but if that will not prevail, then prick all the outmost skin of his Yard with a sharp Needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deep; and then wash all the pricks with strong Vinegar, and this will not only make him draw up his Yard again, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this Cure will put it up again. There be other Farriers which for this Disease will put into the pipe of the Horses Yard, honey and Salt boyled together, and made Liquid, or else a quick flye, or a grain of Frankincense, or a Clove of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, and bathe his Back with Oyl, Wine, and Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the best Cure, according to our English practice, is, first, to wash all the Yard with white-wine warmed, and then anoint it with

Oyl

Oyl of Roſes and Honey mixt together, and ſo put it up into the ſheath, and with a little Bolſter of Canvaſ keep it from falling down, and dreſs him thus once in four and twenty hours, until he be recovered, and in any caſe let his Back be kept as warm as is poſſible, both with Cloth and a charge of Plaiſter made of Bole Armonick, Eggs, Wheat-flowe , Sanguis Dracon. Turpentine, and Vinegar; or elſe lay next his Back a wet Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry Cloth over it, and that will keep his Back exceeding warm.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Diſeaſes incident to Mares, And firſt of the Barrenneſs of the Womb.

THe only Diſeaſe incident to the Womb of a Mare, (as far forth as our Farriers are experienced) is Barrenneſs which may proceed from divers cauſes, as through the intemperance of the Matrix, being either too hot and fiery, or too cool and moiſt, or too dry; or elſe too ſhort, or too narrow, or having the neck thereof turned awry, or by means of ſome obſtruction, or ſtopping in the matrix, or in that the mare is too fat or too lean, and divers other ſuch like cauſes. Now the Cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to take a good handful of Leeks, and ſtamp them in a mortar with four or five ſpoonfuls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flies, called Cantharides, then ſtrain them all together with a ſufficient quantity of water to ſerve the Mare therewith two days together, by pouring the ſame into her nature with a Clyſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and at the end of three days next following, offer the horſe unto her that ſhould cover her, and after ſhe is covered, waſh her Nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which uſe to take of Nitrum, of Sparrows dung, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity well wrought together, and make a ſuppoſitory, and put that into her Nature, and it will cauſe her both to deſire the horſe, and alſo to conceive. There be ſome of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horſes mouth that ſhould cover her. Of all which, let only experience be your warrant.

CHAP.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Pestilent Consumption in Mares.

THere is a certain pestilent Consumption incident to Mares when they are with Foal, proceeding from cold flegm, gathered by raw Foggy Food in the Winter-season, which descending from the Kidneys, doth oppress the Matrix, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that, if she be not holpen, she will want strength to foal her foal. The signs are, sudden Leanness, and a Drooping of Spirit, with much dislike of meat, a continual desire to be laid. The Cure is, to pour into her Nostrils three pints of Fish Brine, called Garume, three or four mornings together, and if the grief be very great, then take five pints, and it will make her vent all flegm at her Nostrils.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of the rage of Love in Mares.

IT is reported by some of our English Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the year, when their Blood begins to wax warm, if they chance, when they go to the water, to see their own shadows therein, that presently they will fall into an extreme love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eat or drink, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The Cure of this Folly, is, presently to lead the Mare to the water, and there to let her see her self as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her folly.

CHAP. XCIV.

Of Mares which cast their Foals.

THe occasion why Mares cast their Foals, that is, to foal them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as strains, strokes intemperate riding, rushings, hard wintrings, or too great fatness, and such like. Now you shall understand, that this aborsement, or untimely casting of a Foal, is most dangerous to the life of

a Mare: For Nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect custom, which is the preservation of health, cannot chuse but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the Body and pores being set open to the Air, before it be able to defend the Cold, cannot chuse but be suffocated with unwholsom Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foal, and withall falleth sick upon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her up very warm, then give her two spoonful of the powder of Diapente well brewed in a pint of Muskadine, and feed her with sweet hay, and warm mashes, for at least a weak after.

CHAP. XCV.

Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.

IF it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which lead from the Matrix, be so straightned that the Mare cannot Foal, and so be in danger of her life: then it shall be good that you help her by holding and stopping her Nostrils with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage, and she will Foal with a great deal the more ease, and much sooner; and sure the pain is nothing, because a Mare always Foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath Foaled, she cannot void her Secundine, which is the skin wherein the Foal is wrapped, in that natural manner as she ought, you shall then take a good handful or two of Fennel, and boyl it in water: then take half a pint of that, and another half pint of old Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of Oyl, and mingle them all together over the fire, and being but lukewarm, pour it into the Mares Nostrils, and hold her Nostrils close with your hand, to keep him it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will avoid her Secundine presently.

CHAP. XCVI.

Of Making a Mare to cast her Foal.

IF at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foal, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foal is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a bottle of new milk, and two handfuls of Savin chopt and bruised, and potting them together, boyl

boyl them till one half be consumed; then strain it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warm to drink, then presently gallop her a good space, then set her up, do thus two Mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foal. Others use with their hands to kill the Foal in the Mares Belly, but it is dangerous, and the former Medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us return again to Horses and Mares in general.

CHAP. XCVII.

Of the Drinking of Horse-Leaches by Horses.

IF a Horse at any time drink down Horse-Leaches, they will suck his Blood and kill him. The signs are, the Horse will hang down his head to the ground, and abundance of filthy slaver will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some Blood also. The Cure is presently to give a pint of Sallet-Oyl to drink, and that will make them fall away, and kill them. But the best is, to give him half an ounce of Diapente brewed in a pint of strong Beer or Ale.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of swallowing down hens-dung, or any Venemous thing whatsoever.

IF a Horse chance to swallow down any Hens-dung with his Hay, it will Fret his Guts, and make him to void much filthy matter at his Fundament. The Cure whereof, is, to take a pint of Wine, half a pint of Honey, and two spoonfulls of Smallage-seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the Horse to drink, and then to walk him well upon the same that he may empty his Belly. But if the Horse chance to lick up any other Venemous thing, as Neut, or such like, which you shall know by the instant Swelling of his Body, and the trembling of all his members then the Cure is, first to put him into a sweat, either by Cloaths or Exercise; then to let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and look how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow down hot: or else give him strong Wine and Salt mixt together. Or else take the Root, and leaves, and fruit of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, give the horse a good spoonful thereof, with a pint of sweet Wine to drink.

Now for mine own part, I have ever used to take a pint of Sallet-

Oyl, and two ſpoonfuls of Sugar-Candy beaten to powder, And as much of the powder Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the horſe to drink, or for want of Diapente, ſo much of the ſhaving either of Ivory, or an old Stags horn, eſpecially the tips thereof burnt.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of Purging Medicines in general, and firſt of the Suppoſitory.

PUrging is ſaid of our moſt ancient Farriers, to be an emptying and diſcharging of all and every ſuperfluous humours which diſtemper the body with their evil qualities; for ſuch humours breed evil nutriment, which, when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heat, then muſt it by force either be taken away by Purgation, Cliſter, or Suppoſitory. Now foraſmuch as a horſe is troubled with many Diſeaſes in the Guts, and that nothing can purge the gut with that gentleneſs which a Suppoſitary doth, I will here firſt begin to ſpeak of Suppoſitories.

Underſtand then, that a horſe being ſurfeited, and full of evil humors needing to be purged, it is beſt firſt to give him a Suppoſitory, leſt if you ſhould come to apply a Cliſter, the great gut being ſtopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the Medicine being not able to work beyond it, loſe both labour and virtue; ſo that I make account a Suppoſitory is but only a preparative to a Cliſter, and but only to cleanſe and make looſe the great Gut, which cometh to the tuel. The gentle Suppoſitory then, and that which purgeth flegm in the beſt manner, is, to take a ſquare piece of cake ſoap, or white new Caſtle ſoap, about five or ſix inches long, and ſhaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midſt, and a little ſmaller at each end than in the midſt: then anoint it over with Sallet-Oyl, and ſo with your hand thruſt it up more than a full ſpan into his Fundament: then ſuddenly clap his Tail to his Tuel, And hold it hard and cloſe more than half an hour, in which ſpace the moſt part of the Suppoſitory will be waſted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the ſuppoſitory at his pleaſure. The next ſuppoſitory to this, and which purgeth Choler abundantly, is,

to

to take Savin stampt small, Stave-saker and Salt, and boyl them in honey till it be thick, then take and knead it, and roul it of a pretty thick long roul, as before you were taught for the hard soap, and minister it at his Tuel. The next to this, and that which purgeth Melancholy, is, to take a keen Onion, and pilling off the skin, jag it a little cross-wise with your knife, and so thrust it up into the horses Fundament. There is, besides these Suppositories, one other Suppository which is, to take a quart of honey, and boyl it on the fire till it come to be thick like a Salve, then pour it forth upon a Table, and knead it like a piece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiff, (as it will dowhen it begins to cool then roll it up under yourhand and make it in the form of a Suppository, as it was before shewed, and administer it in the same manner. This suppository is good to purge the gut of any foul humour, and therewithal is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also understand, that as these suppositories are preparative before Glisters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the sickness of the horse carrieth no great danger: for upon every slight occasion, or small driness, which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a Clister, were to bring the horses body to such an intemperate loosness, as would prove much worse then the former contrary driness. Therefore I wish every careful Farrier (because the body of a horse would not be tampered withal too much by Physick) first, in the case of costiveness, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppository: as namely, the first prescribed and naked like a mans fist) or else like a roul or quantity of Roch-Allom, or else four inches of a great tallow Candle or Percher of four in the pound; which if it works effectually, and keep the horses body soluble, then to proceed no further; but in case it do not, but that the offensive matter still breedeth and encreaseth, then to administer a Clister, and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this general rule, and never to fail in the performance, which is, never to administer either Suppository or Clister, but first immediately before you give it, to rake your horse, which raking, is in this manner. First you shall anoint all your hand and arm over either with Sallet Oyl, sweet Butter, or fresh Grease, and then thrust it into the Horses Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, Flegm, and filthy matter that you can feel, even as high up as the great bag: Which done, then either administer your

Suppository

Suppositary or Clister, which you please, at your leisure, and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physick, keep him exceeding warm

CHAP. C.

Of Glisters, and their Uses.

The natures and properties of Clisters are divers, and therefore it is necessary that every carefull Farrier learn to know to what end they serve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded: For every Clister is to be made according to the Disease. Now of Clisters, some are to ease griefs, and to allay the sharpness of the Humours; some to bind, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heal Ulcers. These Clisters by cleansing the Guts, refresh the vital parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and strong Purgation. Therefore, whensoever a horse, through grosness of humours, corruption of Blood, or abundance of flegm, Choler or Melancholy, is brought unto that evil habit of Body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his pains his Guts and Body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a probation of a Suppositary) first of all administer a Clister, lest by Purging suddenly with any Purgation or Potion, you stir up a multitude of evil humours, which finding no passage downward (because the Guts being stopped with Wind and Dregs) do strike upward, and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger.

Now for the composition of Clisters, you shall understand, that they be made of four things; that is, of decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyl, or such like unctuous matter, as Butter, or soft Grease, and fourthly of divers Salts, to provoke the vertue Expulsive. A Decoction is the broath of certain herbs and Simples boyled together in water, until the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such Decoctions, you may if you please, use some fat Beef-Broth, or the broath of Sheeps head, or such like, or Milk, or Whey, or some such like liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey, or with Sugar, according to the quality of the Disease; the Clister being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of pain: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together; or else Abstersive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this Decoction or Broath, being very clean strained, you shall never take above three

pints

pints at the moſt, and many times but a quart; into which you ſhall put ſuch Drugs as are needfull, exceeding not at the moſt, above three or four ounces, according as the ſimples be more or leſs violent: of the Oyl you ſhall never uſe in a Cli ter above half a pint, and of Salt not above three or four Drams. You ſhall alſo continually adminiſter your Cliſter luke-warm, either with ſome long Horn or a large Cliſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and fixed to the largeſt bladder you can get; and this Cliſter-pipe is of all the beſt, and doth leaſt loſe Labour. When you do adminiſter a Cliſter, you ſhall ſet the horſes hinder parts ſomewhat higher then the fore-parts, and then you ſhall put the Cliſter-pipe in at his Tuel into his Fundament up to the head, and having the confection within the Bladder, wring it with a very good Strength into his Body. A Cliſter ſhould be adminiſtred to a horſe when he is rather empty than full paunched, whether it be in the fore-noon or after-noon. Now for the retaining or holding of the Cliſter in the horſes Body, three quarters of an hour is ſufficient, of what quality ſoever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as ſoon as the Cliſter is adminiſtred unto the horſes body, you muſt draw out the pipe with all the gentleneſs that may be, and ſuddenly clap his taile to his Tuel, and ſo hold it with your hand, without any moving or ſtirring of the horſe, till the Medicine hath his full time of working.

Now to come unto particular Cliſters, that you may know which Cliſter is for which purpoſe; the firſt is, take of the pulp of Coloquintida, half an ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Worm-wood, of each half a handful, of Caſtoreum a quarter of an ounce, boyl them in three pints of water, then being ſtrained you ſhall diſſolve therein of Gerologundinum three ounces, of Salt three quarters of an ounce, and of Oyl-Olive half a pint, and ſo lukewarm adminiſter it Cliſter-wiſe, as hath been before expreſſed: this Cliſter is exceeding ſoveraign for the peſtilence in Horſes, or for any Fever of what nature ſoever.

The next is, to take the Decoction of Mallows, and to mix therewithal, either freſh Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and ſo lukewarm adminiſter it: this is of all Cliſters the moſt gentleſt, and as the former Cliſter is abſterſive or cleanſing, ſo this is lenitive and a great eaſer of pain: it is moſt ſoveraign for a horſe that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulſion, and generally for any Coſtiveneſs in a Horſe whatſoever, proceeding from inward ſurfeit or ſickneſs, as from the

the surfeit by Provender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is, to take of Salt water, or clean Brine a quart, and dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, And then luke-warm Administer it: this Clister is very good for the Cholick, or any other sickness of the Guts or Belly. And thus from these three Clisters you may compound many Clisters; but in mine opinion, if you use no more than them only, they will be fully sufficient.

CHAP. CI.

Of Purgations and their uses.

THe purging of Horses is ever by one of these two Ways, Either by Pills, Or by Potion: Pills are any solid and Substantial stuff fixed together in one body, And being made into round balls are cast down the horses throat. And a potion is, when you give the horse any liquid purging matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other Liquid stuff. Now for Pills, they only purge and make clean the head and brain, bringing flegm and other gross humors down into the Excrements: and Potions cleanse the stomach, Guts and every other inward member. Now the art of the true careful Farrier is, in chusing of the Simples, whereof these Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same. First then, it is needful that ever good Farrier (before he go about to purge his horse) know with what ill humour a horse is oppresst, As whether it proceed from Choler, Flegm, or Melancholy, and where the humours do most abound; and then what Simples are best to Purge those humours, and with what property, quality and temperament they be indued; for some simples are most violent, and next couzens to strong poysons, as Scamony, or Colloquintida: some again are gentle, and rather nourishing than Medicinal, as Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as Rhubarb, Agarick, Sene, and Aloes. Now the Ancient Farriers did use to purge their horses with the pulp of Colloquintida, sometimes with the Roots of wild Cowcumbers, and sometimes with the Broath of a sodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum. and such like, but at this day they are not of our practice, and therefore I wish him, that for his experience, still to make a tryal of strong Medicines, or know the working of every simple,

simpler, (which is a most praise-wothy ambition,) first to make his proofs upon Jades, whose loss he respecteth not, and so by that working to adventure on better horses.

But to return to my purpose, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horse by purgation, must consider the nature of the horses Disease, and the Strength of the horse, and with them joyn the nature, strength and quantity of the Medicine; he must also consider the Climate under which the horse is bred, the time of the Disease, the time of the Year, and the time of the day. For as the Diseases and the humours which cause the Disease, are sundry, so they must be avoided by sundry Medicines, sundry ways compounded, according as experience from a continual practice shall instruct you; wherein you are to observe and note, that weak, delicate, and tender horses are not to be purged with that Violence, which strong, stubborn and sturdy horses are, and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to be looked unto of every simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the Disease: for some Diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all violent inward Diseases, and some not till the water be throughly digested, as Colds, Strangles, and Apostumations. Now albeit the sickness proceeds from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in summer as in winter; Nor in the contrary case, so cold things in winter as in Summer, whereby you see the time and the season of the year is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day you are to observe, that day to be best that is most temperate, sith too much heat maketh a Horse Faint, and too much cold doth hinder the Medicine from working. A little regard is to be had in the wind and weather; for a moist day with a South Wind, is to be preferred before a North Wind with a dry day. Now the best hour of receiving any kind of Potion, is ever in the Morning, after he hath fasted from meat and drink all the night before. As soon as your Horse hath received any Pill or Potion, let him be walked, or gently ridden up and down one hour at the least, and then set up and suffered to stand on the Bit two hours after, well littered and cloathed, and stopped; but if you perceive that he beginneth to grow sick or ill (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lie down, and as soon as his sickness is past, you shall offer him to drrink a Mash of Malt, and water luke-warm: from

any other meat keep him fasting till his Medicine have done Working.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themselves; you shall easily understand, that although the antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to say Pills, and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to say, Scourings, Pills, and Purgations, Scourings are those wholsom, natural, and gentle Purging Medicines, which stirring up no great flux of humours, do only keep the Body clean from such evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholsome in health as in sickness, and may most properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertain more stronger Medicines. To speak then first of the most gentlest and natural scouring, it is only Grass being given to a horse only fifteen days together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not scoureth. Next unto Grass is Sorrage, which is only the blades of green corn as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven days and no more. Next is green Thistles, being cut up, and given the horse to eat the space of five days and no more. And the last of the this nature is the Mash, made in this manner: take a peck of ground Malt, and put it into a pail, then take a Gallon and a half of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the Malt, then with a staff, mash and stir them together at least half an hour till tasting the water you feel it as sweet as Honey, then being lukewarm, ☞ give it the horse to drink. All these scourings do only but cleanse the Guts, and cool the body, adding comforts to the spirits and engendring strength, only the Mash is to be used after labour, or instead of drink in the time of any great sickness. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these: first, when you give your horse any Provender, to mix with half a peck of Oats, a handful or two of clean drest Hempseed: or else to take a good quantity of Box-Tree Leaves, and put them into a pewter Dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leisurely till they be so hard that you may crush them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Box, and mix them together, and amongst half a peck of Oats, mix a handful of this powder, and give it the Horse to eat; both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much.

These two scourings work upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expel; they purge the stomach, Head, and Intrails, they

kill

kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Flegm. Scourings of the strongest nature are to take of Sallet-Oyl half a pintand of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and give it the horse Lukewarm: or else take a pint of Muskadine, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drink: or else half a pint of Oyl, and a pint of Sack mixt together, and give the Horse to drink lukewarm.

These scourings cleanse the head, Body, and Guts of all Flegm or molten Grease; which any violent labour hath dissolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of cold, or stoppings in the Windpipes, and if you add unto them good store of Sugar-candy, it will preserve and keep the horse from sickness. Now for Pills, you shall very plainly understand, that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty Cloves of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so roul up the Garlick in four or five balls or Pellets, as big as two Walnuts apiece; and so taking out the horses tongue, thrust them down his throat one after another: or else to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders; beat them well together in a Morter, and then make it into four or five Balls, and put them down the Horses throat. Pills of somewhat strong nature, are to take a handfull of Rosemary leaves, and chopping them small, mix them with a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and then making it into round Balls, give them unto the horse: Or else take round pieces of raw Melons, and thrust them down the horses throat: or else to take five green Figs, and put them down the horses Throat.

The strongest Pill is this: take of Lard two pound, laid in water two hours, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the clean fat thereof, and stamp it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Liquorish, of Anniseeds, and of Fenugreek, of each beaten into powder one Ounce and a half, of Aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of Agarick half an ounce, knead all these together like a Paste, and make thereof four or five balls, and give it the Horse. The last recited Pill is singular good for the dry Cough, and all the other Pills are most soveraign for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from flegm, Melancholy, or any other cold or moist cause whatsoever. Now for Purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: take two ounces of Myrrh, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and it it will purge all sickness which proceedeth of Choler: the signs

whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and he can neither dung nor break wind. Take a pint of wine and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimstone, and half an ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it the horse Luke-warm, and it will purge all inward Diseases proceeding of Melancholy. Two spoonfuls of the powder Diapente, given with half a pint of Swines grease, purgeth all Diseases proceeding of Flegm. Take as much black Soap as a Walnut, a quart of new milk, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-oyl, and give it the horse luke warm, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horse exceeding sick: Take the Guts of a Tench or Barbel, being cut into little small pieces, and give it the horse in a quart of white wine, and it will purge the horse from all costiveness or pain in the Guts. Rye being boiled, so that it burst not, then dryed again, and given the horse instead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms, Take of Radish roots one ounce of the root called Panax, and of Scamony, of each half an ounce, beat all these together, and boyl them in a quart of honey, Then give the horse two Spoonfuls of this in a Quart of Ale luke-warm to drink, and it will purge all gross humours, from whence proceedeth either the falling evil, or any disease of the brain.

Take and Boil Elicampane Roots in milk till they be soft, That you may bruise them to pap, And then adding thereto half a Pint of Sallet-Oyl, give it the Horse to drink luke-warm, and this will purge and Cleanse any Kind of Glanders. Take of sweet Soap a Quarter of a pound, and make it into three balls, and give them to the horse, and it will purge all evil humours whatsoever, both violently, and most abundantly.

CHAP. CII.

A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sick or sound, and especially for running or hunting horses, whose grease must necessarily be molten.

FOrasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong to the keeper either of Running or hunting horses, consisteth in the Taking away from the Horse his gross glut and fat, which not only offendeth the vital parts, but also stoppeth up the Conduits and vessels of wind, and that it cannot any way be done, but by scouring after exercise; you shall understand, that the best of all scourings, which hath hitherto been approved, is this, which I will here set down:

You

You shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, and pick out the stones, and ten figs, which you shall slit in the midst round-wise, boyl them in a pottle of running water till the water be consumed, and thickned: then take the powder of Licoras, Annisseeds, and Sugar-candy finely sears'd, and mix it with the Raisins and Figs, stamping and working them together till it be brought to a stiff paste, then making round Balls thereof of a pretty bigness roll and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give so many of them unto the horse as you shall think meet for his Strength; provided that the day before, you must give your horse such exercise as will be sure to melt his grease, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine, you also warm him throughly, that the humors being again stirred up, the Medicine may work more effectually.

CHAP. CIII.

Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the use thereof.

THere is yet also another manner of Purging of a Horse, and especially his head, and that is, by forcing him to neeze or snort violently at his nose, casting forth all filthy, and gross matter which otherwise will offend and oppress the brain; and this Neesing is wrought sometimes by fumes or smoaks, sometimes by Powders, and sometimes by Oils, the sharpness of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the head, do compel this snorting and neezing: Surely there is no Purgation more wholsome, for as it cleanseth and seperateth gross matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Brain. Now to come unto particular medicines which do procure this neezing, they be these: Squirt into a horses nostrils either mans urine which is old, or the Urine of a Ox which hath had much rest, and it will force a horse to neeze, and is most wholsome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the powder of Gumdragant, Eusens, and damask Roses well mixt together, and blow it with a Quill into the Horses Nostrils, and it is good either against the Fever in Summer or Winter. Take warm vinegar and squirt it into his Nostrils, and it is comfortable against the Feaver which cometh by raw digestion.

Take Garlick stalks a handful, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of Frankincense, and being put upon a Chasing-dish and Coals, hold the Chasing-dish under the horses Nostrils, so that the fume may ascend up into his head: and this is most ex-

cellent

cellent against the Head-ach. Take Feathers and Brimstone, and burn them on a Chasingdish and Coals under the horses Nose: or blow Pepper and Peritire beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping evil. Take the powder of Mother-wort, and blow it up into the horses Nostrils, and it is good against the falling-evil. Take two Goose-feathers anointed over with Oyl de Bay, and thrust them up and down in the Horses Nostrils: or else take Sage, Penny-rial, and Wheat, long sodden together, and put into a Bag as hot as may be, which Bag would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the Smoak and savour thereof may ascend up into his Nostrils: Or take a Clout anointed with Sope or Oyl de Bay, and rub it up and down his Nostrils as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any Cold, poze, or other obstructions in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphur, and burn them on the Coals and hold it under the horses Nose: or take Oyl de Bay, Euforbium and white Ellebore, and anointing two Feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses Nostrils: both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalks of Briony, or wild Vine, two handfuls, and bruise them betwixt two Stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten the bag so to the horses head that the scent may go up into his Nostril, without touching the herb with his Mouth, and this is excellent against the mourning of the Chine, or any inward Cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of each alike weight, and with a quill blow them up into the horses Nostrils, or take the powder of white Pepper, or of Salt Niter, or of Iris il red, or black Ellebore, and blow them with a Quill up into the horses nostrils: or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the dregs of Oyl, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out again, and let the smoak ascend up into the horses Nostrils: or squirt into his Nostrils Aristolochia, mixt with wine: or Salt nitre mixt with water, or Salt and Roch Allom mixt with Wine, or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his Nose: or Bay-berries beaten small, and burnt on the Coals under the Horses Nose: Or a Coal of fire put into a lump of wet Hay, making a smothering smoak, and held under the Horses Nose. And of these are most excellent against any Disease of the head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glanders, Strangle, and such like.

Yet

Yet all these have their several imperfections : The best Fumes of them of all others whatsoever, is, to take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grosly together, burn them under the Horses Nose.

CHAP. CIV.

Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their several uses.

FRictions or Bathes, are a certain rubbing, anointing, or bathing of a Horses Body all over, especially against the hair, because the Medicine may sink in so much the better, with Comfortable and Soveraign Unguents, whose vertues do loosen the skin, chear up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heat and feeling over the whole body : and of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers and also of the best of this present age, these are the most soveraign. Take of Damask Roses one pound, of old Oyl one pint, of strong Vinegar a pint and an half, of Mint and Rue, beaten into powder of each one ounce and a half, together with one old dry Nut, beat them, and mingle them well together : Then being strained and made luke-warm, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sun shine hot, take the Horse abroad: But if otherwise, keep him in the Stable, and heating a Bar of iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each side the Horse, and with the oyntment rub and chafe the horse all over against the hair, untill the horse begin to sweat ; then cloath the Horse very warm, and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Feavers, or any inward sickness that cometh of Cold. Take of black Elleborus two or three handfuls, and boyl it in a sufficient quantity of strong Vinegar, and with that rub and chafe all the Horses Head and Body quite over once or twice a day, and it is most excellent against Frenzie, Madness, or any dryness, or Scalines of the Skin.

Take Oyl de Bay, or Dialthea and anoint all the Horses Body all over therewith, holding a Pan of Coals, or a hot Bar of Iron near the Oyntment, to make it sink in ; or else make him a Bathe of Running water, wherein is boyled Rue, Wormwood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssop, and bathe all his Body therewith : Either of these are most soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any Disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen. Take Wine and Oyl, and having mixt them together chafe, and rub the Horses body therewith

with, and it is moſt ſoveraign for any inward ſ[illegible]s, eſpecially the Liver, To Bathe a horſe in Salt water is very wholſome, both for the horſes skin, and alſo for any Diſeaſe in the ſtomach.

Laſtly, take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three Handfuls, and a Roſe-cake, boyl them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all conſumed, add a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet Oyl, and mixing them together, bath all the Horſes four Legs therewith, and all the parts of his body alſo: and there is nothing more ſoveraign for a Horſe that hath been tyred or over travelled. To let blood, and with that blood, and Oyl, and Vinegar, preſently to anoint his body, helps moſt ſorts of infirmities.

CHAP. CV.

General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diſeaſes or Surfeits in Horſes.

THere is no Medicine more ſoveraign for all Diſeaſes which breed in a Horſes body, then to take half an ounce of the Powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sack, if it be for Colds, or Muskadine, if it be for heartſickneſs, and ſo give it the horſe to drink faſting in the morning: and do this at leaſt three mornings together, eſpecially when the Horſe beginneth firſt to droop. The next to this, is, to take of Scſadine two handfuls, both Root and Leaves, chop them and bruiſe them: then take of Rue as much, of Red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes half an ounce: boyl theſe in a pottle of Beer or Ale till the one half be conſumed, and then give it the horſe luke-warm to drink.

Take four ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a cloſe glaſs, and give half an ounce thereof with a pint of ſweet wine to the horſe to drink, and it is an excellent Drench Take of Liquoriſh an ounce, of Anniſeeds, Cumin-ſeeds, Elicampane Roots, of each half an ounce, of Tamerick and Bays, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two drams, beat theſe ſmall and ſearſe them, and put five ſpoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed with a little butter or Oyl, and it is very ſoveraign for any Diſeaſe coming of cold cauſes, Take a quart of good Ale or Wine, A raw Egg beaten and mingled with twelve Scruples of quick Sulphur, and four ſcruples of Myrrh made

made into powder, and give it the horse to drink, it is a good drench. The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweet Wine, is a good drench also. The Root of the Sea Onion, the Roots of Popler, called the Greek Rhammos, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the Horse long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreek, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it wax thick, add a pound of sweet Butter, an ounce of Linseed Oil, and as much of the Oil of Nuts; mingle them well together, and give it the horse in three or four days to drink, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it self, or Rue simply of it self, boyled in Beer or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a Wallnut, is an excellent drench for any long taken surfeit. Garlick and Housleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in Beer or Ale from a pottle to a Quart, then mixt with Liquorish, Anniseeds, and Sugar-Candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet Oyl, is an excellent drench for any inward sickness, which doth proceed from hot causes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of general Drenches, and their uses.

CHAP. CVI.

How to make the Powder called Diapente.

THis word DIAPENTE is as much as to say, Composition of five simples: for the Receipt is thus compounded. Take of Gentian, of Aristolochia, of Bayberies, of Myrrh, and of the shavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity, beat them into very fine powder, and then searse it. This powder is praised to be a Soveraign Preservative or Medicine against all inward Diseases: And therefore I would wish every Farrier, and all such as are the Masters of good horses never to be without it.

CHAP. CVII.

A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench and singular Oyntment, called of the Italians Accopum.

TAke of Euforbium half an ounce, of Castoreum one ounce, of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Edelium half an ounce, and half a quarter, of pepper a quarter of pound, Fox Grease half an ounce, Opoponax one ounce, Laserpitium, three quarters of an ounce,

Amoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pidgeons dung as much, Galbanum half an ounce, Nitrum one ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitri three quarters of an ounce, Ladanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardanum two ounces, Seed of Rue half a quarter of a pound, Seed of Agnus Caſtus one ounce, Parſley half an ounce, dried Roots of Ireos, or Flower de-Luce, one ounce one quarter, Hyſſop and Carpobalſamum a quarter of a pound, Oyl of Flower-de-Luce a quarter of a pound, and half a quarter, Oyl de bay as much, Oyl of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter, the oldeſt Oyl Olive one pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound, melt every one of theſe that will melt, ſeverally by themſelves, and then mingle them together with the reſt of the Simples beaten into fine powder; and after that they have been a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and ſtrain it into a fair Veſſel, and whenſoever you will give your Horſe any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five ſpoonfuls with a pint of Sack or Muskadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing ſtiff or hard, then ſoften it with the Oyl of Cipreſs, ſo that it may be good and thick.

This Confection is both a Medicine and an Oyntment, if you put it in the horſes Noſtrils, it will draw out all Noyſom Humours, and diſcharge his head of all grief: if you anoint his body therewith, it healeth all convulſions, Colds, and Drineſs, or Withering of the Body; and if you Bathe his Limbs therewith, it driveth away all wearineſs and tiring; and if you give it him with Wine to drink, it cureth all kind of inward Maladies.

CHAP. CVIII.

How to makē the Oyl of Oats.

TAke of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt-Allom, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and caſt it away; Then ſtrain the Whey through a coarſe Cloath in a clean Veſſel: Then take a quarter of a peck of clean husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whey, and ſet them on the fire till the Oats burſt, and be ſoft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of holes, ſo that the Whey may go gently from them

them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oats as moist as may be:) this done, put the Oats in a frying Pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually till you see the Vapour or smoak of them not ascend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan; then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a Press, press them most exceedingly, and look what cometh from them, is only the Oyl of them, which you must save in a close Glass. Now there are other more Artificial and curious Ways to distill and Extract this Oyl, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every mean capacity. This Oyl of Oats is of all Medicines, and Simples whatsoever the most excellent and soveraign for a Horses Body, as being extracted from the most natural, wholsom, and best Food which doth belong unto a Horses Body. This Oyl being given by four or five spoonfuls at a time in a pint of sweet Wine, Or a quart of strong Ale, or some of the whey poured into the horses Nostrils, doth cure the Glaunders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those Venemous and filthy humours, which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine own part, as long as I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, so long will I never in any Medicine whatsoever, use any other Oyl or Unctuous matter than it only; I having found by experience, that it is the Soveraign of all Simples of that kind, whatsoever they be.

CHAP. CXI.

Certain brief Observations to be observed at home and abroad, whilst the Horse is in Health.

THese Observations now following, are gathered from the most exact Principles, and infallible grounds of the best and surest approved Horse-men, either of this Kingdom, or any other Nation within Christendom.

First then, for the general feeding of your Horse when he is in health you shall feed him with Straw, Hay, Oats, fine little wheat, Beans, Barley, bread made of Beans, Pease, or Fitches, or any other Meat that swells not in Horses the Body.

It is the opinion of Camerarius, first to give Provender, then Hay and lastly water; but our English custom is, first Hay, then water, and lastly Provender.

In your travel feed your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of Provender which you shall give your horse at one time, shall be as much as you can hold in the palm of both your hands at six times, or three pints by measure.

Horse Bread which is made of clean Beans, clean Pease, or clean Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses Meat and Drink be exceeding sweet and clean, yet his water by no means extream cold running water from the Rock; for it pierceth too much.

To rub your horses mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eat and drink with a much better appetite.

Let your horse neither eat when he is hot, nor drink when he is hot, nor presently after his travel.

Labour your horse moderately, when the weather is either extreme hot, or extreme cold, that so you may avoid extreme heats, or sudden colds.

Travel not your horse too late, that your own eye may see him well dried, and well fed before you take your own rest.

Never take your Saddle from your horses back suddenly.

Lend not your horse, lest your self walk on foot.

Let your horse lye clean and dry, keep your Stable Sweet, let no Swine lye near it, nor let any pullen come within it.

Let your horse be ever tied with two Reins.

Let the light of your Stable be ever towards South and North, yet so as the North windows may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to give fresh air.

Ride your horse oft a little on stoney ways, that he may the better feel his feet, and harden his Hoofs.

Have ever near your Stable some close plain Green, that your horse being let loose he may oft tumble himself thereon.

Let your Horses bed be of soft sweet Straw, somewhat above his knees, of which Wheat Straw is the best: for though Barley Straw be the softest, yet a Horse will covet to eat it, and it is unwholsom, and Wheat straw is not unwholsome to eat, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat-straw it is the best in the Superlative, for it is both wholsome to eat, and soft to lie upon.

Curry or dress your horse twice a day, that is before water, and when he is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a Rubber; his

his head would be rubbed with a wet Cloath, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloath : his Fore-top, his Mane, and his Tail, would be often wet with a wet Main-comb, and ever where the horſes hair is thinneſt, there curry the gentleſt.

Let the Plaunchers of your Stable lye even, and Level, that your horſe may ſtand at his eaſe, and not prove lame by too much oppreſſing his hinder parts.

Let not any Mud wall be within your Horſes reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholſom.

Give your horſe plenty of Garbage (which is chopt wheat ſtraw) both with his Provender, and without.

Let your hay-bottles be very little, and tied very hard : for ſo your horſe ſhall eat with the beſt ſtomach, and make the leaſt waſte.

To ſprinkle water upon your Hay, is moſt wholſom, and to ſprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as Soveraign : the firſt is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Give your horſe daily exerciſe, for that gets the beſt ſtomach to his meat.

Purge your horſe once a year with Graſs, or with green blades of Corn, called Forrage, for fifteen days together ; yet before you purge him, in any caſe let him blood ; and whilſt he is in purging, by no means let him have any Provender.

A Horſe after travel hath ever more blood than any Beaſt whatſoever.

Green graſs or Forrage cleanſeth the Blood, encreaſeth ſtrength, healeth Diſeaſes, avoideth Melancholly, helpeth the horſes growth, and maketh the skin ſmooth : whilſt the horſe is at foyl, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watreth two hours before he rideth at the leaſt, then lets the horſe eat a little hay, then gives Provender, but not much, and bridleth the horſe up a quarter of an hour before he rideth : at night he watreth two miles before he taketh his Lodging, then rideth eaſily ; he neither walketh his horſe, nor ſtuffeth him, nor looſeth any Girt, but only rubbeth him very clean, and ſo lets him bite upon his Bridle half an hour after, with good ſtore of Litter under him ; then he gives the horſe hay, and after Provender, before he goeth to water again (yet but a little) then ſeeth the horſe throughly well dreſſed and rubbed, well Littered and moſt ſufficiently meated.

There

There be others which walk after Labour, then rub well, Litters and unbridleth: both which be good, so that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a ſtable. But howſoever, ſtuff not your horſe backwards, but betwixt his fore Legs, and foremoſt girt: For backward ſtuffing is perilous, leſt drawing his Yard when he would ſtale, he draw back in his sheath any of the Litter that ſtops him. The Northern man's uſe agreeth with the French Principles, which ſaith: uſe no other walking than your ſelf: on your horſ-back by riding him gently till you come at your Inn, and ſo make him cold, then ſhake Litter under him, rub his Legs, his Belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, Rub his head well, and give him hay; ſtuff no girt till it be night, that the Windows be ſhut; ſuffer the horſe to drink but a little at once, to avoid ſudden cooling of the Stomach: or driving the horſe into a ſhaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feed according to the horſes ſtomach.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the horſes ſinews be chafed, and never water in travel till the horſe have ſtaled, and forbear to travel him faſt before he hath drunk, that he may not drink in his great heat, and they hold the ſtanding water the beſt; after water for a Mile they ride ſoftly till his water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled: then they cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horſes ſtand not in the wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all theſe Principles are exceeding good, yet I would with every traveler to learn how his horſe hath been uſed, and that cuſtom (if it be not too much againſt reaſon) ſtill to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your Journey be great and earneſt, ſo that your horſe will not eat till he have drunk, And yet is hot notwithſtanding, then let his drink be Milk given in the dark, leſt the whiteneſs make him refuſe it: This is both cordial and pleaſant: If you cannot get milk enough, then mingle Milk with water Luke-warm, for no drink ſhould be given a horſe hotter.

If your Horſe either by Labour or any ſurfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you ſhall give him Mares Milk to drink many dayes together, and it will make him ſtrong.

It is not good to waſh your horſe, eſpecially if he be either hot or very fat: Otherwiſe you may waſh his Legs above his knees, ſo that

that in no caſe you waſh his Belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his waſhing, then by no means walk him, but ſet him up and dreſs him: the purer the water is wherein you waſh your horſe, the more wholſome it is, ſo that it be not too extreme cold.

The beſt hours to waſh your horſe in. (when he lives at reſt) is betwixt ſeven and Eight in the morning, and four or five in the evening.

When you travel at every ſteep hill light, both to refreſh your horſe and your ſelf.

Let a fat or hot horſe have his water at four times, and not ſo much as he will drink at once; give him provender twice at night, and but once in the morning; let his Cloath neither be too hot, nor with ſtraw too much ſtuffed: when he eateth good hay, let him have leſs Provender than when he eateth Straw: give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him ſtand two hours every day without meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preſerve, and doth keep both Strength of Body and Legs; for in rubbing and combing, a horſe doth take much delight, and it doth better than much meat

To feed with Barley (according to the opinion of the antient Italians) ingendreth good blood, increaſeth ſtrength and courage, And maintaineth health; but with us here in England, we find Oats to be much better feeding.

In the Dog-dayes it is not wholeſome to ride your horſe oft in the water to allay his natural heat.

The Maſters eye to ſee his horſe well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the Stable ſweet and clean kept preſerveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horſe.

Cleanſe and pick the ſoles and bottoms of your horſes feet oft, and ſtuff them well with Ox-dung, anoint his hooſs with freſh Greaſe, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much reſt is the Mother and Nurſe of many Diſeaſes.

When you Ride look often to your Saddle, and your horſes ſhoes, and you ſhall find more eaſe in your journey.

CHAP.

CHAP. CX.

Certain special Principles in Foals and Horses.

THe Foals whose legs be long, will ev[illegible] of all beasts their Legs in length ever grow the lea[illegible] bigness of their Legs you shall guess the Strength and greatn[illegible] odies.

Let your Colts, if you can possibly, never be ho[illegible]y be past three years old

The Greek horse (which we call the Turkey Horse) is a most excellent horse, swift bold, well headed, tall, and strong; many of be White, some Bay, some Sorrell, and some black.

The Arabian horse is most swift, and most beautiful.

The Horse of Africa, which we call the Barbary horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, and therefore both the Turkey horse, and he must be used with all lenity and gentleness, and not with beating.

The Friezeland horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The Flemish horse is worse than the Friezeland.

The Spanish Gennet is good, swift, and light.

The Neapolitan Courser for all uses is most excellent and beautifull.

Observe to win your horse by patience and gentleness, and never be angry or mad with your horse, if he be of great mettle; only the dull horse must with much beating be quickned and inflamed.

Anoint your Bit when you put it first into your horses mouth, with Honey, and the powder of Liquorish, or else with Honey and Salt, and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your horses mouth before you have washt it

Never take your horses back before you have the Bridle Reins fast in your hands; and when you walk down any Hill, by no means drive your horse loose before you.

If your horse have a long back, let him have a large Saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high Seat, and if his back be short, let the Bolsters stand the nearer and closer together.

If your horse be dull, you must spur him soundly, and after such spurring rub his sides with Salt.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXI.

Certain general Observations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a Mare groweth till she by five years old, and a Horse till he be six.

When a Mare is past two years old she may be covered, but the best time is after four years old.

Common Mares may briug Foals every year, but let your best Mares bring but every second year, especially if they bring horse-Colts.

After covering by no means travel your Mares.

To get Horse Colts, cover before the full of the Moon, and when the sign is a Female: and to get Mare-Colts cover after the full, and in the Male signs: for note it, there be twelve signs, six Male, and six Female.

To make a Mare stand to her horsing, set her by the horse two or three days, that he may much desire, and be acquainted before he cover her: After bring them out, and let him serve her, and have ready a pail of water, which, when the horse shrinketh from her, pour upon the Ridge of the Mares Back, then set them so far asunder as that the one may not hear the other: do this three mornings, and three evenings together, then let her not come near the horse after, till she be knit, lest the desire of him again, make her to shoot out that which she kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foal about Christmas, or no, pour a little water into her ear, and if she only shake her Head, she is then with Foal, but if she shake both head and body also, she is not with Foal.

When you wean your Foals, take them from the Mares four days before the full of the Moon, and after the Foals have so remained four and twenty hours, let them again suck till they wax very full; then remove them for altogether, and the next Morning give every one three slips of Savin, and so after let them have till they be three years old, all plenty of Meat abroad, rather than in the Stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courser, or Arabian Turk, or Barbary, and for Amblers, Either the Spanish Jennet or the Irish Hobby.

Put your Mares to the Horse, from middle March to middle May,

or middle June, the Moon having newly changed.

It is good to put the horse and the Mare for three or four nights together in some vast empty house, and in the Morning take the Horse away and feed him well; but feed your Mare sparingly, especially give her a little water.

At the end of six months, by no means chase your Mares; for then they are quickning, and may easily be made to cast their Foals.

The Wall-eye either in Mare or horse, doth never see perfectly, especially when there is any Snow on the ground.

A Mare goeth with Foal eleven Months and ten days.

Let your Mare be of a mean stature, large and broad, and of good shapes; and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: put unto the hot Horse the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horse: And let your ground wherein you breed, be dry, Hilly, and with running streams in it.

CHAP. CXII.

Certain special Notes to be observed in the buying of a Horse.

☞ First, mark his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an outlooking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thick large Breast, broad brawn, large and broad flat Legs, short Pasterns, and little feet: for long Pasterns shew weakness, and broad feet shew dulness; feel if he have no Glanders between his Chaps, no Splents, Curb nor Spaven, look he be not pursick or broken-winded, put your hand before his Eyes, to know if he see well. Look into his Mouth for his age: if he be past eight years old, feel all down the strunt of his tayl with your hand, and if you feel that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good days are past. Let him run at the halters end, for if he be lame (having that liberty) he would favour that Leg which is amiss, and not lean upon it. If he turn up the white of his Eye, or lay his ear to his Neck when he is ridden, he is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities: If when you stir him in the Stable, he stare and look back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a Token of good stomach in him; and great aptness to be taught; if he stir the end of his Tayl as he passeth out, and is ridden, and yet doth not whisk it, it sheweth that his pace is unperfect: be sure to see him turn as short as may be, that

you

you may know whether he be swayed in the back or no: the middle stature is the best. and the short knit horse is the strongest. The Wall Eye ever seeth the worst.

The Horse that is of nature gentle, swift, light, nimble, of easie pace, and good colour, strong feet, good loyns, speedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the hair in the Spurring place be white, for it argueth slow-ness and spur-galling.

The Horse that will paw and beat the ground with his Foot when he is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in Travail.

Many other notes there are that are needless to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

CHAP. CXIII.

General Notes concerning some Simples already spoken of.

ALL manner of Marrows or Piths, of what kind soever they be. must be kept by themselves in a dry cool place, and preserved from all filth or uncleanness, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole year.

You shall keep no Syrrups nor sweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conserves of Flowers, nor any Oyntments, Suets, or Emplaisters, above one whole year, only bitter Electuaries, or conserves of Fruits or Roots, will last fully out two Years.

Of Oyls some will last long, some must be new made: Oyls Extracted out of Wood or Metals, will last long.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the small sprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry small Roots in the shade and Wind, and great Roots either in the Wind and Sun, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor moisture injure nor hurt them.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do most Flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they be very moist and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole year.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole year.

Gather the Rind or Bark of any simple when the herb is ripe: dry them, and they will last many Years.

The End of the First Book.

Markham's Maſter-piece.

THE

SECOND BOOK,

CONTAINING

All Cures Chyrurgical,

OR,

Such Infirmities as being only outward, crave the Uſe of *Chyrurgery*, and are called in Horſleach Craft,

HORSES SORANCES.

Newly Imprinted, Corrected and Enlarged with many notable Additions, and moſt certain approved Medicines, never revealed before this Impreſſion.

Written by *Gervaſe Markham*, Gent.

LONDON,

Printed by *John Richardſon*, for *Thomas Paſſenger*, at the three Bibles, on *London* Bridge, and *John Wright* at the Crown on *Ludgate* Hill, 1683.

Markham's Master-Piece.

THE

SECOND BOOK

CONTAINING

All Cures Chirurgical, or such Infirmities as, being only outward, crave the use of Chyrurgery, and are called in Horse-Leach-craft, *Horses Sorances.*

CHAP. I.

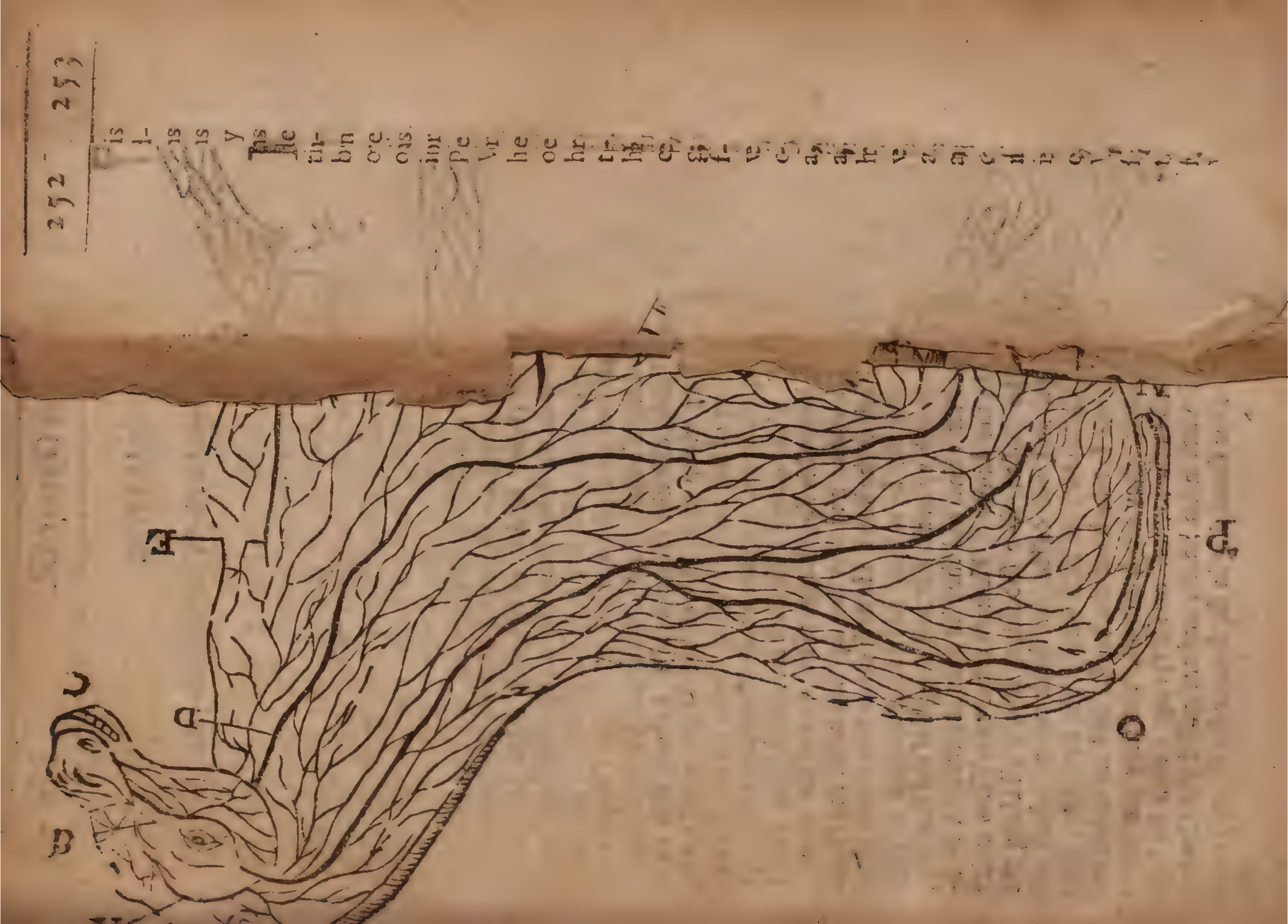
What proportion of measure is required in every member of a well shapen Horse.

FOrasmuch as the great substance of this Art of Chyrurgery, or second part of Horse-Leach-craft, applied only unto outward infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, Cauterisings, Corrodings, and dismembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, cleansing, Conglutinating, and binding up Members in their true form, and that all joyntly together, go but about to make a True and well-formed body: I think it meetest that I begin with the true proportion and measure which is required in every Member of a well shaped Horse, that the careful Farrier thereby understanding how, and in what fashion every Lineament should be placed, or what proportion and quantity they do contain, he may at no time through ignorance either dismember or Disgrace the same: As I have

have many times ſeen ſimple Farriers do, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in ſunder the main Cords, Sinews, and Tenders, by which a horſes Limbs are governed.

To begin then, you ſhall underſtand, that, according to the Deſcripſion of the moſt Antient and worthy Farriers: there are in a Horſes Palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like ſteps, one above another, ſtanding; (when his mouth is turned upwards) like a pair of Stairs: his tongue would be half a foot long, his upper lip ſix inches, and his neather lip five Inches long; each of his Jaws would be ten inches long, his Head from his Eyes downward, full twelve Inches long, his ears five Inches long, the circuit or compaſs of his Eye four Inches about, his Neck from the Nape of his head unto the Withers would be ſeven handfuls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve handfuls, and from the Fillets to the ſetting on of the Tayl ſix handfulls: The length of the ſhoulder would be twelve inches, and the length of his Shank ſix inches, the length of his hinder hoof would be twelve inches, and his Cambrel five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the tayl would be an hundred inches. Now as Horſes are bigger or leſſer, ſo theſe meaſures either exceed, or are leſs; neither do I confidently build upon theſe inch-quantities of the Antient Farriers, becauſe, I having my ſelf meaſured many Horſes, I never yet could find any certainty in the proportions: only this is the moſt certain Rule that ever I could find, that look what quantity is between the Nape of the Horſes Neck, and the uttermoſt part of the Withers, there muſt ever be twice ſo much between the Withers and the ſetting on of the Tayl; and look what quantity is between the top of the ſhoulder blade, or top of the Withers, to the Elbow of the horſe, it muſt be twice ſo much from the Elbow to the ſetting on of the Hoof; And look how much it is from the top of the hip to the ſtifling place, it muſt be twice ſo much from the ſtifling place to the ſetting on of the hinder hoof: And this is the certaineſt Rule that ever I could find for a horſes trueſt proportion. And therefore for your better ſatisfaction, behold this Picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a moſt perfect horſe, with lines drawn from every Member, Directing and ſhewing all the outward Diſeaſes or ſorances, belonging to a Horſes body.

CHAP.



CHAP. II.

Of the Veins belonging to a Horse, and how many there be.

IT is most necessary, that every good careful Farrier know all the principal Veins in a horses body, especially those which in the case of need, or in sickness are to be opened: and therefore to begin, you shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountain of blood, both in Man and Beast, doth arise one Main great Conduit or large Vein, which ascending into the body, doth divide it self into thus many several Branches, or lesser Rivers. First within the palate of his Mouth, above the first and third bars, are two notable veins, which the best Farriers do touch and strike when the Horse hath any Disease in his Head, Brain, or Stomach: He hath also other two which descend down from the lower parts of his Eyes unto his Nostrils, and are ever opened for any grief in the Eyes: He hath two others which are above his Eyes, and run cross the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple-Veins, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; he hath also two great main veins running along each side of the Wind-pipe, even from the uppermost joynt of his neather Chap down to the Breast, which are called the Neck-veins, and are those which are ordinarily opened for any Disease whatsoever. He hath then two veins which rise upwards from between his Fore Leggs to the top of his Breast, and are called the Breast-veins, and they are opened when the Horse hath any Feaver, or is sick at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from between the fore-legs, but do not amount so high as the Breast-veins, but rest upon the formest Bough of the fore-leg, and they be called the Plat-veins, and they be opened either for foundring or other grief in the Limbs. He hath other two Veins which run down from the Elbow of the fore shoulder, down all along the inside of the Fore legs, and are called the shank-veins, which are opened for Splents, Mallander, or such like. He hath then four Veins which run along the Fet-locks of the horse, and are called the hackle-veins, which albeit, they are but small, yet they are many times opened for stiffness in the joynts, or for tyring: then he hath four veins about the Cronets in his hoofs, and are called the Cronet-Veins, and are opened for foundring in the feet, or for Ring-bones:

then

then he hath four Veins within his four Hoofs, Running about his Toes, and are called the Toe-veins, and are only opened for foundring or frettizing in the Feet: He hath then two main great Veins which descend from his Stones alongst the inside of his Thighs to his Cambrel, and are called the Kidney-veins, which are only opened for Diseases in the Kidneys: He hath then two other veins which descend from above the hinder Cambrel, all alongst the inside of the hinder Legs down to the Fet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veins, which are opened for the blood-Spaven only: He hath then two veins in his Flanks, which are called the Flank-veins, and are opened for any grief in the Reins or Fillets: He hath then two veins in his hinder Hanches called the Hanch-veins, and are opened for any manner of Consumption of the flesh, or such like. Then he hath two veins which run alongst his side, even from the Elbow or the fore Leg unto the flank, and are called the Spur-veins, and are opened for foundring or Spur-galling. Lastly he hath one single Vein in his Tayl, which is called the Tayl-Vein, and is opened for the shedding of the hair or Mangines. So there is in a Horses body of principal Veins, which upon occasion must be opened, just thirty seven, as you may perceive by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principal veins and others within a Horses body; where you are to understand, that the letter *A* sheweth the Temple-vein, *B* the Eye-veins, *C* the Palate-veins, *D* the Neck-veins, *E* the Breast-veins, *F* the Plat-veins, *G* the Shank veins, *H* the Cronet-veins, *I* the Hoof-veins, *K* the Spur-veins, *L* the Kidney-veins, *M* the Spaven-veins, *N* the Flank-veins, *O* the Hanch-veins, *P* the Tail-veins, *Q* and *R* the Fetlock-veins. Now for the other small threads, or veins which as it were overspread the whole body, because nature will allow no part, or Member to be empty or void of blood, they be also veins, derived from the other main great veins, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as upon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any flux of Blood or other danger: but for the other Master-veins, they may not be cut but with great peril. And thus much for veins, which are the instruments of heat.

CHAP. III.

Of the Sinews in a Horſes Body.

TOuching the Sinews within a Horſes Body, you ſhall underſtand that from the Brain, which is the principal Fountain or Well-ſpring of Sinews whatſoever, there is derived one great main Sinew or Tendon, which paſſing through the hollowneſs of the neck and back bone, doth extend it ſelf even to the neathermoſt Joynt of the horſes ſtrunt: from his main Sinew is derived two ſmall Branches, which paſſing through certain holes in the top of the horſes ſkull, run down alongſt the horſes Cheeks, even to the point of his Noſtrils: then hath hé two other branches, which paſſing through certain holes in his neather Chap, knit that and the other together, and ſo run down by his great Teeth, and meet juſt below his neather Lip: Then hath he twenty eight ſmall threads, which running through ſo many ſmall holes in the ſeven bones of his neck, knit them faſt together: So likewiſe to knit all his Chine even to the very nether end of his Strunt faſt together, the number whereof is infinite, and uncertain: then hath he two main great Sinews, which extending themſelves over both the Spade-bones, are divided into many branches, and run down into the Forelegs, even into the Coffins of the Hoofs, and knit every Joynt faſt and ſubſtantially together: then hath he two other main Sinews, which coming through two holes to the great Columel or flat bones of the Hips or Huckle, do extend themſelves (being divided into many branches) down both the hinder Legs, even within the Coffins of the hoof alſo, and bind all theſe ſeveral Joynts faſt and ſtrongly together. Now laſtly, you ſhall underſtand, that from the ſetting on of the Horſes neck, unto the flat Columel or Huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad Sinew; of three inches broad, being of one only thick and ſmooth ſubſtance, without any one Thred or Branch derived from it, which not only holdeth together the ſhoulder-blades, but alſo covereth all the horſes Chine quite over, and this of the Common Farriers is called Pax wax: So that a horſe hath in all of main and principal Sinews, from whence a world of other Sinews are derived, juſt thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture aforegoing,

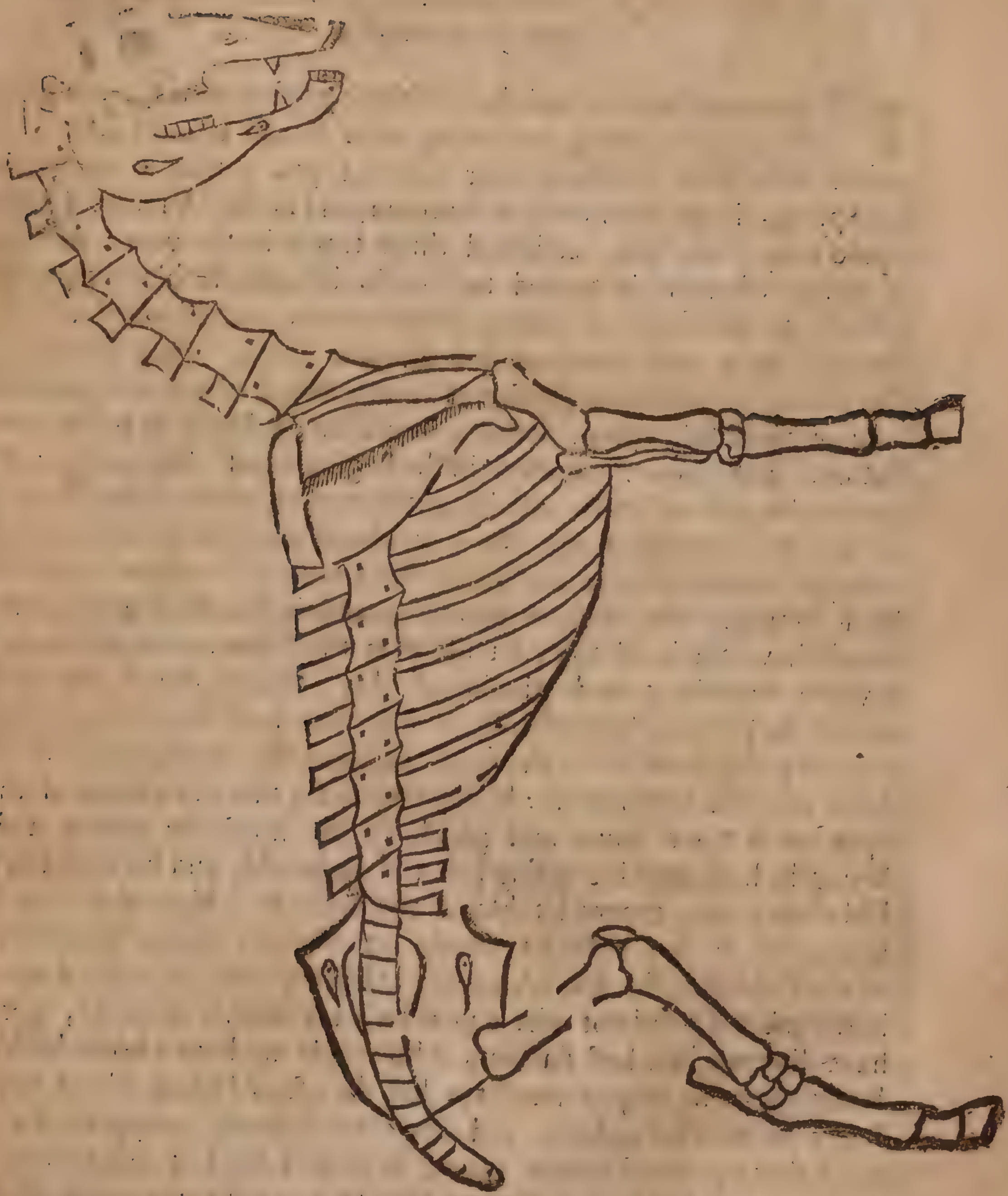
going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the Sinews within a Horſes Body, and how they are divided.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Number, and Situation of Bones in a Horſes Body.

FIrſt you ſhall underſtand, that every Horſe or Ox, hath in his whole Body, juſt one hundred and ſeventy ſeveral bones, and no more: that is to ſay, in the upper part of his head two Bones, from the fore-head to the Noſe two Bones, his nether Jaws two bones, of fore-teeth twelve, of Tuſhes four, of grinders twenty four, from the nape of the neck to the points of the Spade Bones, ſeven; from the Spade bones to the Huckle-Bones, eight: from the Hucklebones to the end of the Tayl, ſeven: Then is there the great broad hinder bone, which hath twelve Seams or Joynts in it; then is there the two Spade bones, and from thence to the Forcels or canal bones, other two Bones called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the Thigh-bones, and from thence to the Paſterns other two called the Shank-bones, and from thence downward into the hoofs be in all ſixteen little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horſes breaſt, whereunto are faſtned thirty ſix Ribs great and ſmall, and to the Columel behind be two bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts other two bones; and alſo two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hoof unto the Leg, are two ſmall bones, and from the Legs to the two focils of the Leg other two little bones, and from the Paſterns into the hoof, ſixteen little bones: all which and the ſeveral ſituations you ſhall more plainly behold in this Picture, which is the moſt perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horſe, being ſimply compounded together, that can be by demonſtration

CHAP.



CHAP. V.

How, and when a horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signs of the necessity.

THe ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a Horse blood: For some would have him let blood four times a year; that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumn, and in the Winter. Others would only have him let blood three times in the year: namely, in *May*, when he is turned to Grass, because the blood then beginneth to encrease. Secondly in *September*, that blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breathe forth. And thirdly, in *December*, to let go the gross and knotty Blood which is bred by labour or careless keeping. Others would have a Horse to be let blood but once in the year: namely, in the beginning of *May* only, when he is to be put to Grass, alledging this reason, that if the Horse be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed and so draw upon the horse some grievous sickness, and this reason is excellent good. Others would have the horse to be let blood in the Vein not above once in a year; namely at the beginning of May: but in the Palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at the least once every month, alledging that it will clear the sight comfort the brain, and give him good appetite to his Meat: but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions but are sound and good, so the horse be young and in strength, his blood increasing; but if he be old, and his blood in the Ebb, then you cannot let blood too seldom. Now that it is fit a young horse should be let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the Polander Horses, who being at liberty out of natural instinct in themselves) fail not once a year to let themselves blood, yet we have divers of our best Farriers who would not have a horse let blood before there be urgent necessity, lest the use of letting blood bring a horse to an evil custom, and draw on sickness unexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, than to drive it away being present. Now that oft letting blood breedeth in a horse weakness, and maketh the blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the Heart and Intrails, and making the outward parts fat and unweldy, there

is

is no Queſtion but that the letting a horſe blood twice in the year, namely, at beginning of *May* and the end of *December* (at which times only I would have a horſe let blood and no other) ſhould be accounted oft, I ſee no reaſon Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would by no means have them let blood, becauſe ſay they, the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of Seed doth countervail five ounces of blood, and truly I am of that opinion too : but whereas they likewiſe adviſe by no means to let Geldings blood, becauſe the loſs of their ſtones is the loſs of their natural heat ; to that I am much contrary, becauſe I have found it by continual experience, that Geldings do as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood as horſes ; Nay, and much more oftner, in as much as they want the helps which horſes have for Purging their bloods from uncleanneſs. Now in the letting of Horſes blood, every careful Farrier is firſt to reſpect the Climate under which the horſe is bred, knowing that thoſe Horſes which are bred in cold Countries, have ever more blood than thoſe which are bred in the hot : then he muſt conſider the time of the Year, which would ever be the ſpring, or the fall of the Leaf, both theſe times being moſt temperate, neither exceeding in heat nor in cold. Next he muſt regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the Morning faſting, ſo it be not the horſes waking from ſleep, but at leaſt an hour or two after ; then he muſt look unto the ſtate of the Moon, that the ſign be not in that part of the Body where he intendeth to let blood . Next he muſt look to the horſes age, if he be young, and not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing ; and if he be old and come to decrepitneſs, his blood had more need be repaired than waſted. Laſtly, he ſhall look to the Horſes ſtrength and antient cuſtom, and ſo accordingly he ſhall deal with him, obſerving that ſome horſes may better ſpare two or three pound of blood, than other ſome one pound. Now thus much I have ſpoken touching ordinary and natural letting of blood, without Compulſion of any ſickneſs or Diſeaſe ; but in caſe where ſickneſs or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you ſhall neither reſpect Climate, Seaſon of the year, time of the day, Sign, Age, Strength, nor cuſtom, but ſetting all aſide, apply your ſelf only to the Removing of the infirmity. Now the ſigns to know if a horſe ſtand in need to be let blood are theſe: his Eyes will look red, and his Veins will ſwell more than ordinary ; alſo he will have a certain

itch about his Main and his Tayl, and ſtill be continually rubbing them; and ſometimes will ſhed ſome of his hair alſo; he will now and then pill about the roots of his ears, or in thoſe places where the head ſtall of the Bridle lies: his Urine will be red and high coloured and his dung will be black and hard: alſo if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or doth not digeſt his meat well, it is a ſign the horſe would be let blood; or if he have any apparent ſign or yellowneſs in the whites of his Eyes, or in the inſide of his Lips, either upper or neather, it is a ſign he would be let blood: for after any of theſe ſigns does moſt commonly follow ſome one or other grievous ſickneſs, which to prevent is the true Art of a skilful Farrier. Now it is meet that when you intend to let a horſe blood (having leiſure to do the ſame) that you ſuffer him to be thinly dyeted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end that his body may be quiet, and not troubled with Digeſtion. Now for the manner of letting a horſe blood, you ſhall as near as you can, let him ſtand upon even ground, and if it be the Neck-vein which you would ſtrike, you ſhall take a long ſmall Cord with a nooſe, and putting over to the horſes Neck, as cloſe to the ſetting on of the Shoulder as you can there draw it as ſtrait as is poſſible, and then faſten it with a running knot, and preſently you ſhall ſee the Veins to appear as big as a mans little finger, even from the nether Chap down to the Neck. Now you are to obſerve that the place where you are to ſtrike the Vein, is even within three fingers or four fingers at the moſt of the nether Chap: as thus; if your horſe have a long, fine, thin Neck and Skin, then you may ſtrike the Vein within three fingers or leſs of the Chap, (ſith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a ſhort chub Neck, with a thick skin, and many wreaths or rouls about the ſetting on of his Chaps, then you ſhall ſtrike the Vein at leaſt four fingers from the Chap, leſt thoſe wreaths together with the thickneſs of the skin, do ſo defend the Vein that your Fleim cannot reach it. When you have thus raiſed the Vein up, you ſhall cauſe one to ſtand on the contrary ſide of the horſe, and with his fiſt to thruſt the Vein forth hard againſt you: then you ſhall either with a wet Sponge, or with a little ſpittle, wet the part of the vein which you mean to ſtrike, and then ſeparating the hair, ſet your fleim even and directly upon the Vein; and then with a good ſmart blow ſtrike it into the Vein: which done, You ſhall cauſe one to put his Finger into the horſes Mouth, and tickling him in the Roof There-

of,

of, make him chaw and move his Chaps, for that will force the blood to ſpin forth; now the blood which you take from the horſe, it is very neceſſary that you ſave in divers veſſels, for divers cauſes: as firſt, that you may ſee when all the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is grown pure, and ſo remaineth being cold, that then you ſuffer the Horſe to bleed no more; or elſe that you ſave it to bathe the horſes Body therewith, which is moſt wholeſom; or elſe to make a Medicine therewithall by mingling with the Blood Vinegar and Oyl, and ſo bathe the horſes Body therewith, eſpecially that place which was let blood. For the antient Farriers hold an Opinion, That it is indued with a certain Natural vertue, and power to comfort the weakneſs and feeble members of a Horſe, and to dry up all evil humours. Now as ſoon as your horſe hath bled ſufficiently, you ſhall let looſe the Cord, and immediately the vein will ſtop: then with that Cord you ſhall ſtroke down the Vein juſt over the orifice twice or thrice, which will both cloſe up the hole, and alſo turn the courſe of the Blood: this done ſet the Horſe up in the Stable, and let him ſtand faſting two or three hours after, and then after dyet him, according as in your diſcretion you ſhall think meet, that is to ſay if he be a ſick horſe, then like a ſick horſe with good Provender and warm Maſhes: but if he be a ſound horſe, then like a ſound horſe, either turn him to Graſs, or keep him in the Stable after his ancient Cuſtom.

Now if you would let your horſe blood either in the Temple-veins or the eye-veins, you ſhall then Cord him hard about the midſt of the Neck, and not near his ſhoulders, having a care that you touch not his Wind pipe and ſo throttle him: for it will make both theſe Veins ſhew moſt apparently. If you intend to let the horſe blood in the Breaſt-vein, or Plat veins, of ſome called the fore Thigh-veins, you ſhall then cord him behind the ſhoulders, cloſe to the Elbows of the horſe, and overthwart his Withers, and that will make theſe two Veins ſhew. Now you ſhall underſtand, that not any of theſe veins laſt ſpoken of, as about the head or the Breaſt, muſt be let blood by ſtriking them with a Fleim (though it be the manner of our common Smiths) for it is moſt beaſtly and butcherly, and alſo full of much danger by ſtriking through the Vein, (If he be not skilfull) but you ſhall with a fine ſharp Lancet open the Vein, even in ſuch ſort as you ſee a skilfull Chirurgeon open the Vein in a Mans Arm. Now for the letting of a horſe blood in the Palate of the mouth,

you ſhall but only with a ſharp pointed knife, prick the horſe between the ſecond and third Bar, as deep as a Barly Corn is long, and he will bleed ſufficiently: as for all other veins in a horſes Body whatſoever, which are to be opened, you ſhall underſtand, that whenſoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they muſt be taken up and not corded at all. Now touching the taking up of Veins, and the manner how to do it, you ſhall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this book.

CHAP. VI.

Of outward Sorances what they are, and of certain general Obſervations in the Cure of them.

OUtward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways, that is to ſay, either it is an evil ſtate and compoſition of the body, which is to be diſcerned either by the ſhape, number, quantity, or ſight of the member evil affected and diſeaſed: or elſe it is the Looſening and diviſion of any unity, which as it may chance diverſly, ſo it hath divers names accordingly. For if ſuch a diviſion or looſing be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleſhly part, then it is called a wound, or an Ulcer: If it be in the Veins, then a Rupture: If in the ſinews, then a Convulſion or cramp; and if it be in the skin, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all theſe ſeverally I intend to treat in the following Chapters. Now for as much as in this general Art of Chyrurgery or Sorances, there are certain general Obſervations or Cavcats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any farther, give you a little taſte thereof.

Firſt, you ſhall therefore underſtand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oyl, nor to make any inciſion with a knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews, or joynts, but either ſomewhat lower, or ſomewhat higher.

Item. You ſhall never apply to any Joynt or Sinewy part, Either Roſalgar, Arſnick, Mercury, Sublimate, nor any ſuch violent Corroſive.

Item, It is ever better to Launce with a hot Iron than a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize than to incife.

Item, Blood doth ever produce white and thick matter, Choler a watriſh thin matter, but not much, ſalt Flegm, great abundance of matter, and Melancholy many dry Scabs.

Item.

Item, When you let blood, you muſt take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horſe.

Item, You muſt never let Blood, except it be either to divert ſickneſs, and preſerve health, or to refreſh and cool the blood, or elſe to diminiſh blood, or to purge bad humours.

Item, In all Impoſtumes and ſwelling Sores, called Tumors, you muſt obſerve the four times of the ſickneſs, that is to ſay, the beginning of the grief, the increaſe of the grief, the perfection and ſtate of the grief; and laſtly, the declination and ending of the grief.

Item, In the beginning of every ſuch ſwelling Apoſtumes (if you cannot quite deſtroy them) uſe repercuſſive Medicines, if they be not near ſome principal part of the body; but then not, for fear of indangering life; and in augmentation, uſe Mollifying Medicines, and ſupplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe, Launch them, and let them out, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, uſe cleanſing and healing medicines.

Item, All ſwellings are either hard or ſoft, the hard commonly will Corrode, the ſoft will continue long.

Item, If you thruſt your finger upon any ſwelling upon a Horſes Legs, then if it preſently riſe again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent do remain and continue ſtill behind, then is the hurt old, and cometh of cold humours, and ask great Art in healing.

Item, When Sores begin to matter, then they heal, but if the putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All Cauteriſing or burning with hot Irons, ſtraineth things inlarged, drieth up what is too much moiſtned, diſſolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth back things which are diſperſed, and helpeth old griefs: for it ripeneth, diſſolveth, and maketh them to run and iſſue forth matter.

Item, You muſt ſometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours, and ſometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours

Item, It is ever better to burn with Copper then with Iron, becauſe Iron is of a Malignant nature, Steel of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actual burnings is to burn with inſtruments, and Potential burnings is to burn with Medicines, as are Cauſticks and Corroſives.

Item,

Item, If you uſe to blow powders into a horſes eyes, it will make him blind.

Item. By no means take up any veins in the fore legs, unleſs great extremity compel you: for there is nothing that will ſoone make a horſe ſtiff and lame. Many other obſervations there are, which becauſe they are not ſo general as theſe be, and that I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of them in other particular Chapters, I think it here meet to omit them, and the rather, becauſe I would not be tedious.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Diſeaſes in the Eyes, and firſt of the weeping and watring Eye.

THe Eyes of a horſe are ſubject to many infirmities, as firſt to be Rhumatick, or watry, then to be blood-ſhotten, to be dim of ſight, to have the Pin and Web, the Haw, the Wart in the Eye, the Inflammation of the Eyes, the Canker in the Eye, or a ſtroke in the Eye: of all which, ſome come of inward cauſes, as of Humours reſorting to the Eyes, and ſome of outward cauſe, as Heat, Cold, or elſe by ſome ſtripe or blow.

And firſt to begin with he Rhumatick, or watry Eye, you ſhall underſtand, that, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the Flux of Humours diſtilling from the Brain, and ſometimes from the anguiſh of ſome blow or ſtripe received. The ſigns are, a continual watring of the eye, and a cloſe holding of the Lids together, accompanied ſometime with a little ſwelling. The Cure according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to take of Bolearmonick, of Terra ſigillata, and of Sanguis Draconis of each a like quantity; make them into Powder, and then add unto them as much of the white of an Egg and vinegar, as will make them móiſt: and then ſpread it plaiſter-wiſe upon a Cloath, and lay it to the horſes Temples of his Head above his eyes: and do this three days together. Others uſe to let the horſe blood in the veins under his eyes: then to waſh the Eye twice or thrice in the day with white-wine, and then to blow into the ſore Eye with a Quill, the powder of Tartar, Salgemma, and Cuttle-bone, of each a like quantity: or elſe take the yolk of an Egg roaſted hard, and mix therewith the powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye, and ſo let it reſt a night more. Other Farriers uſe to take of Pitch and Rozen,

and

and of Maſtick a like quantity, melt them together: then with a little ſtick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, Anoint the Temple Veins on both ſides a handfull above the Eyes, as broad as a ſhilling, and then clap unto it immediately a few flocks of like Colour to the horſe, holding them cloſe to his Head with your hand, untill they ſtick faſt to his head, then let him blood on both his Eye-veins, if both eyes be ſore, and then waſh his Eyes with white-wine.

Others uſe only to take a pretty quantity of life-Honey, and to diſſolve it in white-whine, and to waſh the horſes Eye therewith: and ſure if it proceed from any blow, it is Medicine ſufficient enough; but if it proceed from any Rheume, or inward cauſes, then you ſhall take ground Ivy beaten in a Morter, and mixt with Wax, and ſo laid to the Eyes like a Plaiſter, or elſe boyl Worm-wood in White-Wine, and waſh the horſes Eyes therewith, alſo to ſpurt Beer or Ale now and then into the horſes Eyes, will clear the ſight paſſing well. ☞

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever.

FOr any Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever, either outward or inward, you ſhall take (accordnig to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) of Roſe-water, of Malmſey, and of Fennel water, of each three ſpoonfuls, of Tutty as much as you can eaſily take up between your Thumb and your Finger, of Cloves a dozen beaten into fine powder, mingle them together, and being luke-warm, or cold, if you pleaſe, waſh the inward parts of the eye with a feather dipt therein twice a day untill the eye be well: or inſtead thereof, waſh the eye either with the white of an Egg, or with the juyce of Selladine. Others uſe to take the tops of Hawthorns, and boyling them in white-Wine, waſh the eye therewith. Other Farriers take a Dram of Synoper, and as much life Honey, as much of Wheat-flower, mix them with fair running water, ſo they may be liquid and thin, then ſeethe them with a very ſoft fire till they be thick like an Oyntment, and therewith anoint the Eye.

But the beſt Receipt that ever I found for this grief, is, to take the Whites of two Eggs, and beat it till it come to an Oyl, then put to ☞

it

in two ſpoonfuls of Roſe-water, and three ſpoonfuls of the juyce of Houſleek, mix them well together, then dip therein little round Plegants or flat Cakes of ſoft tow, as big as a Horſes Eye, and lay them upon the horſes eye, renewing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the horſes eye ſound again.

CHAP. IX

Of Dimneſs of ſight, or blindneſs.

Dimneſs of ſight, or blindneſs, may happen to a horſe divers ways, as by ſome ſtrain, when the inward ſtrings of the Eyes are ſtretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labor, or by the ſupporting of a great burden beyond the horſes ability, or by ſome blow or wound: any of theſe are mortal enemies to the eyes or ſight. The ſign is the aparent want of ſight, and an evil affected colour of the eye. Now for the Cure, it is thus:

☞ If the ſight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye be ſound, Then you ſhall take, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, a pretty quantity of May-Butter, with as much Roſe-mary, and a little yellow Rozen with a like quantity of Selladine, then ſtamp them and fry them with the May-Butter, then ſtrain it and keep it in a Cloſe Box (for it is Jewel for ſore Eyes) and anoint your Horſes Eyes therewith at leaſt twice a day; it is alſo good to heal any wound. Other Farriers ſe to uſe to let the horſe blood in the eye-veins, and then waſh his eyes with Red Roſe-water. Others uſe to take the Gall of a black Sheep and beat it, and ſtrain it, then to waſh the eyes therewith: others uſe to burn the horſe under the eye that the ill Humors may diſtill forth, and then to anoint his eyes either with the Marrow of a Sheeps ſhank, and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe with the juyce of ground Ivy. Other Farriers uſe to take a Mould-warp and lapping her all over in Clay, burn her to aſhes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the horſes eyes. Others uſe to take an empty Egg-ſhell, and fill with Bay Salt, then burn it till it be black: Then add to it of burnt Allom the quantity of your Thumb, beat them together to fine powder, then mix ſome of this Powder with freſh Butter, and wipe it into the horſes eye with a feather, then clap the white of an Egg dipt in Flax, over his eyes: do this once a day for a ſeven-night, and after but once in two dayes: This is moſt excellent for any Film, and alſo for a Pearl.

Others

Others use to take two dry Tyle-stones, and rub them together, and blow the Powder of it with a Quill into the horses eye four dayes together.

CHAP. X.

A most rare approved Medicine for any desperate blindness in a Horse, proceeding from any Rheumatick cause, Surfeit, Strain, Stroke, or such like.

TAke of Vermillion, Betony and Lavender, and beat them in a Mortar with the best Venice-Turpentine, till they come to a thick Salve like Paste: Then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a Chafingdish and Coals: And then covering them with a Tunnel, let your horse receive the smoak up into his Nostrils, and this do Morning and evening: and every time you thus Fume him, you shall also wash his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye-bright simply, or with the water of Eye-bright, and the juyce of Ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many to mistake this ground-Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runs along on the Ground to be ground Ivy, but it is not so: For Ground Ivy is a Weed which commonly grows in bottoms of Hedges by Ditch sides, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leaf, and is jagged on the edges, and of all Simples none is more soveraign for the eyes.

CHAP. XI.

Another most excellent and approved receit for any desperate blindness in a Horse or any Beast whatsoever.

TAke the shells of half a dozen Eggs, and cleanse away the inner Film from them so clean as may be, then lay those shells between two clean Tyles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lye a good space till the shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the shells to fine powder, then searce it through a Laun to fine dust, then with a Goose-quill blow this powder into the horses eye that is offended with Pin, Web, Film, or any thickness or foulness; and it is a certain Cure, and this do Morning, Noon, and Night.

But if it be for any watred or inflamed eye, for any Bruiſe, Stripe, Lunatick, or deſcending Humors, then take a ſpoonful and a half of fine ſearced powder of white Sugar-Candy, and mix it with the former powder of ſhells : then with as much May Butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof the beſt ſweet Butter without Salt, work all into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoint the horſes eye morning, noon, and night, for it cleanſeth, purgeth, comforteth and cooleth.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Pearl, Pin, Web, or any ſpot in a Horſes eye.

THe Pearl, the Pin, the Web or any unnatural ſpot, or thick Film over a horſes eye, proceedeth, for the moſt part, from ſome ſtroak received : yet the Pearl, which is a little round, thick, white ſpot like a Pearl, growing on the ſight of the horſes eye, comes many times from natural cauſes, and even from deſcent of Syre and dam, as I have often found by experience. The ſign is, the apparent ſight of the infirmity and the Cure according to the opinion of the moſt Antient Farriers, is, to take ſix leaves of ground Ivy, and a bunch of Selladine, and brav them in a Morter, with a ſpoonful or two of Womans Milk, and then ſtrain it through a clean Linnen Cloath, and put it into a cloſe Glaſs, and then drop of it as much into the horſes eye at a time as will half a haſel-nut-ſhell ; and it is the fitteſt to be done at night only. Do this thrice at the leaſt, and for three days after keep the Horſe as much as may be from any light. Other Farriers uſe to anoint the horſes eyes with the Marrow of Goats Shanks, and Deers Shanks and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe to waſh his eyes with the juyce of the Berries and leaves of ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with white-Wine ; and to blow into his Eyes the powder of black Flint, or of Land Oyſters : but that Powder muſt be made ſo exceeding fine, as by Art of Searcing can any ways be brought to paſs : And for the taking away of any Film or Pearl, there is no Medicines more Soveraign. There be other farriers which uſe to take the lean of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a powder and blow it into the horſes eye. Others uſe to take white Ginger made into very fine Powder, and blow it into the horſes eyes ; yet before you do ſo, if the Web have continued any long time, it ſhall not be amiſs, firſt to anoint the horſes

eye

Eye with Capons greaſe. Others uſe to blow into the horſes eye, the Powder of Elder Leaves dryed, or elſe the Powder of mans dung dryed; or the Powder of a grey Whet-ſtone mixt with the Oyl of Honey, and put into the Horſes eye: others uſe to take the yolk of an Egg with Salt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow into the Horſes eye: or elſe the powder of the Cuttle-bone. Others uſe to take either Elder Leaves dried, or Mans dung dryed, and mix it with the powder of the ſhell or Bone of the Crab-Fiſh, and blow it into the Horſes eye. Others take Tutte beaten to powder, and with a quill blow it juſt upon the Pearl.

Other Farriers uſe to take (and ſure it is not inferiour, but better than any Medicine whatſoever) a good quantity of white Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet Cloath, put it into the fire, and burn it to a red Coal: then taking it forth and breaking it open you ſhall find in the midſt thereof a white coar as big as a Bean, or bigger: Then pick out that Coar and beat it to powder, and mix it with a little white-wine, then after it hath ſtood a while; take the thickeſt of that lieth in the bottom, and put it into the horſes eye, and with the thin waſh his eye, do thus once a day till the Pearl be conſumed. ☞

Others uſe to take the juyce of Rue, and put it into the horſes eye or elſe to make an hole in a Egg, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the ſhell with Pepper, and cloſing it in an earthen Pot, put it into a hot burning oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the Horſes eye. Others uſe to take of Pummiſtone, of Tartarum, and Salgemma of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the horſes eye, continuing ſo to do till the eye be well. Others uſe only to blow the powder of Sandeuoire into the Horſes eye, affirming that it alone hath ſufficient force and Vertue to break any Pearl or Web in a ſhort ſpace, without any other compoſition: But ſurely I have found the powder of Flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to be much ſtronger.

CHAP. XIII.

A most excellent and infallible Cure for any Pin, Web, Pearl, or ſet in a Horſes Eye.

TAke an Egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the white, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roaſt the Egg extreme hard, ſo as you may beat it to fine powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloath, then Morning and evening, after you have waſht the horſes eye with the juyce of ground Ivy, or Eye-bright water, you ſhall blow of this powder therein, and it is a certain remedy.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Haw in a Horſes Eye.

THe Haw is a Griſtle growing betwixt the nether eye-lid and the eye, and it covereth ſometimes, more than the one half of the eye. it proceeds of groſs and tough Flegmy humours, which deſcending down from the head, and knitting together, do in the end grow to a Horn or hard Griſtle. The ſigns thereof are a watring of the Eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lid, beſides an apparent ſhew of the Haw it ſelf, if with your Thumb you do put down the nether lid of the horſes eye. The Cure is, take a needle and a double Thread, put it through the tip of the horſes Ear, which done put the Needle likewiſe through the upper eye lid of the horſe upwards, and ſo draw up the Eye-lid, and faſten it to the Ear, then with your Thumb put down the nether lid, and you ſhall plainly ſee the Haw: Then thruſt your needle through the edge of the Haw, and with the Thred draw it out, ſo as you may lap it about your finger, then faſten the Thread about your little finger, to hold it conſtantly, and then with a very ſharp knife cut croſs the Griſtle of the inſide next the horſes eye, and ſo ſeparating the skin and the fat from the Griſtle, cut the Griſtle quite out; then cutting your threds draw them clean out, both of the Eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then waſh all the horſes Eye either with Ale, Beer, or White-wine, and pluck away all the long hairs from about the horſes eyes, being ſure to leave no blood within the horſes Eye. And in this manner of Cure, you muſt obſerve, that by no means you cut away too much

of

of the wash or fat by the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the Haw, for that will make the horse blear-eyed, there be other Farriers which use after they have cut out the Haw; to anoint the Eye six dayes after with Sallet-Oyl, the Marrow of Sheeps Shanks and Salt mixt together.

Others do take the juyce of ground Ivy stampt in a Mortar, with the juyce of Ivy berries, and mix them either with water or white Wine, and so Plaister-wise lay it to the horses Eye, renewing it morning and evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the Eye a Plaister of Camomil and of Honey beaten together; and of all which is sufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one haw, commonly hath two, for they continually go together.

CHAP. XV.

Of Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick Eyes.

THe Moon-eyes, or Lunatick-eyes, are of all sore eyes the most dangerous and noysome, and do proceed from hot humours, descending from the Head, and stirred up by the extremity of over-riding or compelling a horse to do more than nature will give him leave: as I have seen a sloathful and heavy horse brought to be Moon-Eyed by the Folly of his Rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigor of his Spirit: So likewise I have seen delicate Metal'd horses brought to be Moon eyed, when the Riders would not temper the freeness of their natures, but have given them leave to run with all violence. Now they be called Moon-eyes, because if the Farrier do observe them, he shall perceive that at some times of the Moon the horse will see very prettily, and at some times of the Moon he will see nothing at all Now the signs hereof are, when the horses eyes are at the best, they will look yellowish, and dim, and when they are at the worst, they will look red, fiery, and angry.

The Cure is, to lay all over the Temples of the horses head, the plaister of pitch, Rozen, and Mastick, mentioned in the Chapter of watry eyes: then under each of his eyes with a sharp knife make a slit of an inch long about four fingers beneath his eyes, and at least an inch wide of the Eye-veins; then with a Cornet loosen the skin about the breadth of a Groat, and thrust therein a round piece of

Leather

Leather as broad as a two pence with a hole in the midſt, to keep the hole open: and look to it once a day, that the matter may not be ſtopped, but continually run the ſpace of ten days; then take the Leather out, and heal the Wound with a little flax dipt in this Salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and boyl them together, which being a little warmed, will be liquid to ſerve your purpoſe; and take not away the Plaiſters which are upon his Temples until of themſelves they fall away; which being fallen, then with ſmall a hot drawing Iron make a Star in the midſt of each Temple-vein, where the Plaiſters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midſt, made with the Button end of your hot drawing Iron in this ſort.

Now there be other Farriers, which in ſtead of the ſlits under the eye, and the pieces of Leather, which is a plain Rowel, only to take a ſmall blunt hot Irons and about an inch and an half beneath the nether Lid, to burn ſome five holes all of a row, according to the compaſs of the horſes eye, and to burn thoſe holes even unto the bone, and then once a day to anoint them with freſh Greaſe, or ſweet Butter.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Canker in the Eye.

A Canker in the eye cometh of a rank and corrupt blood, deſcending from the head into the eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little Worm in manner as it were the head of a Piſmire, which groweth in the nether end of the horſes Eye next to his Noſe ward; it proceedeth many times into the Griſtle of the Noſe, which if it chance to eat thorough, it will then paſs into the head and ſo kill the horſe. The ſigns hereof are, you ſhall ſee red Pimples ſome great and ſome ſmall, both within and without the eye, upon the Eye-lids, and alſo the eye it ſelf will look red, and be full of very corrupt matter. The Cure, according to the antient Farriers, is, to take as much burnt Allom as an Hazle-Nut, and as much of green Copperas, and bake them both together upon Tile-ſtone, and then grind them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a ſpoonfull of Honey, and mix them altogether, and then with a Clout dipt therein, rub the ſore till it bleed; and do thus ſeven days together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this

Canker

Canker in a horſes eye, will firſt let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein of the ſame ſide the ſore eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of blood: Then take of Roch-Allom, and of green Copperas, of each half a pound, of white Copperas one ounce and boyl them in three pints of running water, untill the half be conſumed: then take it from the fire, and once a day waſh his eye with this water, being made luke-warm, with a fine Linnen Cloath, and cleanſe the eye therewith, ſo as it may look raw, and do this till the eye be whole.

CHAP. XVII.

For a ſtripe or blow upon a Horſes Eye.

IF a horſe ſhall catch any ſtripe or blow upon his eye, either with Whip, Rod, Cudgel, or any ſuch like miſchance, or by one Horſes biting of another when they either play or fight: then for the Cure thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you ſhall only blow into his Eye either the Powder of Sandevoir, or the fine Powder of white ſalt, after the eye hath been waſht with a little Beer. but if the eye be more ſore, and have continued longer, then you ſhall take a ſmall loaf of Bread, and pull out all the Crums; Then fill the Loaf full of burning Coals, untill it be well burned within, then take of that Cruſt and put it in white Wine, and after it is well ſoaked lay to the Sore, then take Sope-water and cold Water mixt together, and waſh all the Eye-brows therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you ſhall let him blood on the Temple-veins; and if he do rub or chafe his eye, you ſhall let him blood on the veins under his eyes, and waſh his eyes with Cold Sope-water; but if his eyes do chance to look red with the blow, then you ſhall lay unto them a plaiſter of Red Lead and Sallet-Oyl beaten well together. Others uſe to take the juyce of Plantain, ſtampt and mixt with white Wine, and ſo laid to the ſore eye. Others uſe both for this Diſeaſe, or any other ſore eye, to ſtamp ſtrong Nettles with a little Beer, and then ſtraining it to ſquirt thereof into the Horſes eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of Sandevoire a little into his Eyes, and then be careful to keep the horſes eye from Wind or Cold; but if you muſt needs ride him, then put a Woollen cloath before the horſes Eye; alſo it is not amiſs to let him blood on his eye-veins, and then twice dreſſing will be ſufficient.

Others

Other Farriers uſe firſt to anoint the ſore eye three days together with Hens or Capons greaſe, to mollify it: then take a little live-Honey, and warming it, wipe it into the horſes eye with a feather. Others take the juyce of Plantain mixt with Honey, or elſe the juyce of Tyme mixt with Honey, and put it into the eye. Others uſe to take the aſhes of an old ſhoo ſole burnt in an Oven, and put into the Horſes Eye; or elſe the powder of a grey Whet-ſtone blown into the ſore eye; both are ſpeedy remedies. Others uſe to take the juyce of Smallage, and of Fennel, and mixing them with the white of an Egg, pat it into the horſes eye once a day till the eye be whole.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Wart in the Eye.

A Wart in a Horſes Eye, is a fleſhy excreſcion, or a fleſhy knot growing either upon the Eye, or upon the edge or inſide of the Eye lids, it proceedeth from a thick Flegm, which deſcendeth to the eye, by means that the horſe is too much kept in a dark Stable without light: and this infirmity will make a horſes eye conſume and grow little. The Cure is, to take Roch-Allom, and burn it on a Tile-ſtone, and then put as much white Coperas thereunto not burnt, and grind them to powder, then lay ſome of that powder juſt upon the head of the Wart, and do this once a day till the Wart be conſumed away.

CHAP. XIX.

For an Inflammation in a Horſes Eye.

HOrſes may diverſly have Inflammations in the eyes; as by long ſtanding in the Stable, with foul feeding and no exerciſe, or by Moats falling into his eyes, or by rankneſs of blood, and ſuch like, any of each will breed an Inflammation or ſoreneſs in the eye. The ſigns are itching and rubbing of the eyes, and little ſwelling, with ſome loathneſs to open the eye-lids. The Cure is, firſt to let him blood upon the Temple-veins, and upon the Eye-veins, and then to waſh his eyes in Milk and Honey mixt together. Others after blood letting, will waſh the Horſes eyes with Honey and Aloes Epatica mixt together: And others will waſh Eyes with Aloes diſſolved in white-Wine, any of which is approved to be moſt excellent for any ſore Eye.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Impoſthume in the Ear of a Horſe.

IMpoſthumes which breed in the Ear of a Horſe proceed from divers cauſes, as from ſome great blow about the Head, or ſome wringings with a hard halter, or from ſome evil humour congealed in the ears by ſome extreme cold. The ſigns whereof appear plainly by the burning and painful ſwelling of the roots of the ears, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is firſt to ripe the Impoſtume with this plaiſter: take of Linſeed beaten into fine powder, and wheat flower, of each half a pint, of honey a pint, of Hogs greaſe, otherwiſe called Barrows greaſe, one pound; warm all theſe things together in an earthen pot, and ſtir them continually with a flat ſtick or ſlice, untill they be throughly mingled and incorporated together, and then ſpread ſome of this plaiſter being warm upon a piece of Linnen cloth or ſoft white Leather, ſo broad as the ſwelling and no more, and lay it warm unto it, and ſo let it remain one whole day, and then renew it again, continuing ſo to do, untill it either do break, or elſe grow ſo ripe that you may launce it downwards, ſo that the matter may have paſſage out, then tent it with this tent of flax dipped in this ſalve even to the bottom, that is to ſay, take of Mel Roſatum, of Sallet oyl and Turpentine, of each two ounces and mingle them together, and make the horſe a biggin of Canvas to cloſe in the ſore, ſo as the tent with the oyntment may abide within the ſore, renewing the tent once a day untill it be whole: but if the horſe have pain in his ears, without any great pain or Inflammation, then thruſt into his ear a little black Wool, dipt in the Oyl of Camomile, and that will eaſe him: But if the Impoſthume be broken before you perceive it, and that you ſee matter run from the horſes ears, then you ſhall take of Oyl of Roſes, of Venice Turpentine, and Honey, of each like quantity, and mixing them well together, warm it luke-warm upon a few Coals, and then dipping black wool therein, thruſt it down into the horſes Ear that runneth, renewing it once a day till the Ear leave running.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Pole-evil.

THe Pole-evil is a great ſwelling inflammation or Apoſthume in the nape of the horſes neck, juſt between his ear, towards his Main, and proceedeth ſometimes from the horſes ſtrugling or ſtriving in his Halter, eſpecially if the Halter be of hard new twound Hemp; ſometimes it proceedeth from evil humours gathered together in that place, or elſe from ſome ſtripe or blow given to the horſe by ſome rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little diſcretion; for that part being the weakeſt and tendereſt part about the head, is the ſooneſt offended and grieved with Sorances. The ſign of this diſeaſe is an apparent ſwelling between the horſes ears, and on each ſide his neck, which in continuance of time, will break of its own accord, yet doth ever rot more inwardly than outwardly, from whence it comes that this Diſeaſe is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fiſtula in the Neck, than the Pole-evil; and in truth it is an Ulcer ſo hollow and ſo crooked, and ſo full of ſharp matter, like unto like, that it differeth very little from a Fiſtula, and is of all Impoſthumes, except the Fiſtula it ſelf, the hardeſt to cure: Therefore I would wiſh every careful Farrier to take this cure in hand ſo ſoon as is poſſible, that is to ſay, before it break, if it may be.

Now for the general cure (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) it is thus: Firſt, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaiſter of Hogs greaſe, laid unto it ſo hot as may be, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keep it from cold, which biggen would have two holes open, ſo as his Ears may ſtand out, and renew the Plaiſter every day once untill that break, keeping the ſore place as warm as may be; and if that you ſee it will not break ſo ſoon as you would have it, then look where it is ſofteſt, and moſt meeteſt to be opened, take a round hot Iron or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a mans little finger and ſharp at the point, made like an Arrow-head, and then about two inches beneath the ſoft place, thruſt it in a good deepneſs upwards, ſo as the point of your Cauteriſing Iron may come out at the ripeſt place, to the intent that the matter may deſcend downward, and come out at the nearer hole, which would always be kept open: And therefore tent it with a

tent

tent of flax dipt in Hogs greaſe warm, and lay alſo a plaiſter of hogs greaſe upon the ſame, renewing it every day once for the ſpace of four days, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fire: Then at the four days end, take of Turpentine half a pound, clean waſhed in nine ſundry waters, and after that throughly dryed, by thruſting out the water with a ſlice on the diſhes ſide; then put thereunto two yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together. That done, ſearch the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a tent of a piece of dry ſpunge never wet, ſo long as it may near reach the bottom, and ſo big as it may fill the wound, and anoint the tent with the aforeſaid Oyntment, and thruſt it into the Wound either with that quill, or elſe by winding it up with your finger and thumb by little and little, untill you have thruſt it home, and then lay on the Plaiſter of hogs greaſe made lukewarm, renewing it every day once until it be whole: but if the ſwelling ceaſe, then you need not uſe the plaiſter, but only to tent it; and as the matter decreaſeth, ſo make your tent every day leſſer and leſſer, untill the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this diſeaſe of the Pole-evil have broke of its own ſelf, and by neglecting looking unto, have continued ſo long that it is turned to a Fiſtula, which you ſhall know both by the great and crooked hollowneſs inwardly, and by a ſharp thin water which would iſſue out there outwardly, then you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of unſlackt Lime, and of Arſnick, of each a like quantity, beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the juice of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wall wort, of each a like quantity, and of Holly as much as all the reſt, boyl them upon a ſoft fire, and ſtir them all well together untill they be as thick as an oyntment; then waſh the ſore with very ſtrong Vinegar, and fill the hole full of the aforeſaid Ointment, by dipping a tent therein twice a day; then lay a plaiſter of Hoggs greaſe upon the Tent to make it keep in, and uſe this untill the Horſe be whole.

Our Farriers uſe to take Orpiment, unſlackt Lime, and Verdigreaſe, of each a like quantity, temper them with the juyce of Pellitory, black Ink, Honey and ſtrong Vinegar, of each a like quantity, boyl them and ſtir them well together, untill they be very thick, then make thereof ſmall rouls, and put them into the hollow place of the ſame ſorance. Now you are to note, that both theſe and the laſt

recited ſalve before this, are only to kill the Rankerous and ſharp humor which brings the ſore unto a Fiſtula, which as ſoon as you have killed, which you ſhall know by the matter which will be white and thick, then you ſhall heal up the ſore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of honey and lime baked together, or elſe by anointing it with Tarr and Sallet-Oyl, or freſh hogs Greaſe mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this Sorrance do firſt open the ſore with a hot Iron, and then take red Lead and black ſope, and mixing them well with water till he be good and thick, tent the horſe therewith till it be whole.

Others uſe to take a quart of water, half a pound of roch Allom, four penny-worth of Mercury, a quarter of a Pound of Verdigreaſe, and mixing them well together, waſh the horſes ſore with this water till it begin to dry up, and then heal it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞.

CHAP. XXII.

A true and certain approved Cure for any Pole-evil whatſoever.

FIrſt ſhave off the hair from the ſwelling, then lay on a Plaiſter of black Shoomakers Wax, ſpread upon white Allom'd Leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broke the Impoſthume: then take a pint of Wine-Vinegar, and when it is boyling hot, mix with it as much clay lome with the ſtraws and all in it, as will bring the vinegar unto a thick poulteſs, then apply this as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it to the ſore, and renew it once a day till the impoſthume be whole.

CHAP. XXII.

Of a Horſe that is Lave-eard, and how to help him.

FOr a Horſe to be Lave-eard, is as foul a diſgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and uſe of any outward member whatſoever. It proceedeth from a natural infirmity, and is ingendered even from the firſt conception, and although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themſelves, or know how to help it; yet there is nothing more certain than that in this ſort it may be cured. Firſt, take your horſes ears, and place them

them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little boards, or pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them; bind the ears so fast in the places where they stand, that by no means or motion they may stir, then betwixt the head and the root of the ear, you shall see a great deal of empty wrinkled skin, which with your finger and your thumb you shall pull up, and then with a very sharp pair of Sizars you shall clip away all the empty skin close by the head; and then with a needle and red silk you shall stitch the two sides of the skin close together, and then with a Salve made of Turpentine, Deers suet, and Honey, of each like quantity melted together, and made into an oyntment, Heal up the sore; which done, take away the splents which held up his ears, and you shall see within a short time that his ears will keep the same place still as you set them; without any alteration: And this you shall ever find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut finger.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Vives or hard Kirnels between the Chaps and the Neck.

THe Vives are certain great Kirnels which grow from the root of the horses ears, down to the lower part of his nether Jaw, between the chap and the neck, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are natural things, proper and due to every Horse: but when either through rankness of blood, or abundance of corrupt humors resorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foul Sorrances and Imposthumations most dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white Salt Kirnels, and they breed great pain in the horses throat. This Disease as far forth as I can find by any demonstration, is the Disease which in men we call the squinancy or Quinzie, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the signs of the disease, there needs small repetition, insomuch as the grief is apparent to the eye: and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus; if you see the Kirnels begin to rankle and swell, you shall take the horses ear, and laying it down alongst the neck of the horse, at the very end or tip of the Ear, cut a hole through the skin of the neck. the length of an Almond, or better; and then with a crooked Wire, pick out all those Kirnels which you find

find inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end of three days, you shall find the sore begin to matter: Then wash it either with Bark-water, or with the juyce of Sage: then take of Honey, of sweet Butter, and of Tar, of each half a spoonfull, and melt them together, and as soon as you have washt the sore clean, put into it of this oyntment the quantity of a Bean, and so dress the Horse once a day untill it be whole.

There be others of our most antient English Farriers, which for this Sorrance use first to draw the sore right down in the midst with a hot Iron from the root of the ear, so far as the tip of the Ear will reach, being pulled down, and under the root again draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow head in this form:

then in the midst of the first Line Launce them with a Launcet, and taking hold of the kirnels with a pair of fine thin Pinsons, pull them so far forward as you may cut the Kirnels out without hurting the vein: that done, fill the hole with Salt, and heal it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the Italian Farriers use this Cure: First, take a spunge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a day untill the Kirnels be rotten: That done, launce it then in the nethermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warm water and a sponge, and then anoint the place with Honey and Fitch flower mixt together; but in any case beware, during this Cure, you touch not the Kernels with your bare finger, for fear of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there be other English Farriers, which use either to ripen the sore by laying to a plaister of hot hogs grease, or a plaister of Barley meal mixt with three ounces of Raisins, sod well together in strong Wine; or else they cut out the Kernels, now whether you cut them out, burn them out, or rot them out, (of all which I hold rotting the best,) you shall ever fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together, or else tent it with tents dipt in water and mixt with Sallet Oyl and Salt. Others use to burn them downwards with a hot Iron in the midst, from the ear to the Jaw-bone, drawing two cross strokes, and then launch it in the midst, and pluck out the Kernels, and fill the hole with bay Salt, and the crops of Nettles well chopt and mix together: or else put only Salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well

chopt

chopt and mixt with Bay Salt; and two ſpoonfuls of ſtrong vinegar, and ſtrein it, and put in either ear a ſpoonfull thereof, and put ſome black wool after it, and ſo bind up his ears.

Others uſe to ripen them, either by laying to the ſore wet hay, or wet horſe-litter : and as ſoon as they are ripe, (which you ſhall know by the ſoftneſs) to launch the skin, and take out the Kirnels, and then fill the hole with the powder of Honey and unſlackt Lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-ſtone. Others uſe likewiſe after the Kirnels are ripened and taken out, to take of Agrimony, Honey, and violet leaves, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them well together, to plaiſter the ſore therewith, till it be whole. Others uſe after the Kirnels are taken out, to waſh the ſore with Copperas Water, and then to tent the hole with flax dipt in the white of an Egg, and after to heal it with Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs greaſe molten well together.

CHAP. XXV.

A more rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any ſuch violent extremity.

TAke a penny-worth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines greaſe one ſpoonful, the juyce of a handful of Rue, of Vinegar two ſpoonfuls, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horſes ears, and tye them up with two ſtrings or elſe ſtitch them together: Then ſhake the ears that the horſe Medicine may ſink downvvards : Which done, you ſhall let the blood in the neck-vein, and in the Temple-veins. And this Cure is infallible,

CHAP. XXVI.

Another Cure for the Vives, moſt certain and approved.

IF in any of the former receipts you can find either difficulty or doubt, then to make certain and ſpeedy vvork : Firſt, ſhave off the hair from the ſvvelled place, and then clap upon it a plaiſter of Shoo makers Wax, and remove it not till the Sore break, then renevv the plaiſter and it vvill both heal and dry it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Strangle.

THe Strangle (howſoever our old Farriers make a long diſcourſe thereof, is not (as they ſuppoſe) a kind of Quinzy, but a mean inflammation of the throat, proceeding from ſome Cholerick or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throat veins into thoſe parts, and there breedeth ſome hot inflammation, being ſtirred up either by ſome great Winter cold, or cold taken after Labour: it is a great and a hard ſwelling between the Horſes nether Chaps, upon the roots of the horſes tongue, and about his throat, which ſwelling, if it be not prevented, will ſtop the Horſes wind-pipe, and ſo ſtrangle or choak him: from which effect, and none other, the name of this Diſeaſe took its derivation. The ſigns of this Diſeaſe, beſides the apparent ſign thereof, and the palpable feeling of the ſame, is, the horſes Temples of his head will be hollow, and his tongue will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes will be ſwoln, and the paſſage of the throat ſo ſtopt, that he can neither eat nor drink, and his Breath will be exceeding ſhort. The cure thereof according to the moſt antient Farriers, is, with a round ſmall hot Iron to thruſt a hole through the skin on both ſides the wezand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mix Butter, Tanners water, and Salt together; and every day anoint the ſore therewith till it be whole. Others of the antient Farriers uſe firſt to bathe the Horſes mouth and tongue with hot water, and then anoint the ſore place with the Gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drink. Take of old Oyl two pound, of old Wine a quart, nine Figs, and nine Leeks heads well ſtamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled theſe a while, before you ſtain them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a quart of this every morning and evening. Alſo you may if you will, let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and pour Wine and Oyl into his Noſtrils, and alſo give him to drink the decoction of Figs and Nitrum ſodden together, or elſe to anoint his throat within with Nitre, Oyl, and Honey, or elſe with Honey and Hogs-dung mixt together. Other Farriers uſe to rowel the horſe under the throat, and to draw the rowel twice or thrice a day, anointing it with freſh butter, and keeping his head warm. Other of our later and better experienced Farriers, uſe firſt

(if

(if his years will permit him) to let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein, then to lay, the ſore this ripening to plaiſter: Take of Mallows, Linſeed, Rue, Smallage and ground Ivy, of each like quantity, boyl theſe together in the grounds of Beer: then put to it ſome Oyl de Bay, and a little Dia Althea, then take it off the fire, and make of it a Plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore, ſuffering the horſe to drink no cold water: after the ſore is broken, lay Bran ſteept in Wine unto it, till it be whole. Others uſe to cut the Kirnels out between the Javvs, and then to waſh the ſore with Butter and Beer, giving the horſe to drink new milk and garlick, and the Juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in Winter the Bark of Birch, or elſe to anoint it with Tar and Oyl till it be vvhole. Novv, for mine own part, the beſt Cure that ever I found for the Strangle, vvas this.

As ſoon as I found the ſwelling begin to ariſe between his Chaps, to take a Wax candle, and holding it under the horſes chaps, cloſe unto the ſwelling, burn it ſo long till you can ſee the skin be burnt through, ſo that you may as it were raiſe it from the fleſh; that done, you ſhall lay unto it either wet hay, or wet horſe litter, and that will ripen it, and make it break: then lay a Plaiſter unto it only of Shoo makers Wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, and will not break outward, and ſo avoideth only at his Noſe, then you ſhall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his Noſtrils, either Frankincenſe or Maſtick, or elſe by putting a hot coal into wet hay, and ſo making the ſmoak thereof to aſcend up into the horſes head: or elſe to blow the powder of Euforbium. with a Quill into his Noſe; and ſo note that whatſoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle alſo.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe.

THat which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe, is only a fretting humour, eating and conſuming the fleſh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time will eat through the Noſe. It cometh of corrupt blood, or elſe of a ſharp hunger ingendred by means of ſome extreme cold.

The ſigns are, the horſe will often bleed at the Noſe, and all the fleſh within his Noſe will be raw, and filthy ſtinking ſavours, and matter will come out at the Noſe.

The Cure thereof, according to the antient Farriers, is: Take of green Copperas and of Allom of each a pound, of white Copperas one quarter, and boyl these in a pottle of running water untill a pint be consumed: then take it off, and put thereunto half a pint of Honey, then cause his head to be holden up with a Drenching staff, and squirt into his Nostrils with a squirt of Brass or Pewter, some of this Water being luke-warm, three or four times one after another; but betwixt every squirting give him liberty to hold down his head, and to snort out the filthy matter: for otherwise perhaps you might choak him: and after this it shall be good also without holding up his head any more, to wash and Rub his nostrils with a fine Clout bound to a sticks end and dipt in the fore-said water, and do thus once a day untill the horse be whole. Other Farriers use if they see this Canker to be of great heat, and burning in the sore with exceeding great pain, then you shall take the juyce of Purslane, Lettice, and Night-shade, of each a like quantity, and mix them together, and wash the sore with a fine Cloath dipt therein, or else squirt it up into his Nostrils, and it will allay the heat.

☞ Others take of Hyssop, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handful, and seeth them in urine and water to the third part of them: then strain them out, and put in a little white Copperas, Honey, and Aquavitæ, and so either wash or squirt the place with it; then when the Canker is killed, make this water to heal it: Take of Rib-wort, Bettony, and Dasies, of each a handful: then seeth them well in Wine and Water, and wash the sore three or four times a day therewith untill it be whole. Others use also to take Chrystal, and beating it into fine powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Bleeding at the Nose.

MAny horses, (especially young horses) are oft subject to this bleeding at the Nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of Blood, or that the vein which endeth in that place is either broken, fretted, or opened. It is opened many times by means that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too supple, and so pierceth through the vein. Again, it may be broken by some violent strain, cut, or blow; and lastly, it may be fretted

fretted and gnawn through by the ſharpneſs of the blood, or elſe by ſome other evil humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the Antient Farriers, to take the juyce of the Roots of Nettles, and ſquirt it up into the horſes Noſtrils, and lay upon the nape of the horſes neck a wad of Hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warm, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers uſe to take ā pint of red Wine, and put therein a quartern of Bole-Armonick beaten into fine powder, and being made luke-warm, to pour the one half thereof the firſt day into his Noſtril that bleedeth, cauſing his head to be holden up, ſo as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other half.

Others uſe to let the horſe blood on the Breaſt vein, on the ſame ſide that he bleedeth, at ſeveral times: then take of Frankincenſe one ounce, of Aloes half an ounce, and beat them into fine powder, and mingle them throughly with the whites of three eggs untill it be as thick as Honey, and with ſoft hair thruſt it up into his Noſtrils, filling the hole full of aſhes, dung, or Hogs-dung, or Horſes dung mixt with Chalk and Vinegar.

Now for mine own part, when none of theſe will remedy or help (as all have failed me at ſome time) then I have uſed this, take two ſmall whip-cords, and with them garter him exceeding hard about ſome ten or twelve inches above his knees of his Fore-legs, and juſt beneath his Elbows, and then keep the nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with moiſt Cloaths, or wet Hay, and it will ſtaunch him preſently. ☞

CHAP. XXX.

Of the bloody rifts, or chops in the palat of the horſes mouth.

THeſe Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the Palat of a horſes mouth, do proceed (as ſome Farriers ſuppoſe) from the eating of rough hay, full of whins, thiſtles, or other prickling ſtuff, provender full of ſharp ſeed, which by continual pricking and fretting the furrows of the mouth, do cauſe them to rankle, ſwell and breed corrupt blood and ſtinking matter, and without ſpeedy prevention that Ulcer will turn to the fouleſt Canker.

The Cure thereof is, (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) to waſh the ſore places very clean with Salt and Vinegar mixt together, then to anoint it with honey and Allom mixt toge-

ther. Other Farriers uſe (eſpecially if the palat be much ſwelled,) to prick the roof of the mouth with a hot Iron, that the humours may iſſue out abundantly, and then to anoint the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, till they be whole.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Giggs or Bladders in a horſes mouth.

THeſe Giggs, Bladders, or Flaps in a horſes mouth, are little ſoft ſwellings, or rather puſtules with black heads, growing in the inſide of the horſes Lips, next under his great Jaw-teeth: they will ſometimes be as great as a Wal-nut, and are ſo painful unto him that they make him let his meat fall out of his Mouth, or at leaſt keep it in his Mouth unchawed, whereby the horſe can in no wiſe proſper: they do proceed either of eating too much graſs, or naughty rough pricking Hay or Provender, they are moſt apparently to be felt: And the Cure is (according to the opinion of the oldeſt and moſt experienced Farriers) firſt to draw out the Horſes tongue of the one ſide of his Mouth, and then take a Lancet and ſlit the ſwellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe pick out all the Kirnels like Wheat Corns very clean: then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much Salt as will temper it thick like leven: then make it into little Balls, and thruſt into every hole, and fail not to do ſo once a day untill it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe after they have ſlit them with an inciſion Knife, and thruſt out the Corruption, only to waſh the ſore places either with Vinegar and Salt, or elſe with Allom-water. Others uſe with a ſmall hot Iron to burn the ſwellings, and then waſh them with Beer and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heal them. Now that you may prevent this Diſeaſe before it come, it ſhall be good to pull out the horſes tongue often, and to waſh it with Wine, Beer and Ale, and ſo ſhall no Bliſters breed thereon, nor any other Diſeaſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Lampaſs.

THe Lampaſs is a ſwelling or growing up of the fleſh, which over-groweth the upper teeth, which are the ſhears in the upper Chap, and ſo hindreth the horſe from eating. They do proceed from abundance of blood, reſorting to the firſt Farrow or bar of the mouth, I mean that which is next to the upper fore teeth; it is moſt apparent to be ſeen, and therefore needeth no other ſigns. The cure is, (according to the cuſtom of the oldeſt Farriers,) firſt with a Lancet to let him bleed in divers places of the ſwelling fleſh: then take an Iron rounded at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burn out all that ſuperfluous ſwell'd fleſh which overgrows the fore teeth, and then anoint the ſore place with freſh Butter until it be whole. Others uſe after it is burnt out, only to rub the ſore place with Salt only, or waſh it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others uſe to take a hooked Knife made very ſharp and very hot, and therewith cut the ſwoln places in two parts, croſs againſt the Teeth, but if they be a little ſwelled, then cut but the third rank from the teeth; and ſo let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the horſe will be well: but if you find afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or thorough the eating of too coarſe meat, that the wound doth not heal, but rather rankle, then you ſhall take a Saucer full of Honey, and twelve pepper-corns, and bray them together in a Morter, and temper them up with Vinegar, and boyl them a while, and then once a day anoint the ſore therewith till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Camery, or Frounce.

THe Camery, or Frounce in Horſes, are ſmall Pimples, or warts in the midſt of the Palat of the mouth above, and they are ſoft and Sore, they will alſo ſometimes breed both in his tongue and in his lips: it proceedeth ſometimes from the eating of frozen graſs, or by drawing frozen duſt with the graſs into their mouths: ſometimes by eating of moiſt hay; that Rats or other Vermine have

piſt

pit upon, and ſometimes by licking up of Venom. The ſigns are, the apparent ſeeing of the Pimples, or Wheales, and a forſaking of his food, both through the ſowrenes of them, and through the unſavorines, and rankneſs of the Food that he hath eaten before.

☞ The Cure (according to the opinion of the oldeſt Farriers) is, firſt to let him blood in the two greateſt Veins under his tongue, and then waſh all the ſore places with Vinegar and Salt. Then get the Horſe new Bread, which is not hot, and give him but a ſmall quantity of ſuch bread for fear of ſurfeting, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others uſe with a hot Iron to burn the pimples on the head, and then waſh them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt untill they bleed, and they will ſoon heal. Other Farriers uſe to take out his tongue, and to prick the Veins thereof in ſeven or eight places, and likewiſe under his upper Lip alſo: And let him bleed well: then rub every ſore place with Salt well: then the next day waſh all the ſore places with white-Wine warm, or elſe with ſtrong Vinegar, and rub it again with Salt: then for two or three dayes let the horſe drink no cold water, and he will do well.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Canker in the Mouth.

A Canker is ſaid of the antient Farriers to be nothing but the rawneſs of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very ſore bliſters, from whence will run a very hot and ſharp lye, which will fret and corrode, or rot the fleſh whereſoever it goeth. The ſigns are, the apparent ſight of the ſore, beſides the forſaking of his meat, becauſe he cannot ſwallow it down, but lets it lye half chewed between his jaws, and ſometimes when he hath chewed his meat, he will thruſt it out of his Mouth again, and his Breath will ſavour very ſtrongly, chiefly when he is faſting.

☞ This Diſeaſe proceedeth oftest from ſome unnatural heat coming from the Stomach, and ſometimes from the venom of filthy food.

The Cure is, (as the oldeſt Farriers inſtruct us) to take of Allom half a pound, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of Collumbine leaves, of Sage, of each a handful, boyl all theſe together in three pints of running water, untill one pint be conſumed, and waſh all the ſore

places

places therewith, ſo as they may bleed, and do thus once every day untill it be whole Other Farriers uſe firſt to caſt the Horſe, and with a rolling pin to open his Mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flax, to take out all the ſtinking Graſs, or other meat that lieth in his Jaws and under the root of his tongue: then when you have cleanſed it thus, you ſhall heat ſtrong wine Vinegar ſomewhat warm, and then with the ſame Iron wrapt in Tow, and dipt in Wine Vinegar, you ſhall waſh all the ſore places till they bleed: then waſh all his tongue and Lips with the ſame vinegar, and ſo let him riſe: and then feed him at leaſt ſeven dayes with warm maſhes and hot grains: but in no wiſe with any Hay, and he will ſoon be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to take of the juyce of Daffodill-roots ſeven drams, of juyce of Hounds tongue as much, of Vinegar as much, of Allom one ounce: mix theſe well together, and waſh the Canker therewith once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take of Savin, of Bay Salt, and of Rue, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together with as much Barrows Greaſe, and anoint the ſore places therewith untill the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whiteneſs, and then healing it up only with Allom-water.

Others uſe firſt to waſh the Canker till it bleed with warm Vinegar, to take a good quantity of Allom beaten into very fine powder, and to mix it with ſtrong Vinegar till it be as thick as a Salve: then to anoint all the ſore places therewith, and do not fail thus to do twice or thrice a day untill the Canker be whole.

Now for mine own part, the beſt Cure that ever I found for this Sorrance, is, to take of Ginger and of Allom, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with ſtrong Vinegar to mix them together till they be very thick like a Salve, then when you have waſht the Canker clean, either with Allom-water, or with Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dreſſing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heal ſpeedily. ☞

CHAP. XXXV.

Of heat in the Mouth and Lips of a horſe.

THe unnatural and violent heat which aſcendeth up from the ſtomach into the Mouth, doth not alwayes breed a Canker, but

but ſometimes only heateth and inflameth the mouth and lips, making them only ſwell and burn, ſo as the Horſe can take no joy in his food, but through the grief refuſeth his Meat. The cure thereof is, firſt to turn up his upper lip, or that which is moſt ſwelled, and with a Lancet jag it lightly, ſo that it may bleed, and then waſh both that and all his mouth and tongue with Vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Tongue being hurt with the Teeth, or otherwiſe.

IF the tongue of a Horſe be either hurt, cut, or gall'd by any accident or miſchance whatſoever, the beſt Cure (as the moſt skilfull Farriers ſuppoſe) to take of Engliſh Vinegar, and of Salt Lard, of each a like quantity, a little milkt Honey, and a little of the powder of Pepper, boyl them on a Coles fire, and ſtir them well together till they be thick like unto an Oyntment, then waſh the Wound with white Wine warmed: after that, anoint the wound with the ſaid Oyntment twice a day, and by no means let the horſe wear any bit till he be whole.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſore with Allom water, and then to take the leaves of a black Bramble, and to chop them together ſmall with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little clout, making it round like a ball; Then having dipped the round end in Honey, to rub the Tongue therewith once a day untill it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath a Horſes tongue.

THe Barbes are two little paps which naturally do grow under every horſes tongue whatſoever, in the nether Jaw: yet if at any time they ſhoot out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the overflow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrance, and with the extremity of their pain, they hinder the horſe from feeding. The Cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the antient and late Farriers, abſolutely to clip them away with a pare of ſhears cloſe to the jaw, and then to waſh the ſore either with water and ſalt, or elſe with Tartar and ſtrong vinegar mixed together, or elſe with vinegar and ſalt. Any of all which will heal them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the pain in a Horſes Teeth, of Wolfs Teeth, and Jaw-Teeth.

A Horſe may have a pain in his teeth through divers occaſions, as partly by the deſcent of groſs humours from the head down unto the teeth and gums, which is very proper to Colts and young Horſes, and plainly to be ſeen by the rankneſs and ſwelling of the gums; and alſo he may have pain in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfs teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the upper jaws, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are ſo painful to the Horſe, that he cannot indure to chaw his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or elſe to keep it ſtill half chewed. Again, a Horſe will have a great pain in his teeth, when his upper jaw-teeth be ſo far grown, as they over-hang the nether Jaw-teeth; and therewith alſo be ſo ſharp, as in moving his jaws, they cut and raze the inſides of his cheeks, even as they were razed with a Knife. Laſtly, a Horſe may have great pain in his Teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or ſome other natural weakneſs, the Horſes Teeth grow looſe and ſore, in ſuch manner, that through the tenderneſs thereof, he is not able to chaw or grind his Food. Now for the ſeveral cures of theſe Infirmities, you ſhall underſtand, that firſt as touching the general pains in a Horſes teeth which do come by means of the diſtillation of Humours, it is thought fit by the ancienteſt Farriers, firſt to rub all the out-ſide of the Horſes gums with fine Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar well mixt together.

Other antient Farriers uſe after they have waſhed the gums, to ſtrow upon them the powder of Pomegranate pills, and to cover the temples of the Head with the plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, and Maſtick molten together, as hath been before ſufficiently declared.

Now for the Cure of Wolfs-teeth, or the Jaw-teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. Firſt, cauſe the Horſes head to be tyed up high to ſome poſt or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a Cord ſo wide, that you may eaſily ſee every part thereof: Then take an inſtrument of Iron made in all the points like unto a Carpenters gouge, and with your left hand ſet the edge of the tool at the foot of the Wolfs teeth, on the outſide of the jaw, turning the hollow ſide of the tool downwards, holding

your hand ſteadily, ſo as the tool may not ſlip nor ſwerve from the aforeſaid teeth: Then, having a Mallet in your right hand, ſtrike upon the head of the tool a good ſtroke wherewith you may looſen the tooth and make it bend inward, then (having the mid't of your tool upon the horſes nether Jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inſide or hollow ſide of the tool, and thruſt it clean out of his head; which done, ſerve the other Wolfs teeth on the other ſide in like Manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

☞ Other antient Farriers uſe, (and I have in mine experience found it the better practice) only when the horſe is either tyed up or caſt, and his mouth opened, to take a very ſharp file, and to file the wolfs teeth ſo ſmooth as is poſſible, and then waſh his mouth with a little Allom-water. Now if the upper Jaw-teeth over-hand the nether Jaw-teeth, and ſo cut the inſide of the mouth as is aforeſaid, then you ſhall take your Former tool or gouge, and with your Mallet ſtrike and pare all thoſe teeth ſhorter by little and little by degrees, running alongſt them even from the firſt unto the laſt, turning the hollow ſide of your tool towards the teeth, by which means you ſhall not cut the inſides of the horſes Cheeks: then with your file, file them all ſmooth without any raggedneſs, and then waſh the Horſes mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Laſtly, if the pain do proceed from the looſeneſs of the teeth, when the Cure is according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, firſt to caſt the horſe, and prick up his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rub them over with Sage and Salt, for it will faſten them again.

Others uſe to let the horſe blood in the Vein under the Tail, next the Rump, and then to rub all his Gums with Sage, and to give him in his Provender, the tender crops of Black Briers: or elſe waſh all his mouth with Honey, Sage, and Salt beaten together, and by no means let the horſe eat any moiſt meat, for cold, moiſt, and Marish feeding in the Winter, only breedeth this Diſeaſe of looſeneſs in the Teeth, and it is of all other, moſt proper to the Sorrel horſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Diſeaſes in the Neck and Withers, and firſt of the Crick in the Neck.

THe Crick in the Neck of the Horſe, is, when he cannot turn his Neck any way, but holds it ſtill right forth, in ſo much that he cannot bow down his head to take up his meat from the ground, but with exceeding great pain; and ſurely it is a kind of Convulſion of the ſinews, which proceedeth from cold cauſes, of which we have ſpoken very ſufficiently before, it alſo proceedeth ſometimes from over-heavy burthens that be laid upon a Horſes ſhoulders, or by over-much drying up of the ſinews of the neck. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, firſt to thruſt a ſharp hot Iron through the fleſh of the neck in five ſeveral Places, every one diſtant from the other three inches, (but in any caſe beware of touching any ſinew) then rowel all the aforeſaid places either with horſe hair, Flax, or Hemp, for the ſpace of fifteen dayes, and anoint the rowels with Hoggs greaſe, and the neck will ſoon be reſtored. Others uſe if the crick cauſeth the Horſe to hold his neck ſtraight forward, which ſheweth that both ſides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the horſe from the root of the ear, on both ſides the neck, from the midſt of the ſame, even down the breſt, a ſtraw deep, ſo as both ends may meet on the breaſt: then make a hole through the skin of the forehead, hard under the foretop, and thruſt in a Cornet upward between the skin and the fleſh, a handful deep: then either put in a Gooſe-feather doubled in the midſt, and anointed with Hogs-greaſe, or elſe a rovvel of either horn or Leather vvith a hole in the midſt: any of vvhich vvill keep the hole open, to the intent the matter may iſſue forth: and this you ſhall keep open the ſpace of ten dayes, but every day during the time, the hole muſt be cleanſed once, and the Feather or Rovvel alſo cleanſed and freſh anointed and put in again: and once a day let him ſtand upon the bit an hour or tvvo, or elſe be ridden abroad tvvo or three miles, by ſuch an one as vvill beat the horſes head, and make him bring it in: but if the crick be ſuch that it maketh the horſe to hold his head avvry upon the one ſide, vvhich ſheweth that but one ſide of the neck is troubled, then you ſhall not dravv the horſe vvith a hot Iron on both

both ſides of the neck, but only on the contrary ſide, as thus: If he bend his head towards the right ſide, then to draw him, as is aforeſaid, only on the left ſide, and to uſe the reſt of the Cure as is above ſaid; and if neceſſity do require, you may ſplent the Horſes neck alſo ſtreight with ſtrong ſplents of Wood.

I have cured this crick in the neck only by bathing the horſes neck in the Oyl of Peter, or the Oyl of Spike very hot, and then rolling it all up in Wet hay, or rotten litter, and keeping the horſe exceeding warm, without uſing any burning, wounding, or other violence.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Wens in the neck.

A Wen is a certain bunch or Kirnel on the skin, like a tumor or ſwelling: The inſide whereof is ſometimes hard like a griſtle, and ſpongious like a Skin full of ſoft Warts; and ſometimes yellow like unto Ruſty Bacon, with ſome white Grains amongſt. Now of Wens, ſome are great, and ſome be ſmall, alſo ſome are very painful, and ſome not painful at all. They proceed, as ſome imagine, of naughty, groſs, and flegmatick humours, binding together in ſome ſick part of the body. And others ſay, they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be moſt extreme cold; but I ſay, that albeit, they may proceed from theſe cauſes, yet moſt generally they proceed from ſome pinching, bruiſing, biting, ripping or galling, either of girths, halter, coller, or any other thing whatſoever.

The certaineſt Cure thereof is this, take of Mallows, Sage and red *Nettles*, of each one handful: boyl them in running water, and put thereunto a little Butter and Honey, and when the herbs be ſoft take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of Oyl de Bay two Ounces, and of hogs greaſe two ounces, and *warm* them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaiſter it upon a piece of Leather, ſo big as the Wen, and lay it to ſo hot as the Horſe can endure it, renewing it every day in ſuch ſort the ſpace of eight dayes, and if you perceive it will come to no head, then launce it from the midſt of the Wen downward, ſo deep that the matter in the bottom may be diſcovered and let out: which done, heal it up with this Salve; Take of Turpentine a quartern, and waſh it nine times in fair water, then put thereunto the yolk of an Egg, and a little Engliſh Saffron beaten into powder, and

make

make a tent or roul of flax,and dipt it in that oyntment, and lay it to the ſore, renewing the ſame every day once or twice, untill the Wen be cured.

Others uſe in this caſe, with a hot Iron to burn and ſear away all the ſuperfluous fleſh, and then to heal up the ſore either with the Oyntment laſt rehearſed, or elſe with the Powder of Honey and Lime mixt together ; and this manner of Cure is by much the ſpeedier.

CHAP. XLI.

Of ſwelling in the Neck after Blood-letting.

THe ſwelling of a Horſes neck after Blood-letting may come, through divers occaſions, as namely, by ſtriking through the vein, ſo as ſome of the blood being gotten betwixt the fleſh and the vein it there corrodeth and turneth to an Impoſthume, or elſe by ſtriking the vein with a ruſty Fleam, vvhereby the vein rankleth, or by ſome cold Wind ſtriking ſuddenly into the hole, or laſtly by ſuffering the horſe too ſoon to thruſt down his head, and graſe or feed, vvhereby humours reſorting to that place, breeds a great Impoſthumation : The Cure is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take Hemlock and ſtamp it, and then to mingle it with ſheeps dung and Wine Vinegar, and ſo making a plaiſter thereof to lay it to the ſwelling, renewing it once a day until it be whole. Other Farriers uſe firſt to anoint the place with the Oyl of Camomile warmed, and then to lay upon it a little Hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloath, renewing it every day for the ſpace of a week, to ſee whether it will grow to a head or elſe vaniſh away : if it grow to a Head, you may then launce it, and thruſt out the matter : then heal it up by tenting it with Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, dreſſing it once a day untill it be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

How to ſtaunch Blood.

IF your Horſe either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilful Farrier that letteth him blood when the ſign is in that place, bleedeth ſo exceedingly that he will not be ſtaunched, you ſhall then according to the opinion of old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new Horſe-dung tempered with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar, and not to remove it from thence the ſpace of three days: or elſe to lay unto it burnt ſilk, burnt felt, or burnt Cloath, any of which will ſtanch blood. Others uſe to pour into the wound the juyce of Coriander, or elſe to let the Horſe chew in his Mouth the leaves of Perwinkle. Others uſe to take of bruiſed Nettles, and lay them to the wound: or elſe wild Tanſey bruiſed, or hot Hogs Dung. Others uſe to take bruiſed Sage and lay to the wound: or elſe the Coame about the Smiths Forge: or elſe a clod of earth, or bruiſed Hyſſop: or the ſoft crops of Hawthorn bruiſed: or elſe to take two ounces of the horſes blood, and boyl it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound.

☞ But when all theſe fail, as in ſome extremities I have found them do; then for your only refuge, you ſhall take the ſoft down either of Hares skin, or a Coney skin, and ſtop the wound well therewith, holding it to with your hand till the blood ſtanch: if it be a grievous ſore wound, then as ſoon as the blood is ſlaked, ſpread a plaiſter of Bole-armonick and Wine-Vinegar mixt over the wound.

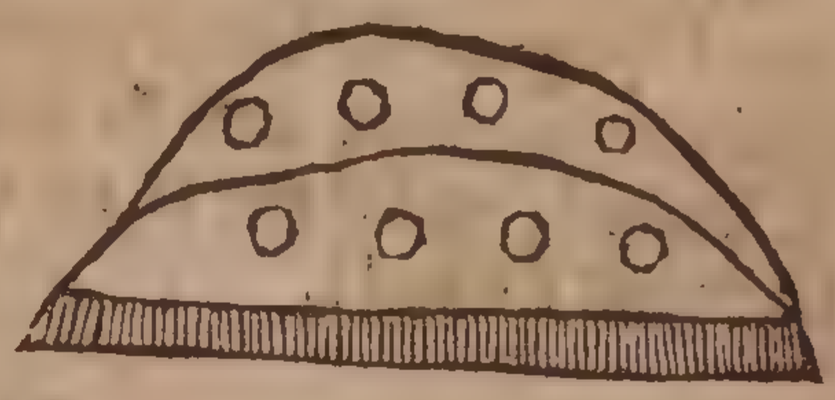
CHAP. XLIII.

Of the falling of the Creſt.

THe falling of the horſes Creſt, is, when the upper part of a Horſes Neck which is called the Creſt, leaneth either to the one or the other ſide, and will not ſtand upright as it ought to do. It proceedeth moſt commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and eſpecially when a fat Horſe falleth away ſuddenly upon any inward ſickneſs. The cure (according to the oldeſt Farriers) is, firſt to draw his Creſt well a full ſtraws breadth deep on

the

the contrary ſide with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be half an inch broad, and make both your beginning and Ending ſomewhat beyond the fall; ſo as the firſt draught may go all the way hard upon the edge of the main, cloſe by the roots of the ſame bearing your right hand down-ward into the Neck-ward: Then anſwer that with another draught beneath, and ſo far diſtant from the firſt, as the fall is broad, compaſſing as it were all the fall: but ſtill on the contrary ſide, and betwixt thoſe two draughts, right in the midſt, draw a third draught: then with an Iron button of almoſt an inch about, burn at each end a hole, and alſo in the ſpaces betwixt the draughts, make divers holes diſtant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainly ſhew you. That done, to kill the fire, anoint it every day once with freſh Butter for a week or more: Then take of Mallows and of Sage, of each one handful, boyl them well in running water, and waſh the burning away till it be raw fleſh, and then dry it up with the powder of Honey and Lime.



Other Farriers uſe for this infirmity, firſt to caſt the horſe upon ſome ſoft Dunghill, or other eaſie place, and with a Knife to cut away the fleſh on the hanging or under ſide of the Creſt, even from the fore end thereof to the hinder end, ſix inches broad and two inches thick, or ſomewhat more in the middle thereof where it is the thickeſt: then groping the Creſt with your hands, to pare the thickeſt part thereof, till it come all to one thinneſs, then holding the horſe ſtill faſt bound to cover all the place with great handfuls of ſwines dung prepared for the purpoſe, and hold it to the ſore place an hour together, until the blood be ſtanched: Then let the Horſe ariſe, and lead him into the Stable, tying him in ſuch ſort, that he may neither rub his neck nor lye down; then the next morning take good ſtore of burnt Allom beaten to powder, and ſtrow it all over the ſore place, and ſo let him ſtand for two dayes after without any ſtirring, leſt the wound ſhould bleed again: then at the end of theſe two dayes you ſhall bathe the ſore gently with a fine Linnen cloath, dipt in warm Urine, and then drying the ſore, again throw more burnt Allom upon it, and after anoint all about the out ſide of the edges of the ſore with Unguentum

guentum Album Camphoratum, more than an inch broad : thus you ſhall dreſs him every day once on that ſide of the Creſt which did fall : then for the contrary ſide you ſhall draw his main thereon, and plat it in many plats : which done, you ſhall to thoſe plats with thongs of Leather, faſten a Cudgel of a foot and a half long : then to the midſt of that Cudgel you ſhall hang a piece of Lead with a hole in it, of ſuch weight as will poize the Creſt up even, and hold it in his right place : Then ſhall you draw his Creſt on that ſide the weight hangs with a hot drawing iron, even from the top of the Creſt, down to the point of the ſhoulder, making divers ſtroaks one an inch and an half from another : Then ſhall you lay upon the burnt places a Plaiſter of Pitch, Tar, and Rozen molten together, and ſo let the Weight hang till all the ſore places be healed, and there is no queſtion but the Creſt will ſtand both upright and ſtrongly.

CHAP. XLIV.

A Certain and approved way, how to raiſe up the Creſt that is faln.

☞ THe moſt infallible and certain way to raiſe up, and to keep when it is ſo riſen, a Creſt that is faln : Is firſt to raiſe up the faln Creſt with your hand, and to place it in ſuch wiſe as you would have it, and it ought to ſtand : then having one ſtanding on the ſame ſide the Creſt falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Creſt, and with the other thruſt out the bottom or foundation of the Creſt, ſo as it may ſtand upright : then on that ſide to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (ſomewhat broad on the edge) draw his Neck firſt at the bottom of the Creſt, then in the midſt of the Creſt. and laſtly, at the ſetting on of the hair, and be ſure to draw it through the skin, but be ſure no deeper, for this will inlarge and open the skin.

Then on the other ſide (from whence the Creſt falleth) gather up the skin with your hand, and with two plaiſters of Shoo-makers Wax laid one againſt another at the edge of the Wound, and vvith ſmooth ſplints to ſtay the skin, that it may ſhrink neither upvvard nor downward, then vvith a pair of Sharp Sizers clip avvay all the ſpare skin vvhich you had gathered up vvith your hand, then vvith a needle and ſome red Silk, ſtitch the skin together in divers places,

and

and to keep the skin from breaking, ſtitch the edges of the Plaiſter together alſo, then anoint the ſore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with peece greaſe made warm. And this do twice a day till all be whole, and have great care that your ſplints ſhrink not.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mangineſs in a Horſes Mane.

THe Mangineſs which is in the Main of a Horſe, and maketh him ſhed his hair, proceedeth either from the rankneſs of blood, poverty, or louſineſs, or elſe of rubbing where a mangy Horſe hath rubbed, or elſe of fretting duſt lying in the Main for want of good dreſſing. The ſigns are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the Horſe about the Main and neck, and the ſcabs fretting both the fleſh and the Skin, beſides the ſhedding and falling away of the hair. The cure (according to the opinion of ſome of our old Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the Neck-vein, and cut away all the hair from the ſcabs, then with a hot Iron as big as a mans finger, ſear all the ſore place even from the one end to the other: Then anoint all the place you ſo burnt with black Sope, and now and then waſh it with ſtrong Lye and black Sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this Mangineſs only take of freſh greaſe ☞ one pound, of Quick-ſilver one ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of Rape-Oyl half a pint, mingle them together, and ſtir them continually in a pot with a ſlice, untill the Quick-ſilver be ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceive no Quick-ſilver therein: that done, take a blunt knife, or an old Horſe-comb, and ſcratch all the mangy places therewith untill it be raw and bloody, and then ☞ anoint it with this oyntment in the Sun-ſhine, if it may be, to the intent the oyntment may ſink in, or elſe hold before it either a hot fire-pan, or a hot Bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the fleſh, and if you ſee that within three dayes after thus once anoihting him he leave not rubbing, then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dreſs that place again, and queſtionleſs it will ſerve.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the ſhedding of hair in the Main.

HAir, for the moſt part ſheddeth or falleth from the Main of a Horſe, by reaſon of certain little Worms which Eat and Fret the roots of the hair aſunder. The cure whereof is, firſt, to anoint the Main and Creſt with black ſoap, and then to make a ſtrong lye either of running water, and Aſh-aſhes, or elſe of Urine and Aſh-aſhes, and with that to waſh the Main all over, and it will help him.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the pain and grief in a Horſes Withers.

BOth to a Horſes Withers, and alſo to his back, do happen many infirmities, and Sorrances, ſome proceeding from inward cauſes, as of the corruption of humours, and ſometimes of outward cauſes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of ſome naughty Saddle, or ſome heavy burthen laid on the Horſes back, or ſuch like: And of theſe griefs ſome be ſmall, and ſome be great: The ſmall are only ſuperficial Bliſters, Swellings, Light-galls, or bruiſings, and are eaſily cured; but the great are thoſe which pierce to the very bone, and be moſt dangerous, eſpecially if they be nigh to the back bone. Then to ſpeak firſt of the ſmaller gallings, whenſoever you ſhall ſee any ſwellings to ariſe, either about your Horſes Withers, or any other part of his back, the Cure is (according to the opinion of ſome of the old Farriers) firſt of all if the place be much ſwoln and feſtered, then to pierce it with a ſharp hot Iron in many parts on both ſides of the Neck, and then put into the ſame tents of Linnen Cloth, dipt in warm Sallet Oyl, and then after to dry and heal it up with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Others uſe to take Butter and Salt, and to boyl them together until they be black, then to pour it hot on the ſwelling: and then to take warm Horſe-dung, and lay it on the ſore back until it be whole, dreſſing it once a day.

Others (eſpecially the beſt of the ancient Farriers) uſe as ſoon as they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe, to bind unto it a little hot Horſe-dung,

dung, to ſee if that will aſſwage it; which if it will not, then to prick it round about the ſwelling with a Fleim, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deep, but ſo as it may pierce the skin, and make the blood iſſue forth, that done, take of Mallows, or Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boyl them in running water until they be ſo ſoft as pap: then ſtrain the water ſoftly from it, and bruiſe the herbs in a treen diſh, putting thereunto a little Hogs greaſe, or elſe Sallet Oyl, or Sheeps ſuet, or any other freſh greaſe: boyl them and ſtir them together, not frying them hard, but as they be ſoft and ſupple: and then with a clout lay it warm upon the ſore, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling be gone, for it will either drive it away or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in theſe ſmall ſwellings, except ſome Griſtle or bone be periſhed. Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe about a Horſe back, firſt to ſhave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereunto this plaiſter: take a little Wheat-flower, and the white of an Egg beaten together, and ſpread it on a linnen Cloth, which being laid unto the ſwelling two or three days, and not removed will bring it to an head, and when you come to take it off, pull it away ſo ſoftly as you can poſſibly, and where you ſee the Corruption gathered in a head together, then in the loweſt place thereof, pierce it upward with a ſharp Iron ſomewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to anoint the ſore place every day once with freſh Butter and Hogs Greaſe untill it be whole.

Others of our late Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling, only to lay wet Hay unto it, for that either will drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you ſhall lay upon it a plaiſter of Wine Lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat-flower: or if you like not this Medicine, then you may make a Plaiſter of thick Barm, as great as the ſore, and renew it once a day until the ſwelling be aſſwaged, but if you ſee that any corruption be knit together, then you ſhall lance it in the nethermoſt part, and let out the matter, then waſh the ſore either with Urine, Ale, or Beer, made ſcalding hot: then dry up all the moiſture from the ſore, either with a linnen cloth, or with a ſpunge: then cover all the ſore over with burnt Allom beaten to powder: And thus dreſs the Horſe once a day until the fleſh be grown up ſo high as you would

have it, then ſhall you dreſs the ſore but once in two or three dayes. But if you ſee it skinneth but ſlowly, then may you anoint the edge of the ſore all about after it hath been waſhed as aforeſaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skin come faſt: but if you do perceive that by dreſſing it too ſeldom there doth begin to grow any proud fleſh, then you ſhall take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and anoint all the ſore places therewith once in two dayes: This will correct the Proud fleſh, and cauſe it to skin and heal ſuddenly.

Others uſe for the abating of theſe ſwellings, to boyl Mallows in the grounds of ale, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling: And if the ſwelling do break, waſh it with Piſs, and pour hot molten Butter upon it. Others uſe to ſhave away the hair, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leeks ſtampt and mixt with Boars greaſe, or elſe to take a turf of earth burned red, and laid to as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. Others uſe to take Nettles beaten to pieces, and mixt with hot Urine, and ſo lay it on hot, and then ſet on the ſaddle: and then if after two or three days dreſſing the ſwelling break, then look if there be any dead fleſh within the ſore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of freſh greaſe, and a pound of Sallet oyl, three ounces of white Wax, one ounce of Turpentine, and three drams of Verdigreaſe, melt all theſe together, and tent the ſore therewith till it be whole: for this will both eat away the ill fleſh, and incarnate good. Others take green Coleworts and ſtamp them in ſwines greaſe, and lay it plaiſterwiſe on the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, eſpecially if you ride the horſe a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great ſwelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you ſhall waſh the raw place with water and Salt, or elſe with warm wine, and ſprinkle upon it the powder of Honey and Lime: or elſe the powder of Myrrh, or the powder of burnt ſilk, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poſt.

Other Farriers uſe when only the skin is galled off, to take a ſpoonful of thick Cream, and to put as much Chimney Soot into it as will make it thick like an oyntment, and then to lay it upon the ſore, and queſtionleſs it will heal it preſently if the wound be not very deep.

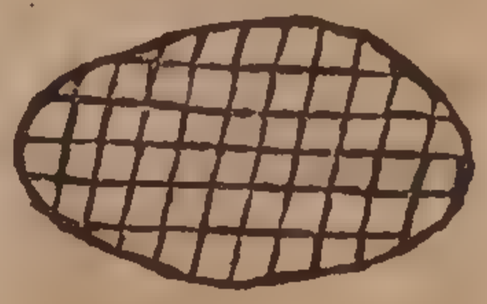
CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of any galled back or Withers how great ſoever the ſwelling or inflammation be:

IF the ſwelling, pinch, wringing, or gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the Back of a Horſe be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, ſo that there is now no apparent hope that it can be got away without much Apoſtumation: Then the Cure, according to the opinion of the antienteſt Farriers, is, to take Barm, and mix it with ſo much Soot of a Chimney, and make it ſo thick therewith, that it ſhall ſeem like Tar, and with that make a Plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very ſuddenly both draw and heal it perfectly.

Others uſe to take a handful of Bay Salt, and a handful of great and ſmall Oat-meal, and put a quantity of old ſtale Urine thereto, and ſtir them all together, and temper it like pap, or paſte, and then make round balls thereof, then throw them in a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then ſtrow of that powder all over the ſore, ſo oft as you ſhall ſee any part thereof bare, and it vvill heal it. Other Farriers uſe if they ſee the ſvvelling to be any thing great, firſt to dravv round about the ſvvelling vvith a hot Iron, and then croſs him vvi h the ſame Iron, in manner of this Figure:



then take a round hot Iron, having a ſharp point, and thruſt it up into the ſvvelling on each ſide upvvards tovvards the point of the Withers, or top of the Back, to the intent that the matter may iſſue downwards at both the holes: that done, tent both the holes firſt with a tent dipt in Hogs greaſe to kill the fire, and alſo anoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing ſo to do until the ſwelling be aſſwaged, renewing the tent every day once until the fiery matter be fallen away, then tent him again with waſhed Turpentine, mingled with the yolks of three or four Eggs and Saffron, renewing the tent every day once untill it be whole.

But if for all this the ſwelling do not go away, then it is a ſign of ſome inward impoſtumation, and then it ſhall be good that you lance it, and let out the corruption: then take of Honey half a pint, of Verdigreaſe two ounces beaten to powder, and mix it together with Honey,

Honey, then boyl them in a pot untill they look red, then being lukewarm, make either a tent or a plaiſter, according as the wound ſhall require, renewing the ſame every day once untill it be whole. But the ſore may be ſo vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the ſhoulders, even unto the body, which is moſt dangerous and very mortal: therefore whenſoever you ſhall fear any ſuch hollowneſs, you ſhall tent the hole with the Salve laſt mentioned, and thruſt after it a good piece of dry ſponge, as well to keep the hole open, as alſo to ſuck out the corruption, and this you ſhall renew once a day until the ſore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers uſe to take Butter, Vinegar, and Bay Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the ſore warm untill it break, then ſtrow upon it either Soot, or the powder of Clay-Wall, but if it be much feſtred, then take a pottle of Verjuyce, two penny-worth of green Copperas, and boyl it unto a pint and a half: Then waſh and ſearch the hollowneſs therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and ſo let it remain three days untouched, then waſh it with the ſame water again, and fill the hole again with red Lead, and ſo every other day waſh it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heal the foreſt Back whatſoever. Now all theſe medicines already rehearſed are ſufficient enough for the healing of any galled back whatſoever; yet forаſmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and think what they know to be only beſt approved, and in aſmuch as you ſhall not be ignorant of any mans skill or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reaſon in it; I will repeat you a Catalogue of other Medicines, which affordedly are all good in their kinds and you may uſe them as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

Firſt then know, that the powder of Briar leaves will dry and heal up any galled back. Alſo Rye flower, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley ſtraw burnt, and Soot, will dry up, and heal a ſore back: The powder of Honey and unſlacked Lime will skin any gall: the powder of wild Cowcumbers dried in an Oven, will heal any gall, provided the ſore be firſt waſht with Vinegar. Onions boyled in Water, and laid hot to a ſwoln horſes back, will aſſwage the ſwelling: and the yolk of an Egg, Salt, and Vinegar beaten together, will heal it when it is broken, provided that you waſh the ſore firſt with Ale, wherein Roſemary hath been ſod. The Soot or grime of a Braſs pot, the powder of the bone of Crab-fiſh, or the

powder

powder of Oyſter-ſhels, any of theſe will dry and skin a galled back.

Laſtly, (and beſides it, a man needeth no more medicines) for this purpoſe, take hay and boyl it in ſtrong Urine, and lay it to the ſwelled place, and it will either aſſwage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter, then ſtop the hole with Rozen, Wax, and freſh Greaſe molten together; but if you find any dead fleſh to grow within the ſore, then eat it out with either Verdigreaſe beaten to powder and ſtrewed thereon, or elſe with Mercury calcined, called of ſome precipitate, being likewiſe ſtrowed on the proud fleſh; and when the proud fleſh is gone, you may dry up the ſore only with the Powder of Rozen, and nothing elſe. See further of this Diſeaſe in the new Addition for the Fiſtula marked thus ☞.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a Canker in the Withers of a horſe.

IF a Horſe after he hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be ſuffered to go unlooked to, and that the ſore breaketh upward through its own violence, yet the great ſubſtance of the matter or corruption deſcending and rotting ſtill downward, it cannot chuſe but breed to a Cankerous and Vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fiſtula, which you ſhall know by theſe ſigns: Firſt, the matter that iſſueth from the ſore, will be ſharp, hot, and watriſh, lye fretting the hair away where it runneth down, and about the hole of the ſore will be a kind of ſpongious proud, dead fleſh, which ſtoppeth the paſſage of the groſs matter. Now the cure of this cankerous ſore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, ſo that you may ſee into the hollowneſs; then cut out all the dead fleſh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old ſtale Urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyl it well on the fire, then having cleanſed the ſore either with a Cloth or a wiſp of Hay, waſh it well with the Liquor: then take the yolks of four eggs, and a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, and a ſpoonful of flower, and make a Plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore, dreſſing him in this ſort once a day untill it be whole.

Others of our antient and latter Farriers uſe to take of the ſtrongeſt Beer a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allom, and half a handful

handful of Sage, ſeeth it to the one half, then take out the Sage-leaves, and with the reſt dreſs the horſe once a day, and it will heal any cankerous ſore in that part whatſoever.

CHAP. L.

Of the Stick-faſt, or Sit-faſt, horns, or hard bones growing under the Saddle.

THeſe ſtick-faſts, ſit-faſts, or Horns that grow in a Horſes skin under the Saddle, is a certain dead skin like a hard piece of Leather, growing faſt in the fleſh: It cometh of ſome old bruiſe, which not impoſtumating, the skin falleth dead, and ſticketh hard and faſt to the fleſh.

The cure is, take either a ſharp crooked inſtrument made for the purpoſe, or elſe a long nail, with the point turned inward, and catching hold on the edge of the dead skin, or horn, which will clap or riſe from the ſound skin, and with a ſharp knife cut away all the dead hard skin from the ſound fleſh: and if when it is cut out, the hollowneſs be ſomewhat deep, then you ſhall heal it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning: then when the fleſh is made even, dry and skin it either with the powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together. Others uſe firſt to anoint the ſtick-faſt or hard skin with freſh Butter or Hogs greaſe, until it be mollified and made ſoft, ſo as you may either cut them or pull them away; and then waſh the wound either with Mans Urine, or with White-Wine, and then dry it up with the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, or of Bole-Armonick.

CHAP. LI.

Of Wens or Knob, growing about the Saddle Skirts.

THe Wens or Knobs which grow about the Saddle Skirts, do moſt commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old bruiſes. And the cure is, firſt to mollifie them by anointing them twice or thrice a day with Hogs-greaſe, for more than a week together, and ſometimes to bathe them with hot wine lees: but if in that ſpace it will come to no head, then launce it from the middle downwards, and tent it with waſhed Turpentine, yolks of Eggs, and Saffron mingled as well together as is before ſhewed, renewing the

the tent every day once, until the fore be sufficiently and perfectly healed. Look unto the cure for the Splent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Navel-Gall.

THe Navel-Gall is, when a horse at any time is bruised on the top of the Chine of the Back, behind the Saddle, right against the Navel, whence it taketh the name : It cometh either by splitting of the Saddle behind, or for lack of stuffing, or by means of the Crupper buckle sitting down in that place, or through some hard Weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle : of all bruisings on the back, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceive it by the puffed up and spungy flesh, looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the sore. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh even to the bone, then burn a hole four inches lower than the Navel-gall, and put a Rowel of Horse hair through it : then take the powder of Oyster-shells, or of any old shoe-sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and ever as it waxeth moist, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel gall, do take the white of an egg, wheat-flower, honey, mustard, and soap of each a like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore wash'd with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the Plaister : and if the proud flesh begin to grow again, then the powder of an old burnt shooe, or Nerve oil, or Verdigrease will kill it, and the Powder of Oyster shells will skin it. Others of the ancient Farriers use, after they have cut out all the Rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an Egg and Salt beaten together, and lay that plaister-wise to the sore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day, the space of two days ; then take of Honey a quarter of a pint, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder, and boil them together in a pot, stirring it still until it look red, and being luke-warm, make a plaister with tow, and clap it to the wound washing and cleansing well the Wound first with a little warm Vinegar or White wine, continuing so to do once a day until it begin to heal and to skin ; then dry it up with sprinkling thereon this

powder following: Take of Honey a quartern, and as much of unſleckt Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it like a paſte, and in a Fire-pan over the fire, ſtir it ſtill until it be hard baked, ſo as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the Powder, waſh the wound firſt with warm Vinegar, continuing ſo to do untill it be perfectly skinned. Others uſe to heal this Gall by laying on the ſore, a Plaiſter of Chimney Soot and Barm mixt together, or elſe mix Nettle Seeds and Sallet Oyl together, and anoint the Sore therewith.

There be others which uſe only to waſh the ſore with warm Urine and Salt, and then to anoint the place with freſh Greaſe and Salt mixt together, or elſe to take of Bettony, Powder of Brimſtone, Elebor, Pitch, and old greaſe, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together, and when you have waſhed the ſore with old Urine, then anoint it with this Ointment until it be whole. See alſo for this diſeaſe in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, thus marked ☞

CHAP. LIII.

Of the Swaying in the Back.

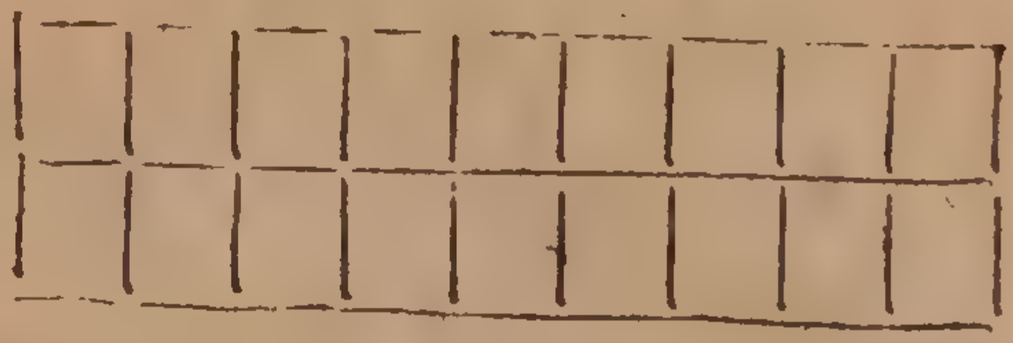
A Horſe is ſaid to be ſwayed in the Back, when either by too great a burthen, or by ſome ſlip, ſtrain, or over-haſty and ſtraight turning, he hath taken an extreme Wrench in the lower part of his Back below his Short Ribs, and directly between his Fillets; the ſigns whereof are continual reeling and rolling of the Horſes hinder parts in his going, and alſo he will falter many times, and ſway ſometimes backwards, and ſometimes ſide-long, and be ready to fall even to the ground, beſides, the horſe being laid, will with a great deal of difficulty riſe up again.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the fat of the fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bolearmonick one ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis half an ounce: incorporate all theſe well together, and lay it plaiſterwiſe all over the Reins of the horſes back not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others of our own Farriers uſe firſt to cover the horſes back with a ſheep skin coming hot from the Sheeps back, laying the fleſhy ſide next to his Back, and then lay a warm houſing cloath upon the ſame, to keep his back as hot as may be, and ſo let it continue until

it

it being to ſmell : then take the old skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of three Weeks, and if he amend not with this, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out on both ſides of the ridge of his back, from the Pitch of the buttock unto a handful within the Saddle : and then again overthwart, according to this figure, and let every Line be an inch one from another, neither let the ſtroak be deep, and burned no more than that every one may look yellow : Then lay upon the burning this charge or plaiſter : take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, of Bole-Armonick half a pound made into powder, and half a pint of Tar, and boyl all theſe together in a pot, and ſtir it till every thing be molten and throughly mingled together, then being luke-warm, daub all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon clap as many flocks of the Horſes Colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it ſelf, and if it be in Summer you may turn the horſe to graſs.



CHAP. LIV.

Of ſpecial weakneß in the Back.

ACcording to the opinion of our oldeſt Farriers (though my ſelf have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of weakneſs belonging to a horſes back, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reins, which do proceed from abundance of humours reſorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horſe do loſe their feeling and ſtrength, and ſuch a horſe falleth down to the ground : yea, and the humours many times reſorting to the heart, do ſuffocate the ſame, and in two or three hours do cauſe the horſe to dye. The cure, according to the opinion, is, firſt to let the horſe blood abundantly in the neck-vein, and to draw his back with a hot Iron, in ſuch ſort, as is declared in the laſt Chapter, and then to make him ſwim a pretty while in ſome River : then Rowel him upon the haunches near unto the huckle-bones, and

then to anoint the ſore place with Hogs Greaſe, and three leaved graſs ſtamped together, until he be whole.

CHAP. LV.

Of the ſwelling of the Cods or Stones.

THis kind of ſwelling or inflammation of the Cods cometh either by ſome wound received, or by the ſtinging, or elſe biting of ſome venemous beaſt, or elſe by ſome great ſtrain either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horſe with Another. The Cure is, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Italian Farriers, firſt to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath been ſodden the roots of wild Cowcumbers and Salt, and then to anoint it with an ointment made of Oyl, Goats Greaſe, and the white of an Egg, or elſe to bathe the Cod in warm water, Nitrum, and Vinegar mingled together, and alſo to be anointed with an Ointment made of Chalk, or of Potters earth, Ox-dung, Comin Water and Vinegar mingled together: or elſe to be anointed with the juyce of the herb called Night-ſhade, or with the juyce of Hemlock, which grows on Dunghils: and if need require, to let him blood on the flank-veins. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Diſeaſe cometh oftеſt after ſome ſickneſs, or ſurfeit with cold, being a ſign of amendment from that ſickneſs, do cure it in this ſort: take of Bean-flower, Wheat meal, Comin and Hogs greaſe, of each a like quantity, and making a Plaiſter thereof, ſpread it all over the horſes Cods and Stones. Others boil Groundſel in Wine Vinegar, and ſo bathe the horſes Cods therewith: or elſe take a quart of good Ale-wort, and ſet it on the fire with Crums of Brownbread ſtrongly leavened, and better than a handful of Commin made into powder: Then with Bean-flower make a plaiſter of them all, and apply it to the grief as hot as can be ſuffered: or if this help not, take Cows dung, and ſeeth it in milk, and lay it upon the ſwelling as hot as may be, and it will aſſwage it. But if this inflammation proceed from rankneſs of Seed, which you ſhall ſee by the much moiſt ſlimineſs of his Yard, then you ſhall firſt make him cover a Mare, then keep him without Provender, and let him blood above the great Vein, which is between his Lips, and lay thereto hard Eggs beaten in his own dung, and make a Plaiſter of the ſame, and lay it to his Cods, and once a day waſh his Cods with cold water.

Other

Other ancient Farriers uſe to let the horſe blood in his flank-veins, and then take of oil of Roſes and of Vinegar, of each half a pint, of Bole-armonick half a quartern beaten to powder, mix them together in a Cruze, and being luke-warm anoint the Cods therewith, with two or three feathers bound together: and the next day ride him into the water, ſo as his Cods may be within the water, giving him a turn or two therein; and ſo return fair and ſoftly home unto the ſtable: and when the horſe is dry, anoint him again as before, and do this every day until the horſe be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this Diſeaſe may come by means of evil humours, and corrupt blood, which reſort unto the Cods, and the Cure is, to cover all the Cods over with a charge made of Bole-armonick and Vinegar wrought together, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling go away, or that it break of it ſelf, and if it break, then to tent it with Mel Roſatum, and make him a Breech of Canvaſe to keep it in, renewing the tent every day once untill it be perfectly well.

CHAP. LVI.

Of incording, or burſting, or the Rupture in Horſes.

THis Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burſtneſs in horſes, is, when the rim or thin film which holdeth the guts up in a horſes body is broken, ſo that the guts fall down either into the Cods of the horſe, or into the horſes flank, as I have ſeen divers: Now this burſtneſs cometh either by ſome ſtripe or blow of another horſe, or elſe by ſome ſtrain in leaping over a hedge or a ditch, or by teaching a horſe to bound when he is too young; or when a horſe goreth himſelf upon ſome pole or ſtake, or by forcing a horſe when he is full to run beyond his ſtrength, or by ſtopping a horſe too ſuddenly upon naughty and hollow ground; whereby the ſtradling and ſlipping of his hinder feet, may ſtretch or tear the rim.

The ſigns to know this Sorrance before it be apparent to the eye, are; The horſe will forſake his Meat, and ſtand ſhoaring or leaning always on that ſide that he is hurt, and on that ſide, if you ſearch with your hand betwixt the ſtone and the Thigh, upward to the body, and ſomewhat above the ſtone, you ſhall find the gut it ſelf big and hard in the feeling, Whereas on the other ſide you ſhall find no ſuch thing.

Now

Now for the Cure, although for mine own part I both do and ſhall ever hold it uncurable, as long as a horſe is a beaſt without reaſon, yet for your ſatisfaction I will not ſtick to report what the beſt Farriers, and my ſelf have practiſed, in as much as it worketh much good, though no abſolute the Cure.

The Cure then is, to bring the horſe into ſome houſe or place which hath over head a ſtrong baulk or beam going overthwart, and ſtrow that place thick with ſtraw, then put on four ſtrong paſterns with four rings on his feet, and faſten one end of a long rope to one of thoſe rings, then thread all the other things with the looſe end of the rope, and ſo draw all his four feet together, and caſt him on the ſtraw, that done, caſt the rope over the baulk, and hoiſt the horſe ſo as he may lye flat on his Back, with his Legs upward without ſtruggling; then bathe his ſtones well with warm water and butter molten together, and the ſtones being ſomewhat warm and well mollified, raiſe them up from the body with both your hands, being cloſed by the fingers cloſe together, and holding the ſtones in your hands in ſuch manner, work down the gut into the body of the horſe by ſtriking it downwards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediately after another, untill you perceive that ſide of the ſtone to be ſo ſmall as the other: and ſo having returned the gut into his right place, take a Liſt of two fingers broad, throughly anointed with Freſh Butter, and tye his ſtones both together with the ſame, ſo nigh the body as may be, yet not over hard, but ſo as you may put your finger between: that done, take the horſe quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, where he muſt ſtand warm, and not be ſtirred for the ſpace of three weeks: But forget not the next day, after you have placed his Gut in his true place, to unlooſen the Liſt and take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to caſt a diſh or two of cold water up into his Cods, and that will make him to ſhrink up his ſtones, and thereby reſtrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three weeks end, to make your Cure ſo much the ſurer, it were not amiſs to geld the ſtone on that ſide away, ſo ſhall he hardly be burſten again on that ſide: and during the cure, let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his drink be always warm.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the botch in the Groins of a Horſe.

IT is the opinion of the beſt Horſleaches, that if a groſs horſe which is full of humours, be ſuddenly and violently laboured, that then the humors will reſort into the weakeſt part, and there gather together and breed a botch, and eſpecially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighs, not far from the Cods. The ſigns are, the hinder Legs will be all ſwoln, eſpecially from the Cambrels or hoofs upward, and if you feel with your hand, you ſhall find a great knob or ſwelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

The Cure according to the general practice, is, firſt, to ripen it with this plaiſter, take of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine, and of Honey of each like quantity, ſtirring it together to make a ſtiff plaiſter, and with a Cloth lay it to the ſore, renewing it once every day until it break or wax ſoft: and then launce it, ſo as the matter may run downward, then tent it with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

CHAP. LVIII.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or any Impoſtumation.

AS ſoon as you perceive the ſwelling to appear, lay upon it a plaiſter of Shooe-makers Wax ſpread upon Allom Leather, and let it lye until the ſore grow ſoft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it ſelf, when the filth is come out, waſh the ſore very well with ſtrong Allom water, then tent it with the oyntment called Ægyptiacum till it be whole.

CHAP. LIX.

Of the Itch, Scab, or Mangineſs in the Tail, or general falling of the hair.

HOrſes, through the corruption of blood, or the fulneſs of Rank feeding, or through over heeating and labouring, or by the infection of other horſes, do many times get the general ſcab, Itch, or mangineſs in the Tail, and ſometimes in the ſpring time horſes are often

often troubled with the Truncheon-worms in their fundament, which will make them rub their Tails, and fret the hair, yet are free both from manage and Scurf. Wherefore if then you only rake the horse with your hand, anoint it with Soap, and pull out the worms, you shall cause the horse to leave his rubbing: but if you perceive the hair to shed and fall from the tail, through some small Worms that grow at the roots of the hair, or through some little fretting scurf, then you shall anoint all the tail with soap even to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kill the worms, and scour out the scurf: but if much of the tail be fallen away, then you shall keep the tail continually wet with a spunge dipt in fair water, and that will make the hair to grow very fast. Now if in the horse tail shall grow any Canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all his tail with Aqua-fortis, or strong Water made in this sort. Take of green Copperas and of Allom, of each one pound, of white Copperas a quartern, boil all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot, until one half be consumed. and then with a little of this Water being made luke-warm, wash his Tail with a little clout or flax bound to the end of a stick, continuing so to do every day once till it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of Blood, feed, or labour, this scab, Itch, or manginess, spread universally into many parts of the tail, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water until it be whole.

CHAP. LX.

Of the general Scab, Manginess, or Leprosie, over the whole body.

THe general Manginess, or Leprosie, which runneth all over the horses body, is a cankered filthy scurf which covereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt Blood, ingendred by infection or unwholesome Food, or else by indiscreet Labour. The signs whereof are, the horse will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy scurf, full of scabs, and raw plats about the neck and flanks, and ill-favoured to look on, and rubbing, scratching, and biting: of all Diseases there is none more infectius, nor will more certainly kill a horse if it be not prevented.

Now

Now the cure, according to the opinion of skilful Farriers, is, first to let the horse blood in the one side of the neck-vein, and within two days after on the other side of the neck, and within two days after that in the flank-veins, and last of all in the vein under the tail: then wash all the sore places with Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a wisp of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well, and be all raw: that done, anoint the places with this ointment, take of quick-silver one ounce, of Hogs Grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into powder a quartern, of Rape oil a pint, mingle these things well together, untill the Quick-silver be throughly incorporated with the rest, and having anointed all the raw places with this Oyntment, make it to sink into the flesh, by holding and waving up and down over it, a hot broad Bar of Iron, and then touch him no more again the space of two or three days: During which time, if you see that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place again with an old Horse-comb, or a hair cloath, to make it raw, and anoint it with fresh Ointment. But if all this will not help, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a man's little finger, burn all the mangy places, making round holes, passing only through the skin and no further: For which intent it shall be needful to pull the skin first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still untill you have thrust the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a span one from another, and if need be you may anoint those holes with a little soap, and let the horse be very thin dieted, during this curing time.

Now for mine own part, I do utterly dislike this burning, for it is a foul manner of cure, and breedeth much Eye sore in the Horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers use for this disease, after the horse is let blood in the neck-vein, to take a good quantity of fresh Grease, and mix it well with the powder of Chalk, then put thereto a good quantity of the powder of Brimstone and Elicampane roots, and stir them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quick-silver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or Sallet Oil, and mix it with all the rest very well together, and so anoint all the sore places about the horse with this Ointment. Others use to take of Lamp oil, the fine powder of Brimstone, of black Soap, of Tar, of hogs grease, and the soot of a Chimney, of each like quantity, and then mix them all well together, by boyling them on the fire, and then anoint all the sore places therewith, as hot as

the horse can indure or suffer it, always provided that the horse be let blood before you use the ointment.

Others use after the horse is let blood, to take of oil de bay a pound, and of Quick-silver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof, till the Quick-silver be killed and incorporated with the Oil, then anoint all the sore places therevvith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two days after with water vvherein young Broom, or the herb Arsmart hath been well sodden and finally chopt and mixt with a little Soot, and rub him well untill the sore places bleed; then take a pound of black Soap, a pottle of keen mustard, four penny-worth of brimstone made into powder, three penny-worth of Quick silver well killed with fresh Grease, tvvo penny-vvorth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pint of Grease, stir all these together in a Vessel till the grease and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithal anoint all the sore places, and with once anointing, and twice washing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the Horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the neck, and then to cut the skin down the middest of his fore-head two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the green root of Elicampane, or Angelica, which is better: so let them remain under the skin till the matter rot, then crush it forth after two or three days, and in twelve days the roots will fall out as it healeth, but this will cure the Mange, provided that you anoint all the sore places with the powder of Brimstone; Verdigrease, and oyl Olive, mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after blood-letting, to rowel the horse under the neck, that the evil humours may issue forth, then to rub all his Body quite over with an hard hair cloth, or with an old curry comb, untill the horse bleedeth: after that take of Sulphur, Salt and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beat them and temper them with very strong Vinegar, and as much common oyl, and therewith anoint all the sore places: or else take very strong Wine Vinegar, the Urine of a Boy under twelve years of age, and the juyce of Hemlock, mix them together, and wash the horse therewithal.

Other Farriers use after blood-letting, to anoint the horse with

one

one of these Ointments, the sore having been before rubbed till it bleed, either with Brimstone, Oil, Vinegar, Salt, Soot, Swines-dung, and unsleckt Lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boiled together; or else with Brine Water sod with Nettles, or else with Vinegar, Allom, and Salt-nitre boiled together, or else wash the sore with Beef-broth, then boil Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh Grease, and anoint the horse all over therewith, holding a Chaffing-dish and coals, or a hot bar of Iron to his body, to make the ointment sink in.

Lastly, and as good as any of the rest, after the horse hath been let blood, take an old currycomb, or a wool card, and rub every sore place about the horse till it bleed, then take of the oldest piss you can get, a pottle, and of green Copperas three quarters of a pound, mix and stir them well together, then set them on the fire, and boil them a while, then as hot as the horse can suffer it wash him with the same: after his washing is a little dryed, take of oyl one ounce and a half, of Quick-silver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines grease, mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quick-silver can be seen, and then anoint the horse all therewith: And if the first time doth not Cure him the second will most assuredly, provided, that during the time of cure you keep the horse with a very thin diet.

CHAP. LXI.

Two most excellent and approved Medicines, (especially the latter) for the foulest Mange or Leprosie that can possibly happen to any Horse.

TAke Hogs Grease, Bay-Salt, Wormwood, and Rue, of each a pretty quantity, stamp them together well in a Mortar, and when it is brought to one entire Salve, stop it hard into the horses Ears, then either bind them up, or stitch them together, that the Medicine may not fall out: and do thus three or four days together, and it will not only cure the Mangy, but any foul Farcy whatsoever.

The second Medicine; and most assured for the Mange, is, to take fresh Grease, yellow or white Arsnick, and mix them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salve, then your horse having been let blood, and all the scurf taken away, either with an old

curry comb, or ſuch like hard thing, ſo as the ſore places may lye raw, then anoint them all over with this ointment, and let the horſe ſtand ſo tied, that he may by no means touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when he hath ſtood thus two or three hours, then take old Urine warmed, and waſh away all the ointment, and then give the horſe his meat: thus dreſs the Horſe twice or thrice at the moſt, and it is ſufficient for any Mange whatſoever.

CHAP. LXII.

How to know when a Horſe halteth before, and in what part his grief is.

THere is nothing more neceſſary for any mans underſtanding, that ſhall have occaſion at any time to uſe a horſe, eſpecially for the skilful Farrier, than to know the reaſon why a horſe halteth, and where the grief remaineth, as well becauſe thoſe griefs lye moſt concealed, as alſo becauſe our Kingdom is ſo very full of ſubtil, unconſcionable Horſe-courſers, that they are careful moſt to conceal that which may ſooneſt cozen their Neighbours: you ſhall know then that no horſe halteth before, but his grief muſt be either in his ſhoulders, in his legs, or in his feet: if it be in his ſhoulders, it muſt either be on the top of his ſhoulder-blades, which we call the withers, or the bottom of the ſhoulder-blade joyning to the Marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breaſt, or in the Elbow of the Horſe, which joyns the nether end of the Marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the grief be in the ſhoulder or no, look if the horſe do not lift up his Leg, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the ſhoulder, and is a new hurt: If he caſt his leg more out in his going than the other, and that almoſt with an unbended knee, then it is alſo in the ſhoulder, and it is an old hurt: If you take him by the head-ſtall of the bridle, and turn him as ſhort as you can poſſible of both hands, if then you ſee him when he is turned on the lame ſide, to favour his leg very much (as he cannot chuſe but do) then alſo his grief is in his ſhoulder: or if when a Horſe ſtandeth in the Stable, he ſtretcheth out his fore-

leg

leg, and ſetteth it more forward than the other, it is partly a ſign the grief is in the ſhoulder, but not abſolutely.

Now when you know generally what the grief or pain is in the ſhoulder, then you ſhall learn to know in what part of the ſhoulder, as thus: if the horſe halteth more when the Rider is upon his back, than when he is off, then the grief is in the top of the Withers: if when with your hand you Gripe and handle him upon the top of the ſhoulder blades you find that he ſhrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having any galled back before, for that may deceive you) then aſſuredly the grief is on the Withers. If the horſe goeth bovving unto the ground, and tread his ſteps very thick, then it is a ſign the grief is in his breſt, between the nether part of the ſpade-bone, and the upper part of the marrovv-bone, and therefore if vvith your thumb you preſs him hard in that part, you ſhall ſee him ſhrink, and be ready to fall dovvn.

Novv if vvhen you take his Elbovv in your hand betvvixt your finger and your thumb, and gripe it, the horſe preſently taketh his foot from the ground and lifts up his Leg, offering therewithal to bite or ſnap at you, then the grief is only in the Elbow.

Now if the grief whereof a horſe halteth be in his Leg, it is either in his Knee, in his Shank, or elſe in the Paſtorn joynt: If it be either in his knee or Paſtorn joynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will go very ſtiffly upon them: if the pain or grief be in the Shank, then it is by means of ſome Splent, Screw, Windgal, or ſuch apparent grief, moſt apparent to be beheld.

Now if the grief of this halting be in his foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heel, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the ſole of the foot; if it be in the Cronet, either the grief will be apparent, the skin be broken or ſwoln ſome manner of way, or elſe laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burn and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got ſome ſtraine of the joynt within the hoof: if it be in the heel, as by over-reach, or otherwiſe than it is to be ſeen, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: If upon any of the quarters, which is to be underſtood from the middle-hoof to the heel, then going on the edge of a bank or hilly ground, he will halt more than on the plain ground, and by the horſes coming toward you, and going from you upon ſuch edge or bank, you ſhall perceive whether his grief be in the inward quarter or outward quarters: Alſo he may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nail, and then you ſhall

with

with a pair of Pinſons nip the head of every Nail and hoof together, and where he complaineth there draw the Nail, and if the Nail ſink, then there is his pain. If he halt in the hoof, which is ſeldom or never ſeen, then he will tread altogether upon his heel: If his grief be in the Sole of his Foot, as by the treading upon ſome nail or ſtub, or by ſurbayting, or ſuch like, then he will halt all after one ſort, upon any ground whatſoever, unleſs it be upon the ſtones, and then he will halt the moſt.

Now to be ſure in what part of the foot the grief is, it ſhall be good, firſt to make him go upon the plain ground, and then upon a hard and ſtony way, and after upon a Banky ground, and by taking careful notes, and careful handling him, you ſhall eaſily ſee of what member he halteth.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of halting behind, and where the grief is.

IF a Horſe halt behind, his grief of neceſſity muſt either be in his hip, (of ſome called the huckle-bone) or in the ſtiff, in the Hough, in the Ham, in the Leg, in the nether joint, in the Paſtorn, or in the Foot. If he halt in the hip of any new hurt, the horſe will go ſide-long, and not follow ſo well with that Leg as with the other, neither will he be able to turn upon that ſide without much favouring of his Leg; But if it be any old hurt, then the ſore hip will ſhrink, and be lower than the other, and it is beſt ſeen when he goeth up a hill, or upon the edge of ſome bank, ſo as the worſt Leg may go on the higher ſide, for then he will halt ſo much the more, becauſe it is very painful unto him to go ſo unevenly wrinching his Leg; if the grief be in the ſtiff, then the horſe in his going will caſt the ſtiff joynt outward, and the bone on the inſide will be ſomewhat bigger than the other, neither can he any more than touch the ground with his toe: if his grief be in his hoof, then it is by means of ſome Spaven, which is apparent both to be ſeen and felt, or elſe of ſome ſtrain or blow, and then the ſwelling will moſt evidently appear: and the like is to be ſaid of the Ham, wherein may be ſeen the Sellander, or ſuch like apparent Sorrance, cauſing the horſe to halt: If the grief be either in the Leg, Paſtorn, or Foot, you ſhall find it by ſuch ſigns as have been taught you in the former Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

How to know if a horſe hath any hidden grief in him that maketh him to halt, when he cometh to travel, and whence it proceeds.

NOw for as much as there are ſome horſes which through long reſt and running at Graſs, will wear out the worſt of their griefs, ſo that when they come to be but gently ridden, they will cover their halting, and through a natural aw they bear unto the man, will, whilſt he is on their backs, go as if they were as ſound as might be, yet be truly of themſelves very unperfect: in this caſe, both to keep your ſelf from cozening, and to diſcover the moſt hidden infirmity, you ſhall firſt take the horſe out of the Stable in a long ſtring, and cauſing one to run him in his hand, at the length of the halter, mark how he ſets down his Legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at firſt he go upright and favour no Leg, then take his back and ride him a while roundly up and down a Road, then light from his back, and let him ſtand ſtill an hour, then as before, let him run in a mans hand, at the halters length without any man on his back: and believe it is a moſt certain rule: if he have the leaſt grief that may be, he will then ſhew it, and favour that Limb which is moſt pained or grieved: for by this rule only, are many bad Horſe-courſers diſcovered.

Now to know whereof theſe griefs proceed, you ſhall underſtand, that if the grief proceed of a hot cauſe, then the horſe halteth moſt when he travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold cauſes, then he halteth moſt when he is cold, and leaſt when he is hot and much travelled.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the grief and pinching in the shoulder.

THe Grief or pinching of the horses shoulder, cometh either by labouring and straining the horse too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. Its to be known by the narrowness of the breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, in so much that the fore-part of the shoulder-bone will stick out and be much higher then the flesh, and if it be of any longer continuance he will be very hollow upon the brisket towards the fore-booths, and he will go wider beneath at the feet than at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is, to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharp knife, upon both sides, an inch under the shoulder-bone; and blowing the skin well from the flesh with a Swans quill, both of the one and the other shoulder, even up to the top of the Withers, and stroaking the wind up equally with your hand into both the shoulders, and then when they are full, stick the windy places with a Hazle Stick over all the shoulder; then loosening the skin from the flesh again, Rowel both the slits, either with tampins of Horse hair, or with round pieces of the upper Leather of an old shooe, with an hole in the midst, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to issue forth at, and let the tampins be at least two handfuls long in the skin, and the round Rowel at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plain and flat within the Cut, then once a day you shall turn the Rowels into the skin, and thrust out the matter; but if the hole grow so strait that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharp knife you shall enlarge it, then put a pair of Pastorns on his fore-legs, and so let him stand fifteen days, at the end whereof walk him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he doth not go to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteen days, and he will go sound.

But our best Farriers use, after they have Rowelled the horse, as is aforesaid, then to lay this charge or plaister all over his Withers, shoulders, and breast: Take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar, half a pint, boil all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a stick with a woolen cloth bound [illegible] end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover [illegible] shoulder

ſhoulder therewith : that done, clap flocks of the colour of the horſe (or as near as you can get it) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels clean, and put them in again, continuing to do thus the ſpace of fifteen days ; then take out the Rowels, and heal up the wounds with two tents of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, renewing the ſame every day once until the wounds be whole, but let the charge lye ſtill until it fall away of it ſelf ; and if you let the horſe run at grāſs till he hath had a froſt or two, there is no queſtion but he will be a great deal the founder.

There be other Farriers which uſe to Rowel the horſe, as is aforeſaid, yet croſs wiſe, that is, one over-thwart the other, then draw all the ſhoulder over with a hot drawing Iron in the comelieſt wiſe you can, making many ſcratches down his ſhoulders, then anoint both them and the Rowels once a day with ſweet Butter, and walk the horſe up and down evening and morning, that the humours may flow to the ſore places, and iſſue forth, and with your hands once a day at the leaſt, thruſt out the matter ; this cure is likewiſe to be continued the ſpace of fifteen days, and then the horſe will be whole ; yet for mine own part, in ſo much as the cure is foul, I do not much affect it.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Wrench in the ſhoulder.

THe Wrench or ſtrain in the ſhoulder, cometh of ſome dangerous ſlipping or ſliding, either in the ſtable or abroad, or of too ſudden ſtopping, when a horſe gallops, or by falls either on the planks, or on ſlippery ground, or by too ſudden turning on unſure ground, or by going too raſhly out of ſome door, or by the ſtroak of another horſe, you ſhall perceive it by his trailing his leg upon the ground cloſe after him.

The cure is, to let him blood upon the plat-vein, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you muſt ſave in a pot, and put thereunto, firſt of ſtrong Vinegar a quart, and half a dozen broken Eggs, ſhells and all, and ſo much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the Liquor ; that done, put thereunto of Bolearmonick beaten into fine powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them together ſo as the flower may not be

perceived, and if it be too ſtiff, you may add a little more Vinegar then with your hand daub all the ſhoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all againſt the hair, and let not the horſe depart out of that place untill the charge be ſurely faſtned unto the skin; that done, carry him into the Stable, and tye him up to the rack, and ſuffer him not to lye down all the day, and give him a little meat, dieting him very moderately the ſpace of fifteen days, during which time he may not ſtir out of his place, but only to lye down; and every day once refreſh the ſhoulder point with this charge, laying ſtill new upon the old, and at the fifteen days end lead him abroad to ſee how he goeth, and if he be ſomewhat amended, then let him reſt without travelling the ſpace of one month, and that will bring his ſhoulder to perfection: But if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you ſhall rowel him, as is before ſhewed in the former Chapter, juſt upon the ſhoulder point, and ſo keep him rowelled the ſpace of fifteen days, not fogetting to ſtir the rowel, and cleanſe the wound each other day, and then walk him up and down fair and ſoftly, and turn him always on the contrary ſide to the ſore: And when he goeth upright, pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with Turpentine and Hogs Greaſe molten together, as is before ſaid.

But if all this will not ſerve, then it ſhall be very requiſite and needful to draw him Chequer-wiſe with a hot Iron, over all the ſhoulder point, and alſo to make him draw a Plough every day, two or three hours at the leaſt, to ſettle his ioynts, for the ſpace of three weeks or a month: and if any thing will help, theſe two laſt remedies will ſet him ſound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this grief, firſt let the horſe blood in the Breaſt-vein, and then rowel him from the nether part of the ſpade bone down to the point of the ſhoulder, which done, yor ſhall ſet a patten ſhooe upon the ſound foot, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs for the ſpace of a month, not forgetting every other day to ſtir and remove the rowels, and ſo thruſt out the matter Then as ſoon as you ſee him go ſound, you ſhall take off his Patten ſhooe, and pull out the Rowels, and then let him run ſtill at graſs till he have taken a froſt or two, and no doubt but he will continue ſound.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the wrench in the nether joynt.

THis Wrench cometh by treading his foot in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signs whereof are chiefly these: the horse will halt, and the top of his back upon the points of his shoulder will be swoln, and somewhat hard to handle.

The Cure is, take of black Soap half a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handful or two of Tow, and dipt in into the Soap, then lay it very hot over all the horses Withers, then clap a plaister of Wax, Turpentine, and hogs Grease molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warm Cloaths, and keep the joynts as warm as may be: thus let him stand twenty four hours ere you dress him again, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteen days, and the horse will go soundly. ☞

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that instead of this black Soap will take Wine Lees, and Wheat-flower mingled together, and making a plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day until the horse go sound.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of splating the shoulder, or of shoulder torn.

THe splating of the shoulder, is, when by some dangerous slip or slide, either upon the side of some bank, or upon the plaunchers, the horse hath his shoulder parted from his Breast, and so leaves an open clift, not in the skin, but in the flesh and film next the skin, whereby the horse halteth, and is not able to go; it is to be seen by the trailing of his leg after him in going.

The cure whereof is thus; first put a pair of strait pastorns on his fore-feet, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet Oyl one pint, of oil de Bay half a pound, of fresh butter half a pound; melt all these things together in an earthen pot, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder; and within two or three days after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell, then either prick him with a Lancet or fleam in all the swelling places, or else with a sharp hot Iron, and then anoint it

ſtill with the oyntment before ſaid ; but if you ſee it will not go away, but ſwell ſtill, and gather to a head, then launce it where the ſwelling doth gather moſt, and is ſofteſt under the finger, and then tent it with flax dipt in Turpentine, and hogs greaſe molten together, as is before ſhewed, renewing that tent twice a day till the ſorrance be whole.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of the Shoulder Pight.

THe ſhoulder pight is, when a Horſe by reaſon of ſome great fall, ruſh or ſtrain, hath the point of his ſhoulder thruſt out of joynt, which is eaſie to be ſeen, in that the point of the ſore ſhoulder will ſtick out much further than the other, and the horſe will halt down right. The cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, firſt to make him ſwim in a deep water, up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the joynt return into his true place, then make two tough pins of Aſhen-wood as big as your little finger, being ſharp at the points, each one five inches long ; that done, ſlit the skin an inch above the point, and an inch beneath the point of the ſhoulder, and thruſt in one of theſe pins from above down-ward, ſo as both the ends may equally ſtick with the skin ; and if the pin of Wood will not eaſily paſs thorough, you may make its way firſt with an Iron Pin ; that done, make other two holes croſs to the firſt holes, ſo as the other pin may croſs the firſt pin aright in the midſt, with a right croſs, and the firſt pin would be ſomewhat flat in the midſt, to the intent that the other being round may paſs the better without ſtop, and cloſe the juſter together ; then take a piece of a little line ſomewhat bigger than a Whip cord, and at one end make a loop, which being put over one of the pins end, wind the reſt of the line good and ſtraight about the pins ends, ſo as it may lye betwixt the pins ends and the skin, and faſten the laſt end with a packneedle and a pack-thread unto the reſt of the Cord, ſo as it may not ſlip ; and to do well, both the pins and the cord ſhould be firſt anointed with a little hogs greaſe ; then bring him into the Stable, and let him reſt the ſpace of nine days ; and let him lye down as little as may be : and put a Paſtorn on the fore Leg, ſo as it may be bound with a Cord unto the foot of the Manger, to keep that Leg always whilſt he ſtandeth in the ſtable, more forward than the other, and

at

at the nine dayes end take out the pins and anoint the sore place with a little Dialthea, or with Hogs grease, and then turn him to Grass. Other of our late Farriers use, first to lay good store of straw under the horse, and then put a pair of strong Pastorns on his fore-legs, and another on his hinder, then having thrown him upon his Back, to hang him up by the Legs from the ground, with two Ropes drawn over some Beam or Bulk, which will put the bone into his true place again; then having him let down again fair and softly, loose the fore Pastorn of the sound Leg, and with a Cord before you let him rise, tye the same Leg to the foot of the Manger; so short as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his Leg before him, for fear of putting his shoulder out of Joynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three days; and presently when he is up, burn all the point of the shoulder with a hot drawing Iron Chequer-wise, a full foot square at the least, and let every stroke be no more than an inch distant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all these burned places, and all the rest of his shoulder with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar molten together, and laid on some thing hot with a Cloath tied to a sticks end; then clap Flocks of the colour of the horse upon it, then charge him again over the flocks, and at the three dayes end loose his Foot, and put a pair of Pastorns upon his feet, and let him neither lye down nor stir out of the stable for the space of fifteen or twenty dayes: then you may lead him abroad, and see whether he goes well or no, and if he be not perfect you may then give him as much more rest, and that will recover him.

CHAP. LXX.

A general and certain Cure for any desperate and curable Strain in the Shoulder, or any other hidden parts.

TAke a large earthen Vessel, and fill it full of the herb of Arsmart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldest and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the herbs all over, then cover the pot close, and keep it in some safe cool place. ☞

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an Earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto both of the Urine and the Herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the grief, and boyl it well, then if it be for a shoul-

der

der ſtrain, you ſhall take an old Boot and cut off the foot, that you may draw it over the horſes Foot, and above his knee almoſt to the Elbow of his ſhoulder, keeping the nether part of the boot as cloſe about his Legs as may be, but the upper part wide and ſpacious; into this boot thruſt all your mixture as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, and lay it faſt and cloſe about the ſhoulder, eſpecially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boot, ſo faſten it to the mane of the horſe, that it may not ſlip down, and thus do once a day till the grief depart, for this medicine is ſo violent, that if there be any foul matter that muſt come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, break and heal it, if there be no ſuch thing, then in a ſhort time it will draw away the offending humours, and give preſent eaſe.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the ſwelling of the Fore-Legs after great labour.

HOrſes not much uſed to travel, will after great labour ſwell upon their fore-Legs, becauſe heat and violent exceſs will cauſe humors to reſort down into the Legs, eſpecially if ſuch horſes ſhall be inwardly fat; for the indiſcreet labour will melt that inward greaſe, and make it deſcend down into the legs.

The Cure, according to the practice of ſome Farriers, is, to take a pound of Nerve Oil, a pound of black ſoap, and half a pound of Boars greaſe molten, and boil them all well together, and then ſtrain it and let it cool, then anoint your horſes Legs therewith, being made luke-warm again, and then keep his Legs clean from duſt. Other Farriers uſe to bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter, ſome with Sheeps-foot oyl, ſome with Neats-foot oyl, ſome with Train oyl, and ſome with Piſs and Salt-peter boyled together, of all which Piſs and Salt-peter is the beſt; and after any ſuch bathing, you muſt roll up the horſes Legs with Hay ropes wet in cold water, even from the Paſtern to the knee, but in any wiſe not too ſtrait, for fear of doing hurt, ſo let him ſtand continually when he reſteth.

☞ Now other Farriers ſomewhat more curious, uſe for the ſwelling of the Legs this Bath; take of Mallows three handfuls, of Roſe-cake, of Sage one handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of butter,

ter, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſwelling therewith every day once, the ſpace of three or four days ; and if the ſwelling will not go away with this, then take Wine Lees and Cumin, and boyl them together, and put thereunto a little Wheat-flower, and charge all the ſwelling therewith, and walk him often ; and if all will not ſerve, then take up the great vein above the knee on the inſide, ſuffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath : and it will take away the ſwelling.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of a Horſe that is foundred in his feet.

A Horſe is ſaid to be foundred of his feet, when he hath ſuch a numbneſs, and pricking or tingling within his hoofs, that he hath neither ſenſe nor feeling of his Feet, but is in all reſpects like a man, that by hard or crooked ſitting hath both his Feet aſleep (as we call) during which paſſion we know we can neither well go nor ſtand ; and even ſo it fareth with a horſe in this caſe, for the courſe of the blood being ſtopped, thoſe Obſtructions cauſe this torment. It commeth moſt commonly when a horſe is very fat, and hath his greaſe molten within him, and then ſuddenly cooled by taking his Saddle off too ſoon, or by ſtanding up in the cold unſtirred, or elſe by letting him ſtand in ſome ſhallow water little higher then his fet-lock.

A horſe alſo may be foundred by wearing ſtrait and uneaſie ſhoes, eſpecially in the Summer ſeaſon, when a horſe travelleth upon the hard ground.

The ſigns to know it, is, the horſe goeth crouching, and drawing all his fore-feet within the compaſs almoſt of a peck, and will ſtand ſo fearfully as though he ſtood upon needles.

Now you ſhall underſtand, that a horſe will ſometimes be only foundred of his Fore-feet, and not of his hinder; which you ſhall know in that the horſe will tread only upon his hinder feet, and not on his fore-feet, and go as though his buttocks would touch the ground ; and ſometimes he will be founddred upon his hinder feet, and not upon his fore-feet, and that you ſhall perceive by his fearfulneſs

neſs to ſet his feet to the ground, being alſo ſo weak behind, that he will ſtand quivering and quaking and covet always to lye down, and ſometimes he will be foundred of all his four feet, the ſigns whereof were firſt declared.

Now forasmuch as the Cures are all of one and the ſelf-ſame Nature, and what cureth the firſt cureth alſo the reſt, I will joyn them all together, with this advice, that if you find the horſe to be foundred on the fore feet only, then to apply your Medicine to the fore parts only, if on the hinder feet, then to the hinder parts; but if of all four feet, then to lay your Medicine to all the ſeveral parts of the body, as ſhall be preſently declared.

To come then to the cures, (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this Diſeaſe) if your horſe be foundred of all his four feet, you ſhall cauſe him to be let blood on his two breaſt-veins of his two fore-legs, ſomewhat above his knees, alſo you ſhall let him blood on his two ſpur-veins, and on the veins of his two hinder feet a little above the hoof, between the hoof and the paſtern: you ſhall let theſe veins bleed well, to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you muſt ſave in ſome Veſſel, and ſtir it with a ſtick to keep it from clearing: and when it hath bled as above-ſaid, put it all into one veſſel, then ſtop the wounds with ſome horſe-dung, or ſome earth, and make a charge with the blood in this ſore: take as much Wheat-meal, Bran and all, as will make the blood ſomewhat thick, and put it into the blood; take eight or ten Eggs, and break them alſo into the blood, ſhells and all; take a pint of ſtrong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonick brayed, and put them into the blood alſo; which done, you ſhall ſtir them all together; then ſhall you with your hand lay the ſaid charge all along upon the reins of the horſes back, upon his Buttocks and down his ſhoulders: when you have laid on this charge thus, you ſhall take two long Linnen rags dipped in the ſame charge, with which ſo dipped, you ſhall garter the horſe above the knees of his fore Legs ſomewhat hard, and likewiſe with two other like rags, ſo dipped, you ſhall garter him hard above both his hinder hoofs alſo: that done, cauſe him to be walked upon the hardeſt ground you can find for the ſpace of two or three hours; if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a ſtick or a wand to force him to go, then after his walking let him be ſet up and tyed to the rack, that he lye not down, and there let him

reſt

reſt two or three hours; which done, let him be walked again two or three hours more aforeſaid, then ſet him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drink, which you may do within two or three hours after his feeding, let it be a warm Maſh of Malt and Water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little; and if you let him ſtand an hour or two in a pool or ſtanding water up to the belly, and one upon his Back, it is good alſo, and after that ride him again a little: then let him be ſet up well dreſſed and covered, ſo by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him, for it is riding that brings the horſe to the perfectneſs of his feet, and you ſhall find your horſe as ſound as ever he was.

Now during this Cure, you are to take theſe obſervations into your memory.

Firſt, you ſhall not need to remove or ſtir the Horſes ſhooes: then you muſt after twenty four hours rub off the charge from the Horſes back.

Item, You ſhall take away his garters after twelve hours, and rub his knees and houghs with your hand, and with wiſps, to take away the numbneſs.

Item, If you cannot get Wheat-meal, you may take Oaten meal.

Item, If he will not bleed in the veins before named, then you may take your blood from the neck-vein.

Laſtly, if you take the horſe in hand to cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be ſound again within twenty four hours after; if he go longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the antient Farriers of this Kingdom, and amongſt the Italians, differ not much in their practice from this already rehearſed, only into the charge they add of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and as much Bean-flower as Wheat-flower, and of Turpentine half a pound; then if they did ſee that within four days the horſe did not recover, then they did know that the hurtful humours did only lye in the horſes feet, and there you ſhall ſearch his feet with your Butteriſs, paring all the ſoles of his Feet ſo thin, that you may ſee the water iſſue through the ſole: that done, let him blood at the Toes, and let him bleed well; then ſtop the Vein with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and laid upon a little flax, and then tack on his ſhooes, and cram the place where you did

let him blood hard with tow, to the intent it may be surely stopt; then fill all the soles of his feet with Hogs grease and Bran boyled or fryed together so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping clap a piece of Leather, and two cross splints, to keep in the Stopping; and immediately after this take two Eggs, and beat them in a dish, and put thereunto as much Bole-armonick and Bean-flower as will thicken the same, and mix them well together, and make thereof two plaisters, such as may close each foot round about somewhat above the Cronet, and bind it fast with a List or a rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two days, but let the soles of his feet be cleansed and new stopped every day once, and the Cronets to be removed every two days until the horse be found; during which time, let him rest unwalked, for fear of loosning his hoofs: but if you see that he begins to amend, you may walk him fair and softly once a day upon some soft ground to exercise his Legs and Feet, and let him not eat much, nor drink cold Water; but if his foundring break out above the hoof, which you shall perceive by the loosenes of the Coffin above the Cronet, then when you pare the sole you must take all the fore-part of the sole clean away, leaving the heels whole, to the intent the humors may have the freer passage downward, and then stop him, and dress him about the Cronet, as is before said. Now if the horse during this Cure chance to fall sick, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you shall first rake him, and after give him a glister of Mallows, three handfuls boyled in water from a Pottle to a quart: then after it is strain'd, put to it half a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-Oyl and so administer it, then when the horse hath emptied his Belly, give him this comfortable drink. Take of Malmsey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of oyl a quarter of a pint, and give the horse to drink of that luke-warm; that done, let him be walked up and down a good while together if he be able to go, if not, then tye him up to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvas and Ropes, so as he may stand up on the ground with his feet, for the less he lyeth down the better; but these extremities do seldom Happen. Now there be other Farriers, which, for the foundring of a Horse, only take Verdigrease, Turpentine, Sallet-oyl and Hoggs grease, of each like quantity, of Wax one ounce; boyl all together, and so dip flax or tow in it: then having pared his Feet thin, and

let

let him blood on the toes, ſtop all his feet with that oyntment very hot: or elſe they take the roots of Nettles, and Hemlock, with Eldern peels, of each a handful, and boyl them tender in Boars greaſe, or Hoggs greaſe, ſo let him blood in the midſt of the foot on the Toe-vein, then bathe and chafe his joynt and Leg therewith all about from his knee unto the Fetlock, and then clap it to, and bind a cloath faſt to it as hot as you can. So uſe this once a day till it be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not any of theſe former receited practices but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any ſo abſolute either from old or new founders, as this which I ſhall rehearſe, Firſt, you ſhall with a very ſharp drawing-knife, draw every part of the ſoles of the horſes feet ſo thin as Poſſible, even till you ſee the very water and blood iſſuing forth, and being ſure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a Butteriſs: then at the very ſharp end of the truſh of the Horſes foot you ſhall ſee the vein lye, then with your knife's end left up the hoof, and let the vein bleed, (which as long as you hold open the hoof will ſpin a great way forth) when it hath bled better than a pint, you ſhall cloſe the hoof, and ſo ſtop the vein: then tack on his foot a hollow ſhooe made for that purpoſe: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hoggs-greaſe and Turpentine upon the vein very hard: then take two or three hard Eggs roaſted, and coming burning hot out of the fire, and burſt them in the ſole of the horſes foot: then pour upon them Hoggs Greaſe, Turpentine, and Tar boyling hot, and as much flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow ſhooe, then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all the reſt in, and ſplent it ſure: and in this manner dreſs his four feet, if all be foundred, otherwiſe no more than are foundred; and thus you ſhall dreſs the Horſe three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble, you ſhall be ſure to have the Horſe as ſound as ever he was.

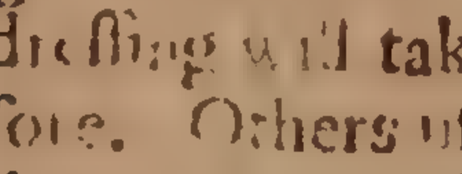
Now if the horſe be foundred through the ſtraightning of a ſhooe, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing, which is a degree leſs than foundring, then you ſhall for that ſorrance, firſt take off his ſhooe, and let him blood on the Toes, then ſtopping the place with bruiſed Sage, tack on his ſhooe again, and ſtop it with Hoggs greaſe and bran boyled together, as hot as is poſſible; and do this twice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Splent as well on the inside of the knee, as of any other part of the Leg.

A Splent is to the outward feeling a very griſtle, or rather a hard bone, ſometimes as big as a hazle nut, ſometimes as big as a walnut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inſide of the fore Leg, between the knee and the upper Paſtorn joynt, and ſometimes juſt underneath, and cloſe unto the knee, which is of all other the moſt dangerous ſplent, and doth the ſooneſt make a Horſe lame: it cometh by travelling a horſe too yourg, or by over-preſſing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender Sinews of his Leg are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof, it is eaſie becauſe it is apparent unto the eye, and moſt palpable to be felt. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take an Onion, and picking out the Core, put into it half a ſpoonful of Honey, and a quarter of a Spoonful of unſleckt Lime, and four pennyweight of Verdigreaſe; then cloſing up the Onion, roaſt it in hot embers untill it be ſoft: then bruiſe it in a Morter, and as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, lay it to the Splent, and it will take it away: But in any caſe cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the ſplent with warm water, and then ſhave off the hair, and lightly to ſcarrify or prick the skin with the point of a Razor, ſo as the blood may iſſue forth: Then take of Cantharides half a ſpoonful, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, and then melt them in a little pann, ſtirring them well together, ſo as they may not boyl over, and being ſo boyling hot, take two or three feathers and anoint all the ſore places therewith: that done, let not the Horſe ſtir from the place where you ſo dreſs him for an hour after, to the intent he ſhake not off the Oyntment: then carry him fair and ſoftly into the Stable, and tye him ſo as he may not reach with his head beneath the Manger: For otherwiſe he will covet to bite away the ſmarting and pricking Medicine, which if it ſhould touch his Lips would quickly fetch off the skin; and alſo let him ſtand without Litter all that day and night: the next day anoint the ſore place with freſh Butter, continuing ſo to do every day once for the ſpace of nine dayes: for this will allay the heat of the Medicine.

dicine, and cauſe both that and the cruſt of the ſplent to fall away of it ſelf. There be other Farriers which uſe with a fine hot drawing Iron to burn the ſorrance down in the midſt, the full length of the ſplent, and then over-thwart like this figure;



then four hours after ſuch burning, take Cows-dung new made, and Sallet Oyl mixt and well beaten together, and therewith anoint all the ſore places; and this muſt be done when the Splent is very young.

Others uſe to ſlit the Sorrance with a knife the whole length of the ſplent, and then with a Cornet to open the ſlit, and lay the ſplent bare, then to make about the wound a Coffin of Clay all open to the top; then take Boars-greaſe made ſcalding hot, and pour it into the wound untill the clay Coffin be full, then let it reſt until the greaſe be cold: after that let the Horſe riſe, and this with once dreſſing will take the Splent clean away without any blemiſh or eye-ſore. Others uſe to beat the Splent with a ſtick, and to bruiſe it well, then prick it with an Aule, and thruſt out the blood, then lay on a piece of white Leather, and with a hot Iron make the greaſe ſcald it, or elſe melt into it Pitch and Verdigreaſe, and then lay a plaiſter of Pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it ſelf; or elſe after you have beaten and prick the Splent, take out the Core of an Onion, and fill it with Bay Salt, then roaſt it ſoft, and lay it hot to the Splent, and inſtead of the Onion, you may if you will bind to a hard roaſted Egg, being fire-hot. Other Farriers uſe to ſlit the skin the length of the ſplent, then to dip a little piece of Linnen in warm wine, and ſprinkle Verdigreaſe thereon, and ſo lay it to the ſlit, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to rub the ſplent twice a day with Tar very hard, until the Splent be gone; but this ſplent muſt be very young and tender; for faſting Spittle is as good as Tar. Other Farriers uſe to take a black Snail and ſlit her, and put in Bay-Salt, and lay it to the ſplent being opened, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone: then let the vein above the knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, leſt it feed the ſplent again. Others uſe if the Splent be upon the knee to burn it, as is before ſaid; then take Wormwood, Smallage, pellitory of the Wall, Brank-Urſine ſtampt with Swines greaſe, and lay it to the burnings, provided that firſt the hair be ſhaved off, and if the Splent be below the knee, this Cure is good alſo, and much the ſafer.

Now

☞ Now after all these former recited practices, you shall understand that the most cleanliest way to take away a splent, is first, after you have cast your Horse with a Hazel stick of a pretty poise and bigness, gently to beat the splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the splent grow soft in every part, then with the point of your Launcet let out all the blood and water; then take a Brick-bat, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a red cloath, and therewith rub the Splent, and smooth it upon the top till you have dried away the blood, and that no more moisture cometh out; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and Mastick, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and all about the Splent: then clap slox of the colour of the Horses Legg upon it, and so let it rest upon the Splent until it fall away of it self: and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the Splent remain behind, which hardly will be if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dress that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent will be perfectly cured. ☜ Now for the surest and most certainest way to take off a splent it is thus: With the point of a sharp knife, make a slit of more than a Barley corn length, just upon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it be so deep that you may be sure that the bone of the splent is bare, then put into that slit with the point of your knife, as much Mercury Sublimat as the quarter of a Hazel nut kirnel, and within three or four dayes, it will so have eaten the Splent, that it will fall out of it self: then you shall heal up the sore either with fresh Butter molten, or with a Plaister of Hoggs grease, and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this cure you must beware, that you tye the horse so, as for four and twenty hours he may not touch the sore place with his Mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small precept, to bear ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other humours whatsoever. You must first stay the falling down of the new humours to the place troubled, as by binding Plaisters, as Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, red Lead, Oyl, Bole armonick, and such like; then to draw out matter which is there gathered with drawing simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like: and lastly, to dry up the relicks with drying powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyster-shels, Soot, and such like; and also you must know, that all Splints, Spavens, or Knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning or after the full of the Moon.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIV.

An approved and certain way to take away any Splint without breaking any hair.

TAke the Root of Elicampane well washed and cleansed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roast it in the hot Embers, as you would roast a Warden; then as hot as the Horse can suffer it, (for I would not have you scald) after you have rubbed and chast the excrescion, clap this unto it, and bind it fast on, and in two or three dressings it will consume away the splint.

Also, if morning and evening you rub the splint with the oyl of Origanum, it will take it away.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Screw, or thorow Splint.

ALthough divers of our Farriers do distinguish and make a difference betwixt a Screw and a Splint, saying, that the screw is ever of the out-side of the Leg, as the Splint is of the inside; yet it is most certain that the Disease and infirmity is all one, and may as well be called a splint on the out-side of the Leg, as a splint on the inside of the Leg, and this Splint on the out-side is ever least dangerous. Now a Horse many times will have both these splints at one time, and upon one Leg, nay, I have seen them so just opposite one to another, that one would have thought they had gone through the horses Leg; whence it hath come to pass, that many foolish Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorow splint, and I have seen my self, some well reputed Farriers, that having the Cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying it was a thorow splint, and therefore most incurable: But the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the Shin-bone being hollow, and full of Pith and Marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the Marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but must presently break in sunder, especially when such a weak spongy substance is a Splint is, shall possess the whole strength of the Leg. Now for the Cure: as the Splint and it are all one, so they have all one cure, and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the Latter, in as much as it is not full so dangerous, nor so near the main Sinews.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kind of a dry scab, growing in the form of lines or streaks over-thwart the very tough or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard hair with stubborn roots, like swines bristles, which corrupteth and Cankereth the flesh like the Roots of a Childs scabbed head; and if the sore be great and deep, it will make the Horse go stiff at his first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the Corruption of blood, or from negligent keeping, when the horse wanteth clean dressing: for you shall know that some horses naturally are given to have long hair from the top to the bought of the knee down to the fetlock, and that hair in the bought of the knee is oft apt to curl; whereby those horses, if they be not very carefully and clean kept, are much subject to this disease.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barrel'd Herring out of the pickle with a soft row, and two spconful of black Soap, and so much Allom, beat all these in a morter well together, and then lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kill the Mallander, provided alwayes that before you lay any thing unto Mallander, you ever pull off the dry scabs first, and leave no hair growing within the sore. Other Farriers use to take a paring of a Cheese, and toasting it very hot, anoint it with Honey, and so lay it hot to the Mallander, and renewing it once a day till the Mallander be whole: or else beat Hens dung and Gilli-flowers well together, and lay it to the sore till it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have washed the sore clean with warm water, and shaved off the hair and the scabs, to take a spoonful of Sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a clout as will cover the sore, and bind it fast on with a list, renewing it every day once the space of two or three dayes; and at the three dayes end take away the plaister, and anoint the sore with Oyl of Roses made luke-warm, and that will fetch away scurf or crusty asker, bred by means of the burning Plaister; which scurf being taken away, wash the sore place well every day once with his own stale, or else with mans Urine, and then immediately strow upon it the powder of burnt Oyster-shell, continuing so to do every day once until it be whole.

Others

Others of our latter Farriers uſe to take a quart of water, half a pint of Oyl, and as much flower as will thicken it with ſeething: then lay that hot to the ſore twice a day, for four dayes together; then take Maſtick, Frankincenſe beaten into fine powder, Quick-ſilver, killed either in the juyce of Lemons, or in ſtrong Vinegar of each an ounce; then of Liturgy half an ounce, of Ceruſs ten ounces; and as much of Swines greaſe clarified; incorporate and mingle all theſe together with Vinegar and Oyl, and lay it to the ſore untill the Mallendar be killed; then heal it up as is afore ſhewed. Others uſe after they have waſhed it and ſhaved it, to rub it with Piſs and Sope untill it be raw; then lay to it Nerve-Oyl, Honey and ſtrong Muſtard, until it be whole. Others uſe to take Sulphur, Vitriol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gem, mixed with Oyl de Bay, and to rub the Mallander well therewith. Now to conclude, you ſhall underſtand, that ſome Horſes will have two Mallanders upon one Leg, one above another, and ſometimes one a little above the inward bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the Knee, but the Cure is all alike, and as you dreſs one ſo you may dreſs two or three.

Now for mine own part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallander, then after the ſore is cleanſed, to take the ordure or dung of a Man, and anoint the ſore therewith, and it will kill it and heal it.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of an Upper attaint, or Over-reach upon the Back-ſinew of the Fore-leg, ſomewhat above the Paſtorn-joynt.

THis which we call an upper-attaint, is nothing elſe but a painful ſwelling of the Maſter-ſinew, or Back-ſinew of the ſhank-bone, by reaſon that the horſe doth ſometimes over-reach and ſtrike that Sinew with the Toe of his hinder foot, and thereby cauſeth the horſe to halt much. Now the ſigns are both the ſwelling and the halting; and the cure, according to ſome of the old Farriers, is, to dreſs the ſore place with a Plaiſter made of Wine lees and Wheat flower laid hot to, or elſe to take of black Sope and Bores greaſe, of each a like quantity ſcalding hot!

make a Plaiſter of Sear-cloath thereof, and clap it all about the ſore place; or elſe if the ſwelling by no Salve will diſſolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his Leg all downward with the hair in many ſmall ſtrikes from the one end of the ſwelling to the other, and make the ſtrikes very thick together, and ſomewhat deep, then anoint his burning for two or three dayes with black Sope, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs; but if he will not run at graſs, then every day give him ſome moderate Exerciſe; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foul, and albeit it take away the ſwelling, yet the ſeames of the burning, when they are cured, will keep the member big, as if it were ſtill ſwelled. Now other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the Leg with warm water, then to ſhave off the hair as far as the ſwelling goeth, then to ſcarrifie the ſore place with the point of a razor, that the blood may iſſue forth: then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Soap, and with a ſlice ſpread ſome of this oyntment over all the ſore, ſuffering him to reſt there where you dreſs him for one half hour after, and then you may carry him into the Stable, and there let him ſtand without Litter, and ſo tyed as he may not touch the ſore with his mouth, and then the next day uſe him in the ſame manner again; then the third day anoint the place with freſh Butter, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of nine dayes, and at the nine dayes end make him this Bathe, take of Mallows three handfuls, a Roſe-cake, of Sage an handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of Beer, and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl; and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſore place therewith every day once til it be whole. Others uſe to cleave a Chicken or a Pidgeon, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling, and it will abate it; or elſe take Dialthea Agrippa and oyl, and mixing it together, lay it to the ſwelling. Others uſe to take of Frankincenſe, of Roſin, of Tar, of Euforbium, of Turpentine and Fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oyl an ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh, mix and melt them all together, and Plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the ſore place till it be whole; or elſe take for this Sorrance, three quarters of an ounce of Sanguis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-armony, as much Oyl, three ounces of Maſtick, and as much Suet, and as much Swines Graſe, the whites of half a dozen of Eggs, melt and mix them together, and lay them together, and lay

it

it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away; then make the ſhooes of his hinder feet ſhorter than the hornes of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horn hang over uncut away, and make the fore-ſhoe no longer than his heel, but rather ſhorter.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

An excellent approved Medicine for any Sinew-ſtrain whatſoever.

TAke of Vinegar a pint, the whites of three or four Eggs, and as much Bole-armonick, and Bean flower, as will bring it to a thick ſalve over the fire; then when it is very hot, lay it Plaiſterwiſe upon the ſtrain, and round about the Leg, and do this not only till the grief be gone, but alſo till the ſwelling be taken away. ☞

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of a neather Attaint, or over-reach on the Paſtorn-joynts.

THe neather attaint, or over-reach on the midſt and in the hollow of the Paſtorn joynt, is a litle Bladder full of Jelly, like unto a wind-gall, and though it be not apparent to the eye, yet it is eaſie to be felt, and may come as well by ſome wrinch or ſtrain, as by an over-reach, and it will make a horſe halt much; the ſigns are, the neather Joynt towards the Fet-lock will be very hot, and ſomewhat ſwelled, and the little ſoft bleb will eaſily be felt.

The Cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a ſmall cord, and rowel him ſomewhat ſtrait from the Knee to the neather joynt, and then in the Paſtorn, between the hoof and the joynt with a fleam ſtrike him in the midſt of his ſwelling, and let out the matter; then take the white of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping Flax therein, lay it unto all the ſwelling, and then unrowel his Leg, and renew the Salve twice a day until the grief be gone. But in any caſe let him not be Laboured or ridden whilſt he is incuring.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of an Attaint or over-reach on the Heel.

☞ AN Attaint or over-reach upon the heel, is, when a Horſe ſtriketh the toe of his hinder ſhooe into the heel, juſt upon the ſetting on of the hoof, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and rankle ſo much inward, that it will endanger the horſes hoof, and you ſhall commonly ſee by the cut the skin hang over the horſes heel, and it will make a horſe halt. Now the cure is, firſt to cut away the skin, and alſo the hoof, and the fleſh, till you have made the ſore even and plain without any hollowneſs; then waſh it very well with Beer and Salt, then bind unto it a little flax dipt in the white of an Egg, mingled with a little Bole-armony, renewing it every day once the ſpace of three or four dayes, and that will heal it.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Mellet on the Heel.

A Mellet is a dry Scab that groweth upon the heel, ſometimes through the corruption of blood, and ſometimes for want of clean rubbing and dreſſing, when he is wet ſet up; It appeareth like a dry Chap without any moiſture, and it will be ſometimes as well on both heels as on one. The Cure, according to the practice of the old Farriers, is, to take half a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of black Sope, and mix them together; then put thereto four or five ſpoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allom unburnt as a Hens Egg, and two ſpoonfuls of Rye-flower; mix them all well together, and then take it away, and waſh all his Leg and foot with Salt beef broth, and then rope his Leg all the day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be ſound; provided alwayes, that before you dreſs him, you ever take off the dry Scab, or Scurf, and make the ſore as clean and as plain as is poſſible.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of falſe Quarters.

A Falſe Quarter is a rift or open back-ſeam, ſometimes in the out-ſide, but moſt often in the inſide of the hoof, becauſe the inſide is ever the weaker part, which ſides are ever called Quarters, whence this ſorrance taketh this name, and is called a falſe quarter, as much as to ſay, a ſick and unſound Quarter ; for it is as if it were a piece ſet unto the hoof, and the hoof not all of one intire piece as it ought to be. It cometh many times by evil ſhooing and evil paring, and ſometimes by pricking the horſe, and ſuch like hurts. The ſigns to know it are, the horſe will halt much, and the rift will bleed, and when the ſhooe is off, the whole ſorrance is apparent to be ſeen. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers is, to take off the ſhooe, and cut away ſo much of the ſhooe on that ſide where the ſorrance is, as the ſhooe being immediately put on again, all the whole rift may be uncovered ; then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a Rowel of Tow dipt in Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole ; and the rift being cloſed in the top, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart that place to the intent that the hoof may ſhoot all whole downward ; and when the horſe goeth upright ride him either with no other ſhooe than this, or elſe with ſuch a ſhooe as may bear in every part but only upon the falſe quarter untill the hoof be hardned. Others uſe to anoint it once a day with Sheep-Suet and oyl mixt together, and that will cloſe the rift.

Others uſe to cut away the old corrupt hoof, and then take ſeven whites of Eggs, the powder of Incenſe, of unſlackt Lime, of Maſtick, of Verdigreaſe, and of Salt, of each three ounces ; mix them well together, then dip in as much hurds as will cover the ſore-hoof, lay it on, and then about it lay Swines greaſe an inch thick, and likewiſe below it alſo : Bind this on in ſuch ſort that it may remain unſtirred a fortnight, then renew it ſo again, and it will make perfect his hoof. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the falſe quarter, and thereby cauſeth the horſe to halt, then you ſhall lay your finger upon it, and if the horſe ſhrink thereat, then it is ripe ; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter,

matter, then lay on horſe dung, Oyl, Salt, and Vinegar mixt together, Plaiſter-wiſe, and that will heal it, and make the hoof good; yet however, you muſt have care in ſhooing him till his hoofs be hardned, as is before ſhewed you.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of Horſe that is hipped, or hurt in the hips.

A Horſe is ſaid to be hipped, when either by ſtrain, blow, or other accident, the hip-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a ſorrance as hard to be cured as any whatſoever; for if it be not taken even at the firſt inſtant, there will grow within the pot of the huckle bone, ſuch a thick hard ſubſtance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly uncurable. The ſigns to know the ſorrance are, the horſe will halt much, and go ſide-long, and will trail his Legs a little after him; the ſore hip alſo will be lower than the other and the fleſh will fall away on the ſide of his Buttock. The cure is, according to the beſt Farriers, if you take him in good time, firſt to caſt him on his Back, and then having a ſtrong Paſtorn on his grieved Leg, with a Rope draw that Leg upright, and with your hands on each ſide his thigh bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let him down gently, and ſo ſuffer him to riſe with all meekneſs; then go with him into the Stable, and there charge all his hip and Back with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on warm, and then ſome flox of his own colour to be clapped upon the ſame, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs until he go upright.

☞ But if the Horſe be not hipped, but only hurt in the hip, and that newly, then firſt take of Oyl de Bay, Dialthea, of Nerve Oyl, and of Swines greaſe, of each half a pound; melt them all together, ſtirring them continually until they be thoughly mingled together, then anoint the ſore place therewith againſt the hair, every day once the ſpace of a fortnight, and make the Oyntment ſink well into the fleſh, by holding a hot Bar of Iron over the place anointed, weaving your hand to and fro till the oyntment be entred into the skin: and if at the fortnights end you ſee the horſe not any thing amended, then ſlit a hole downward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole ſo wide, as you may eaſily thruſt in a rowel with your finger; and then with a Cornet and a quill blow the skin from the fleſh above the bone, and round about

the

the ſame, ſo broad as the Rowel may lye flat and plain within the skin and the fleſh: and this Rowel will be made of ſoft Calves Leather, with a hole in the midſt, and a thread tied unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanſe it, or the hole; and if the rowel be roled about with flax faſt tyed on, and anointed with the Oyntment under written, it will draw ſo much the more.

Now you muſt thruſt in your rowel firſt double, and then ſpread it abroad with your finger: that done, tent it with a good large tent of flax dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together and made warm, and cleanſe the hole and the rowel every day once; and alſo renew the tent for the ſpace of a fortnight, and before you dreſs him, cauſe him every day to be led up and down a foot pace a quarter of an Hour, to make the humours come down; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with the ſame Salve, making the tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until it be whole: and ſo ſoon as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw croſs lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip bone, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the very midſt thereof, and burn him no deeper but as the skin may look yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his buttocks with this charge. Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, and of Tar half a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, ſpread it on with a Clout tied in a riven ſtick, and then clap on a few flox of the horſes colour, and if it be in Summer, let the horſe run to graſs a while, for the more he travelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Of ſtifling, and hurts in the ſtifle.

THat Horſe is ſaid to be ſtifled, when the ſtifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying between the nether end of the thigh bone, and the upper end of the great hough-bone of the hinder Leg, is by any ſtrain, ſtroke, ſlip, or ſuch like, thruſt out of his right place; but if the ſtifling bone be not removed nor looſned, and yet the horſe halteth by means of ſome grief in that place, then we ſay the horſe is hurt in the ſtifle, and not ſtifled, The ſigns are theſe; If the horſe be ſtifled, the ſtifle-bone will ſtick out more of the one ſide than of the other, and it is apparent to the

eye

eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his toe.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to thrust two round pins cross the stifling bone, through the skin, in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight, but the pins would not be any thing near so big, nor so long, because the stifling bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the Stable, let him have a pastorn and a ring upon his sore Leg, and thereunto fasten a Cord, which Cord must go about his neck, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his sore Leg more forward than the other to keep the bone from starting out: But this Cure is foul and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, use only to set a patten shooe upon his sound Foot, and so turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame Foot, and that straining of it will in a day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the stifling bone into his true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten-shooe, then you shall take either a plain surfingle, or any other broad binding web that will go three or four times about the horses Leg, and with it you shall garter up the Horses sound Leg three fingers above the hamm, even upon his main great sinew, so strait as your self and another man can draw it: and then turn the horse abroad where he may go up and down and in eight and forty hours the horse will be found as ever he was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up with fresh Butter, for it will be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen unto your horse in your travail, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these Cures, then you shall take your horse either to some deep Pond, or deep River that hath easie going in and out, and there swim him up and down a dozen turns; which done, you may after travail him at your Pleasure: for the more he is laboured the sounder he will go. Now if your horse be not stifled, but only hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe or some strain, then the bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will be much swelled. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to make a little slit in his skin, a handful below the sore place, and then with a quil blow all the skin from the flesh upwards, and then with your hand press out the wind again, and then thrust in a rowel of Horse-hair, from the first slit to the upper part of the stifle-bone:

this

this done, take a pottle of old piſs and boyl it to a quart, and cleanſe it well; then take a handful of Mallows, and half a pint of Sallet-oyl, and add them to the piſs, and then boyl them well together: then bath all the ſore place therewith every day once, the ſpace of ſeven or eight days, and let him not ſtir out of the ſtable during the cure, and in twenty one days he will be ſound.

Other Farriers uſe only to take a pound of Bole-armeny, a quart of red wine Vinegar, ſix Eggs beaten, ſhells and all, two penny-worth of Engliſh honey, and as much Venice Turpentine, one quart of flower, and one good handful of Bay-ſalt; put all theſe in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them cloſe one night, and the next day anoint the ſore place with ſome of it, and thus dreſſing it once aday the ſpace of nine days, it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the bone Spaven, or dry Spaven.

THe bone Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a hard knob as big as a Walnut, growing in the ſide of the hoof hard under the joynt near unto the Maſter-vein; it groweth at the firſt like a tender griſtle, and by proceſs of time, it cometh to be a hard bone, and cauſeth the Horſe to halt much. This ſorrance will come ſometimes by nature or deſcent, as when either the Sire or Dam of the Horſe have had the ſame diſeaſe; and ſometimes (which is moſt generally) it cometh when a Horſe is Laboured too young; for a Horſe in that part of his hinder Leg hath ſmall bones knit altogether upon one cluſter, which being preſſed before they be naturally hardened, cannot chuſe but thruſt forth theſe unnatural excretions. Other whiles it proceedeth from extream labour and heat, diſſolving humours which do deſcend through the Maſter-vein, continually feeding that place with evil Nutriment, and cauſes the place to ſwell, which ſwelling in continuance of time becometh ſo hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone Spaven. The ſigns are the apparent ſight of the ſorrance; and truly for my own part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard abſolutely to cure it, yet that the eye-ſore may be taken away, and the halting much eaſed, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: Firſt

slit the skin just over the head of the Spaven or Excretion, and open it with a Croner, and in any case have a care that you touch not the master-vain, but put it by: then with your Launcet lay the Spaven all bare, then with a fine Chizel about a quarter of an inch broad, or a little more, strike off the dead of the Spaven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bignes of a Spaven: then take two penny-weight of Verdigreale beaten to fine powder, and two penny-weight of Nerve-oyl, and beat them all well together: then laying some of it upon fine Lint, lay it upon the Spaven; then lay dry lint betwixt the Medicine and the vein, that the Medicine may not touch the vein; then lay a plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hogs grease molten together, all over the hough, both to comfort the joynt, and to keep in the Medicine. And thus dress him the space of three days, and it will cleanse away the Spaven even to the bottom; at the end of three days you shall wash away the corrosive and the matter, either with Tanners water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that Salve thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaister of Diaculum, and lay it upon a Linnen cloath and lay that plaister upon the Spaven, renewing it every day once for the space of seven days, and it will heal him up.

Others of the old Farriers use, first to wash the Spaven with warm water, and shave off the hair so far as the Spaven extendeth, and then scarrifie the place and make it bleed: then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium half a spoonful; beat them into powder, and boyl them together with a little Oyl de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the sore, and let all his tail be tied up from wiping away the Medicine; and then within half an hour after set him up in the stable, and tie him so as he may not lie down all that night, for fear of rubbing off the Medicine; and the next day anoint it with fresh Butter, continuing thus to do every day once the space of five or six days; and when the hair is grown again, draw the sore place with an hot Iron in this sort, just upon the Spaven: then take another hot Iron like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the point and thrust it in at the neather end of the middle line, and so upward betwixt the skin and the flesh, an inch and an half, and then tent it with a little Hogs grease and Turpentine molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once the space of nine days; provided that first immediately after his burning, you take up the master-vein, suffering him to bleed a little

from

from above, then with a red silk tie the upper end of the vein, and leave the neather end open, to the intent that he may bleed from beneath until it cease of it self; and this will diminish the Spaven, but not take it clean away.

Now there be other Farriers which use it after they burnt it in manner aforesaid, and taken up the master-vein, to anoint it with fresh Butter, till the burning begin to scale; and then take of Sage, or Nettles, of each a handful, and boyl them with four handfuls of Mallows in fair water, and then put thereto a little Butter, and with that bath him every day once for three or four days till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his feet during the Cure.

Others use to prick the Spaven with a sharp pointed knife, then take a piece of candle, and lay a piece of brown paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after anoint it with Butter: Others use first to prick the Spaven well, then to lay it upon for three or four days together, every day mans-dung: after that, lay to it *Galbanum* till the sore-matter and rheum, and the humour come forth: then wash it with Urine, and lastly, heal it up with Oyl and Honey boyled together, for that will bring on the hair.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the surest and the cleanest way to take the bone Spaven quite away, if it be used with discretion and care, is to take of *Unguentum Apostolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a little quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mix them well together: then after you have cast your Horse, make a slit just the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the master-vein, then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, with a sharp instrument scale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint just so big as the excretion or bone Spaven is: then spreading some of the Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the master-vein from the corrosive: then lay the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogs grease before spoken, round about his hoof, and so let him rest four and twenty hours: then take away all that medicine, and scaling the bone a little, if you find the corrosive have not gone deep enough, then dress it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of Deers suet, and of Wax, of each a like quantity, and mix and melt them well together, then dress the sore place therewith being warmed,

and lint or tow dipt therein, and within a day or two you ſhall ſee the whole cruſt of the Spaven come clean away, then may you with the ſame Salve, heal up the wound; and this hath never failed me in any practice. Alſo underſtand that whatſoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the Spaven alſo.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of the blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.

THe blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one diſeaſe) is a ſoft ſwelling growing on both ſides the hoof, and ſeems as though it went through the hoof, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the moſt part the ſwelling on the inſide (becauſe it is fed continually of the maſter-vein) is greater than the ſwelling on the out-ſide. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy humour, and not ſo viſcous and ſlimy, as the other Spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much eaſier cure than the other. The ſigns thereof are like the other the apparent ſight thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: Firſt, waſh the Spaven with warm water, and then dreſs it with Canthorides and Euforbium, in ſuch ſort as was at large ſhewed in the former Chapter; only you ſhall not boyl them, but only mix them together, and dreſs the ſore therewith two days together: then anoint it with Butter, and after burn it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is ſhewed alſo in the former Chapter; but you ſhall by no means tent it: then immediately you ſhall take up the maſter-vein, and let it bleed, as was ſhewed before; and then for the ſpace of nine days, anoint him every day once with Butter, until the burning begin to ſcale, and then waſh it with this bath. Take of Mallows three handfuls, of Sage one handful, and as much of red Nettles; boyl them in water until they be ſoft, then put thereto a little freſh Butter, and bath the place every day once for the ſpace of three or four days, and until the burning be whole, let the Horſe come in no wet.

Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſhaved off the hair, and taken up the vein, to take of Muſtard-ſeed, of the great Mallow root, and of Ox-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as

will

will mix them together like a Salve, then beat them all well together and make thereof a ſoft plaiſter, or elſe an ointment, and lay it upon the Spaven; change it evening and morning, and bind it in ſuch ſort to the ſorrance with ſome piece of cloth, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the Spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a Plaiſter of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, until it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers uſe unto this former medicine to add Oyl de bay, Turpentine, and Bole-armeny.

And other Farriers uſe but only to take up the vein, both above and below the Spaven, and ſuffering it to bleed well; then to knit up the vein, and anoint it with Butter till it be whole, and it will conſume the Spaven.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

A moſt rare and well approved Medicine, which will take away any blood ſpaven whatſoever.

AFter you have taken up the vein, knit it faſt above, and then cut it in ſunder, you ſhall take of Lynſeed two or three handfuls, and bruiſe it well in a morter, then mix it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a frying pan, heat it well upon the fire, and very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the Speven like a byle to impoſtumation, and to break it, then after it hath run aday or two, you ſhall only apply to the ſore a plaiſter of Pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Sellender.

THe Sellender is a certain kind of dry ſcab, growing in the very bent of the ham of the hinder Leg; and it extendeth out into ill-favoured chaps or chinks, which if it be not prevented by medicine, it will fret in ſunder the ſinews of the hoof: It is in all points like unto a Mallander, and it proceedeth from the ſelf like cauſes, and requireth the ſelf ſame cures; therefore look into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatſoever you find there, that will cure the Mallander, the ſame will alſo cure the Sellender.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Hough Bonny.

THe Hough Bonny is a round ſwelling like a Paris bak, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the hoof, and cometh ever of ſome ſtripe or bruiſe; but eſpecially when he beateth his hoof either againſt the poſt which ſtandeth behind him, at the neather end of his ſtall, or againſt the bar which doth divide him from another Horſe, which many Rammiſh Jades will do, when they ſeek to ſtrike at the Horſe which ſtandeth next them.

Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron ſomewhat ſharp at the end, like a good big bodkin, and let it be ſomewhat bending at the point; then holding the fore with your left hand, pulling it ſomewhat from the ſinews pierce it with the Iron, being firſt made red-hot, thruſting it beneath in the bottom, and ſo upward into the jelly, to the intent that the ſame jelly may iſſue downward out of the hole: and having thruſt out all the jelly, tent the hole with a tent of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together; and alſo anoint the out-ſide with Hogs greaſe made warm, renewing it every day once until the hole be ready to cloſe up, making the tent every day leſſer and leſſer until it be whole. Now for my own part both for this ſorrance, or any other bruiſe in this part, I have found this cure ever the beſt: Firſt, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or elſe with a plaiſter of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower boyled together, to ripen the ſwelling, and bring it to putrifaction, or elſe to drive the ſwelling away, but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the loweſt part of the ſoftneſs, with a thin hot Iron, and ſo let out the matter: then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers ſuet, and Wax, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a plaiſter of the ſame Salve over it, to hold in the tent until it be perfectly well.

CHAP. XC.

Of the Curb.

A Curb is a long ſwelling a little beneath the Elbow of the hoof of the great ſinew behind, hard above the top of the horn, which cauſeth the Horſe to halt after a little labour: for the more his ſinew is ſtrained, the greater is his pain, and the more he hath reſt, the leſſer is his grief; it cometh as the Spavens come, either from deſcent, or from great burthens when the Horſe is young, or elſe from ſome ſtrain or wrench. The ſigns are the apparent view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is firſt to ſhave off the hair, then prick it with a fleam in three or four places, and for three or four days together, lay unto it twice aday mans dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewiſe twice aday until it rot, and that the matter doth Iſſue forth; then waſh it with Urine: and laſtly, heal it up with Honey and Oyl boyled together, renewing the ſame twice aday till the Curb be gone; and in any caſe let all your Salves be applyed warm and new made, and if you make an Iſſue with a hot Iron in the bottom of the Curb, it will not do amiſs.

Others uſe to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the ſore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warm, vent it in ſix or ſeven places: then take a ſpoonful of Salt, half a ſpoonful of Nerve-oyl, and a penny-weight of Verdigreaſe, and the white of an Egg; mix theſe well together, and dipping flax in the ſame, lay it to the Curb, and this in few dreſſings will take it away. Other Farriers uſe to chafe and rub the Curb well with their hands: then take red Wall-wort leaves, and Burrage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curb, renewing it once aday for a ſeven-night together. Others uſe to ſlit the Curb all the length, then take a piece of Linnen cloth, and wet it in wine made warm: then ſtrow Verdigreaſe thereupon, and bind it to the ſore, renewing it once aday until the Curb be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of Wine lees a pint, of Cummin half an ounce, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and ſtir them well together; and being made warm, charge the ſore place therewith, renewing it every day once the ſpace of three or four days, and when the ſwelling is almoſt gone,

then

then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin, in this sort, and cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on good and warm, and clap thereon some flox of the Horses color, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not until they fall away of themselves; and for the space of nine days let the Horse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this last recited Salve, will add Tar, and it is not amiss, only it will not stick so well.

Now for mine own part, I have ever found this practice the best.

First, with a broad incle to bind the hoof strait a little about the cod: then with a smooth hazel stick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curb: then with a fleam strike it as deep as you can in two or three places of the Curb: then thrust out the corrupt blood; and after upon the point of your knife, put into every hole as deep as you can thrust it, the quantity of two Barly corns of white Mercury, and so let the Horse rest four and twenty hours after; then after, only anoint the sore place with hot molten Butter till it be whole, once a day at the least. And likewise here understand, that whatsoever cureth the splint or Spaven, that cureth the Curb also.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the pains.

THe Pains is a certain Ulcerous scab growing in the Pastorns of a Horse, betwixt the fetlock and the heel, full of fretting matterish water, and cometh only for want of good rubbing and clean dressing, after the Horse hath been journeyed in the Winter-ways, by means whereof the sand and durt remaining in the hair, fretteth the skin and flesh, and so breaketh to a scab; and therefore your Frisons, and Flanders Horses and Mares, which are now so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this Disease, if the Keeper be not much the more careful. The signs hereof are, his Leg, will be swoln and hot, the scab will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the Scab; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the hair, and breed scabs where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of Turpentine, Hogs grease, Hony and black Sope, of each a like quantity,

and

and having molten them upon a ſoft fire, take it off, and put in a little Bole-armeny, finely beaten into powder; then work all theſe things well together with a ſtick in your right hand and a diſh of Wheat-flower by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an Oyntment or ſoft Salve: then ſpread it upon a Linnen cloath, as big as the ſore, having firſt cut away the hair, and made the ſore raw; apply to the ſalve, and dreſs him thus once aday until it be whole.

This Medicine is well approved to cure all ſorts of Pain, Scratches, Mouldy heels, or any other skirvy ſcalls whatſoever, that may breed in Horſes Legs or heels, whether they come by means of evil humours, or for lack of good dreſſing or clean keeping, whether they be mattry or filthy running ſores, or elſe dry ſcabs. Others of the old Farriers uſe for this ſorrance to take a pint of red wine lees, and a handful of Wheat-bran, a ſaucer full of Honey, and half a pound of the powder of powdred Beef burnt, and as much of Bark duſt, and half a pound of Allom, and a quarter of a pound of Swines greaſe, and half a handful of Vervine: beat all theſe together in a Morter, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it, letting it abide there the ſpace of three days: and in once or twice thus dreſſing him, it will make him ſound; yēt ſome hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron ſear the great vein over-thwart, a handful above the fetlock, and then put a ſpoonful of Tar, a ſpoonful of Butter, and a ſpoonful of Hóney, and warming them well together, anoint the vein therewith every day till the cure be perfected, and it is much available.

Other Farriers uſe, firſt to waſh all the Horſes Paſtorns with Butter and Beer well warmed together, and then his Leg being ſomewhat dryed, clip away all the hair that doth annoy the ſore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogs greaſe, and of Honey, of each like quantity; mingle them well together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bole-armeny, the yolks of two Eggs, and as much wheat-flower as will thicken the things afore-ſaid, and ſo by long working it make it like a plaiſter; then ſpread it upon the Linnen cloath, and lap it round about the Horſes Paſtorn, and bind it faſt on with a rowler, renewing it once aday till the Horſe be whole; and in no wiſe let the Horſe come in any wet during the cure. Others uſe firſt to chafe the ſore place with a hay-rope, or with a hair cloath, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little ſtrong Muſtard,

Bean-flower, and freſh greaſe, with a little Fenugreek; then mix all together in a diſh, and make thereof a Salve, and therewith anoint the ſore, untill it leave mattering: then take honey, the white of an Egg, and freſh Butter; mix them together, and anoint the ſore place therewith untill it be whole. Others uſe only to bath the ſore with Beef broth, and then for four or five days after, to anoint it with Sope, or elſe firſt to plunge his feet in ſcalding water twice or thrice: and then bath the ſore in ſcalding water: then have ready a hard roſted Egg, cleave it in the mid'ſt, and lapp it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; uſe this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

☞ Others uſe to take Pepper, Garlick ſtampt, Coleworts, and old Hogs greaſe, of each a like quantity, then beat them in a morter till they be come to a Salve, and ſo lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

☞ Others uſe firſt to take up the ſhackle-veins on both ſides, then take the ſoft row of a red herring, and muſtard, and black ſope, and when they are well beaten together, boyl them in Vinegar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the ſore; this will cure the pains, albeit you do not take up the ſhackle veins. If you cannot readily get this Salve, you may take Butter and Honey molten together; and it will help them, or elſe take a pound of Hogs greaſe, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, two ounces of muſtard, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of Engliſh wax, one ounce of Arſnick, two ounces of red Lead, and half a pint of Vinegar; boyl all theſe together and make an ointment of it: then having clipt and made the ſore all bare, apply the medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take five ounces of Orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigreaſe, half an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitriol made into powder, the juyce of four citrons, the whites of two Eggs, with three ounces of Sallet oyl; let all theſe be very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the ſore, and it will not only heal this diſeaſe, but any ſalt humour whatſoever, Mingle with ſoft greaſe, Vinegar, Honey, Orpiment, and Arſenick; but let Arſnick be the leaſt, and it will cure this diſeaſe, ſo will alſo white Wax, Turpentine and Camphire mixt together. Others uſe to take an hundred black Snails in the month of May, ſlit them, and put them in a bag with a pint of Bay ſalt, then hang them over

the

the fire, with a Veſſel ſet under to receive what drops from them, and keep it in a cloſe glaſs: then anoint the ſore every day therewith, and it will heal this ſorrance. Others take Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and ſuet of a He-goat, of each alike, alſo boyl them with a ſoft fire and ſtir it well: when it waxeth red, add of Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each a like quantity made into powder, ſtirring it till it be red and thick: then being warm, anoint the ſore place therewith once a day, after it hath been waſhed with warm water: and this not only helps the pains, but alſo any ſorrance whatſoever of like nature about the Legs.

Alſo green Copperas and Roch allom, of each half a pound, and a handful of Bay-ſalt boyled in a gallon of running water, will heal it; or elſe unto it add a pint of Honey, and boyl it over again, and it will be the better; then when you have anointed the ſore therewith, rub it with the powder of Glaſs, Muſtard and Vinegar mixed together, and afterward skin it with Cream, and the inner rind of Elder beaten to a ſalve, which muſt be applied to the ſore twice a day at the leaſt.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Mules or Kibe-Heels.

THeſe Mules, or Kybed heels, are certain dry ſcabs or chaps breeding behind upon the heels of a Horſe, & ſo a little inward even to the Fetlock, in long chaps and chinks; it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet marriſh grounds, or elſe from unclean and negligent keeping, in ſuch manner as the Pains are bred; this ſorrance will make the Horſes Leg to ſwell much, eſpecially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and he will go ſtifly, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you ſhall underſtand, that whatſoever healeth the Pains, the ſame will in like ſort heal thoſe Kybed heels; yet for more particularity, you ſhall know, that the old Farriers did uſe for this ſorrance, if they took it at the beginning, but only to anoint it for two or three days with Sope, and then after to waſh it with ſtrong Urine, or Beef-broth till it were whole; but if it were of any long continuance, then firſt to cut away the hair, and lay the ſore open and plain; then take two ounces of unſlaked Lime, one ounce

of Sope, and the white of an Egg, or elſe an ounce of unſlaked Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soot, and mingling them with ſtrong Vinegar, anoint the ſore therewith, and it will heal and kill them.

Other Farriers uſe to calcinate Tartar, and diſſolve it to water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Sope like an oyntment, and then dreſs the ſore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Pains, or Scratches whatſoever. If you take the juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of theſe evil humours.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of Wind-galls.

THe Wind-gall is a little Bleb or Bladder full of corupt jelly, and like the white of an Egg growing on each ſide of the Maſter-ſinew of the Leg, hard above the Paſtorn. Now of them ſome will be big, and ſome will be little, and there will be ſometimes more than one or two of a cluſter, and they are ſo painful, eſpecially in the Summer ſeaſon, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that the Horſe is not able to travel, but halteth down-right; they proceed commonly from extream labour in the Summert-ime upon hard Ways, whereby the humours being diſſolved, do flow and reſort into the hollow places about the nether joynts, which are moſt beaten and feebled with travel, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skin like a bladder; they are moſt apparent to be ſeen and felt.

The cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a Knife, and open it in the length of a Bean, piercing no further into it than through the skin of the bladder, and then thruſt out the Jelly, which as I ſaid before, will be like the white of an Egg; then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much Oyl de Bay as a good Nut, and mixing them together, make a Plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore, and in two or three days it will heal it. Others of the old Farriers dreſs it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in ſuch ſort as is ſhewed for the taking away of the ſplent; but if that will not ſerve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the wind-gall in this ſort: then to open the middle Lane with a Launcet, the length of a Bean,

and

and thruſt out the jelly; then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few ſtox, and that will take it clean away. Other Farriers uſe to take up the Maſter-veins on the inſide of his Legs, and ſuffer him only to bleed from below: Then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaiſter of wine lees and Wheat flower mingled together, and rowl it with a long rowler; dreſs him in this ſort once a day till it be whole.

Others uſe to open the skin and put out the jelly; then take a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, a ſpoonful of Turpentine, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an ounce of red Lead, boyl them together till it come to a ſalve; then lay it to the Windgal, and it will cure it; or elſe, after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, Sheeps Suet, and Brimſtone, of each alike, and melt them together, and lay that upon the Windgall, ſo it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the roots of Cummin, and beat them well with a little Salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall; or elſe anoint them with the juice of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them, or elſe ground-ivy and Worm-wood with the roots ſod in Wine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white wax, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swines Greaſe, two ounces of Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, five ounces of oyl de Bay; mix all theſe well together, and ſtrain them; then rub them into the Wind-gall, by holding a hot bar of Iron againſt the Oyntment and it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, it is thus: Firſt, ſeeth the Eggs hard, then ſtamp them, and ſeeth them in an earthen pot with a ſoft fire, and ſo ſtrain them. Now this medicine will not only heal the Windgall, but the Ring-bone alſo, it is very good for the abating of the Wind-gall, and for making the medicine to work the better, to let the Horſe ſtand in a cold running ſtream an hour, morning and evening. The ſcum of the four Salts ſod in mans Urine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take it away.

There be others which take a pottle of Vinegar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of Galls, and as much of the herb Molleyn ſtamped ſmall, mingle theſe well together, and put them into a pot, then every day therewith bath the Wind-gall; and in three weeks it will dry them clean up; it will alſo take away a Curb, or a Spaven, or a ring-bone, if you take them at the breeding. Other

ther Farriers take of Sevil oyl and Brimston, of each a like quantity, and seeth them in mans Urine, and stir them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Sope, to keep the hair from scalding off; then bath the Wind-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in; then anoint it above with Nerve-Oyl, and Oyl de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot Bar of Iron, or a hot Firepan, to sink into the flesh, and in three days it will dry up any Wind-gall.

☞ Now for mine own part, the best Medicine I have found in my practice for this Sorrance, and the easiest, is, with a fine Launcet to open the Wind-gall, making the hole no bigger than that the jelly may come forth; then having thrust it clean forth, lap a wollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylors hot pressing Iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath suck in all the moisture from the Wind-gall, and that the Wind-gall is dry; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and of Mastick, of each a like quantity, and being very hot, daub it all over the Wind-gall; then clap good store of flax of the colour of the Horse upon it, and so let the Horse rest or run at grass till the Plaister fall off by its own accord, and be sure the Wind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a Rule, that by no means you use to a Wind-gall, either Arsenick, or Resalgar; for commonly then the Wind-gall will come again; neither must you burn much; nor make any great incision: For any of these will turn the soft substance of the Wind-gall to hardness, and then the Horse will be lame without cure.

CHAP. XCIV.

Of a Strain in the Pastorn joynt, or Fet-lock.

A Horse may be strained in the Fetlock, or Pastorn-joynt, either by some wrench in the Stable, when the Planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some stone, or upon some Cartrut, as he travelleth by the way. The signs whereof be these; The joynt will be swoln and sore, and the Horse will halt; and the Cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of Stale Urine, and seeth it till the some arise; then strain it, and put thereto a handful of Tansie, and a handful of Mallows, and a saucerful of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps suet; then set it on

the

the fire, and ſeeth them all together till the herbs be ſodden ſoft; and then being very hot, lay this Pultus to the joynt, and cover it over with a blew cloath; and in three times dreſſing it will help the ſtrain.

Other Farriers take of Dialthea half a pound, and as much Nerve oyl, mingle them well together, and anoint the ſore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands, that the Oyntment may enter in, continuing ſo to do every day once untill the Oyntment be all ſpent, and let the Horſe reſt; but if this will not prevail, then they will uſe cantharides, as in caſe of the ſplint; but I do not hold that cure convenient, becauſe it will make a double grief. Therefore I had rather you ſhould take Pompilion, Nerve Oyl, and black Sope, of each alike, and heat them hot on the fire, and then anoint the ſore place therewith, and it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. XCV.

To remedy any manner of halting that cometh by Strain, Stroak, or any other accident.

NOw foraſmuch as halting is ſuch a general Sorrance amongſt Horſes, that not any man that is Maſter of a Horſe, but even in his ſmalleſt travel, is at one time or other vexed with the ſame, I will here before, I do proceed any further, ſet you down certain general Receits ſelected and culled out of the private practice and experiments of the beſt Farriers in Chriſtendom, of which I may give the bolder teſtimony, becauſe I have made practice of their vertues.

If then your Horſe have taken any halt, either by ſtifneſs of Sinews, Strain, Wrench, Stroak, or any other accident, if the grief be in his Leg, you ſhall take Smallage, Oxe-eye, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together, and boyl it in mens Urine, and bath all the Leg therewith; then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, rowl up his Leg, and he will be able to travel the next day.

If you ſeeth a pound of black Sope in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it look like Tar, and anoint the Leg therewith, it will ſupple the ſinews, and bring them to their true courſe. If you waſh his Limbs with the grounds of Beer or Ale made warm, and then rope them up with Hay-ropes wet in the ſame, it will recover a ſtrain. If you

take

take of the flower of Linseed, of Turpentine and Life-honey, of each alike, and boyl them with white wine until they be thick like unto an Oyntment; then spread it on a cloath, and lay it to the grief, and it will take away any ache or pain in the sinews; likewise a Plaister of wine lees and wheatflower, or a Plaister of black Sope and Boars grease will do the like.

☞ If you mix Nerve Oyl, Oyl de Bay, and *Aquavita* together, and warm it, and chafe it in, and upon, and about the strain, it will take the anguish quite away. If the grief be in the shoulder, or the hinder Leg, then burn him upon the very joynt, by taking up the skin with a pair of pinsons, and thrust the skin through with a hot Iron over-thwart; and if this cure him not, then his pain is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which must then be rowelled. If the grief be in the shoulder, or in the hip or else-where, then let him blood, and saving the blood, mix therewith the powder of Frankincense, and anoint the Horse with the same. If the grief be only in the sinews, then take the Plaister called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new Wax, Pitch and Turpentine mixed together, or else take the yolks of two Eggs, an ounce of Frankincense, and a little bran, and beat them well together, and lay it to the pain. If the grief do proceed from a hot cause, then let the Horse blood, and with that blood mix Vinegar and Oyl, and anoint him, and chafe it well. But if it proceed from a cold cause, then let him bleed a little, and with Figs soaked a day in warm water, and as much Mustard-seed, make a Plaister, and lay it to the grief. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the Horse blood, and with that blood mingle strong Vinegar, Eggs, shells and all, three ounces of *Sanguis Draconis*, four of bole-armeny, and five of Wheat meal, and daub it all over the sore place. If the grief be in the shoulder, and the skin broken, take Galls of Soria punned, and mingle them with Honey, and lay it to the sore. If his pain come from the stifness of his joynts, take a pound of black Sope, and boyl it in a quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the joynts. If the joynts be swelled, then take Rozen, Pitch, Turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis* molten together, and lay it to the swelling warm, and it will either take away the swelling, or else ripen it and make it run. If you take of the Oyl of Camomile, Oyl of Dill, Butter and Agrippa, of each alike quantity; or else make a Plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, half an ounce of Verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stag; or bath the

Horse

Horſe with warm water, wherein Roſemary hath been ſod, and it will eaſe any pain whatſoever. If the Horſes pain be in his ſhoulder, firſt with a Lancet prick the Skin through between the ſpade bone and the marrow bone; then putting in a quill, blow the Skin from the fleſh, even all about; then thruſting out the wind with your hand, put in a Rowel; then take a pottle of ſtale Urine, ſeeth it with a pound of Butter, and as much Swines greaſe, and a handful of Mallows, a handful of Tanſie, a handful of Vervin, a handful of red Nettles, a handful of Southernwood, and a handful of Balm leaves, then beat them all well together, and ſo anoint his ſhoulder therewith, and let him not go forth of the ſtable for ſeven dayes. If his grief be in any nether joint, then take a handful of Laurel-leaves, and of Primroſe leaves, of ground-Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallows, of red Fennel, and of fine Hay, of each of them ſeveral as much; ſeeth them well together, and then let them ſtand fourteen days, then bath the joynt once a day, and bind on the herbs unto it four days together; then after chafe into the joint freſh greaſe and oil mixed together, and it will eaſe all his pain. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about a Horſe be by any flux of humours ſwelled, and grown out of ſhape, whereby the Horſe goeth ſtiff and halteth: then to diſſolve thoſe humours; take Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, the Bark of the Elm tree, and of a Pine, together with Linſeed, and boyling theſe together make a Bath or Pultus thereof, and lay it to the ſick member, and it will diſſolve the humours; and ſo likewiſe will Figs being ſtamped with Salt, and applyed to the ſore.

CHAP. XCVI.

Three Rare and Well-approved Medicines, which will cure any manner of Strain or Swelling whatſoever, be it hard or ſoft, by what accident ſoever it ſhall come.

IF the Strain be newly taken, you ſhall then take Vinegar of the beſt a pint, and of ſweet Butter better than a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire; then with fine Wheat bran, make it into a Pultus upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the ſtrain as the Horſe is able to endure it without ſcalding, and do thus morning and evening till the ſtrain be aſſwaged. But if the ſtrain be of longer continuance, then take Mallows, and Chick-weed, and boyl them either

ing it once a day until it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only anoint the ſore with the whites of Eggs and Sallet-oyl mixed together; and then when the ſore cometh to a ſcab, anoint it with butter being molten until it look brown.

Now for mine own part, the cure which I Principally uſe for this ſorrance, is, to take of wax, of Turpentine, and of Hogs greaſe, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot; then take an ounce of Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogs greaſe; and mix them very well together, and put that into another pot; then when you dreſs the ſore, take of the firſt ſalve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mix them well together in the palm of your hand, anoint all the ſore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CI.

Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayls.

THe Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayls, being all but one ſorrance, are long, ſcabby and dry chaps or rifts, growing right up and down, and overthwart on the hind Legs, juſt from the Fetlock unto the end of the Curb; and as the pains are under the Fetlock, ſo the Scratches are above the Fetlock, and do proceed either from dry melancholy humours ingendred by outward filth, or elſe by fuming of the Horſes dung, lying either near or under him. The ſigns are both the apparent ſight and the eaſie feeling of the ſame, beſide the ſtaring, dividing, and curling of the hair, as alſo that the ſorrance will ſtink much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of thoſe former Medicines whatſoever, which are already recited, either for the Pains or Mules; yet for your more particular underſtanding, you ſhall know, theſe Medicines are moſt proper for this ſorrance: Firſt, you ſhall ſhave away the hair, and make the ſore raw; then take of Turpentine half a pound, of Honey half a pint, of Hogs greaſe half a quartern, and three yolks of Eggs, and of Bole-armeny a quarten beaten into powder, of Bean flower half a pint; mix all theſe well together, and mak a ſalve thereof, and then with your finger anoint all the ſore place therewith, and let the Horſe come in no wet during the cure.

☞ Other Farriers uſe (and ſure it is the better practice) firſt after they

they have ſhaved away the hair, and laid the ſore raw, to waſh it well with old Urine very warm, then take black Sope, Muſtard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith ſome of an Ox gall; then ſtir them well together, and chafe and rub the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloath, ſo uſe it once a day till it be whole; then after anoint it with Neats-foot Oyl to ſupple the ſinews again. Others uſe to take the fineſt hay, and burn it to aſhes upon a fair board, then mix it with Neats-foot Oyl and make a Salve thereof; then rub the ſores until they bleed; and then anoint them with the ſaid ſalve, and rope his Legs, and keep them from wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore with old Stale, then to take a quantity of ſtrong Muſtard, Vinegar, gray-Sope, Barrows greaſe and ſome Quick-ſilver; mix them together, and therewith anoint the ſore.

Other Farriers take a quantity of unſlaked Lime, half ſo much black Sope, and ſo much of ſtrong Vinegar as ſhall ſuffice to make it like an Ointment; then the hair being cut away, and the ſore waſhed with Urine, lay to this Ointment, renewing it not the ſpace of two days, and it will kill the ſorrance; then waſh the place once or twice with warm wine; then after heal it with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together; and in no wiſe let the Horſe come in any wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore place with Urine, and clipt away the hair, and made the wound raw, to take Butter and Tar, of each alike, and boyling them together, anoint all the ſore place therewith every day till it be whole.

Others take of Honey and Verdigreaſe of each alike, and boyl them together until half be conſumed, and then anoint the ſore therewith once a day until it be whole. Others of our later Farriers uſe either to ſhave off the hair, or ſcald it off with Orpiment and unſlaked Lime boyled in ſtrong lye; then waſh it with warm Vinegar or white wine, then when it is dry anoint it with this Ointment.

Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigreaſe three ounces, of Soot five ounces, a little unſlakt Lime, and of Honey one pound; mingle them all well together upon a ſoft fire, and being made like an ointment, uſe it as aforeſaid once a day to the ſore; or elſe take Honey, Sope, Verdigreaſe, unſlakt Lime and Vinegar, and boyl them with Allom, Galls, and Mail, till it come to a plaiſter, and then apply it unto the ſore; or elſe boyl Sallet oyl, with a little ſuet and ſope, then skim it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce

of

of Quick-silver dissolved, two ounces of Verdigrease, three ounces of unslakt Lime, and one ounce of white Wax: when all these are well mixt together, and made into a Salve, then apply it once a day unto the sore, until it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have shaved the place, to boyl Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together; and apply that to the sore three days together; then take Lard molten Lithargy, Mastick, Verdigrease and Soot mingled together, with Goats milk, and lay it to, renewing it once a day until the sore be healed. The scraping of a panns bottom mixt with the inner pils of Elder, are also good for the scratches; or new mans-dung applyed for five days and after anoint the sore with oil and sope mixt together. Others take of unslakt Lime, the powder of Glass, and of Verdigrease, of each an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce; of Oyl and of fresh grease, of each four ounces; mix all these well together, and apply it to the sore until it be whole: If you take black snails and bur roots and beat them together, it will also help this sorrance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unslakt Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vinegar as will temper it, and so dress the sore until it be whole. Others take Fenugreek and beat it, three oranges cut in pieces, half a pound of Sheeps suet, new Sheeps dung; boyl all these in the ground of good Ale, and then bath the Horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay ropes, and so let him stand three dayes, then bath him so again.

☞ Others take Hogs grease, Sope, Brimstone, Soot, and Honey, boyl them and lay them to cool, you may also add Verdigrease; but before you lay on this ointment, scrape the scabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with Sope, Mustard, and Vinegar mixt together.

CHAP. CII.

A most certain and approved cure for the Scratches.

☞ After you have cut away the hair, rub off the scabs, and wash the sore with old Urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applyed as hot as the Horse can suffer it, Then take the tops and tender buds of Elder, and the green brier Berries, and boyl them in a pottle of new wort, and put thereto good store of Allom, and with

this

this hot, wash the Horses Leg once, twice, or thrice a day; and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. CIII.

Of the Ring-bone.

THe Ring bone is a sorrance, which appeareth above, upon the Cronet of the foot, being a certain hard gristle growing sometimes round about the same. It proceedeth, as some Farriers hold opinion, either from some blow of any Horse, or by striking the Horses foot against some stub or stone, or such like accident: But surely I hold, That it also proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seen many foals foaled with Ring bones on their feet; These Ring bones do breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in process of time becometh a bone. The signs of this sorrance are, the apparent sight of the sorrance, being higher than any part of the corner the staring of the hair, and halting of the Horse.

The cure, according to ancient Farriers, is, first to scarifie the skin above the Ring bone with a Lancet; then take a great Onion and pick out the core; then put into it Verdigrease and unslakt Lime, then cover the hole, and rost the Onion soft, then bruise it in a morter, and so very hot lay it to the ring bone; do thus four days together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the sorrance with warm water, and shave away the hair: then scarifie it lightly with the point of a razor, so as the blood may issue forth; then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as hath been taught for the splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the hair beginneth to grow again, then draw the sore place with a hot drawing Iron in straight lines, from the Pastorn down to the coffin of the hoof, in this manner: and let the edge of the drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a meat knife, and burn him no deeper then that the skin may look yellow: that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon flox of the Horses own colour, and about three days after, lay again some of the last mentioned Plaister. and also new flox upon

on the old, and there let them remain till they fall away of themſelves. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to ſcarifie the ſore with a Lancet till it bleed: then ſtrow upon it the powder of Tartar, and Salt, of each alike mixt together, and bind it ſtrait, then after anoint it with freſh greaſe, or elſe ſoften the Ring bone with the skin of old Bacon, the fat being ſcraped off, that you may ſee through the skin, and laid to after it is ſhaven and made bleed, after launce it, and let out the Ring bone. Others uſe to launce the skin with a Razer, then opening the skin with a Cronet, prick the Ring bone. Laſtly, ſtrow upon it the powder of Vitriol, and bind it on ſo as it may not ſtir in nine days; then thruſt out the matter which is diſſolved. Laſtly, waſh it with Salt, with Urine and Vinegar mixt together. Other Farriers do uſe after they have ſhaved it, to lay unto it a plaiſter made of Bran and Honey, with the young leaves of Worm-wood, Pellitory, and Brank-Urſine mingled with Swines greaſe, and beaten together, and boyled, and uſed as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. This medicine will not only cure the Ring bone, but any other ſwelling whatſoever. Alſo a plaiſter of the leaves of Smallage being beaten to pieces, is not only good for this ſorrance, but for any wind-gal alſo. To waſh a Ring bone continually with ſtrong Vinegar will abate it: or elſe to ſhave away the hair, and take half a Lemmon, and ſprinkle Arſnick thereon, and lay it to the Ring bone, and it will eat away; if twice or thrice aday you bind a hard Egg burning hot unto the Ring bone, it will take it away. Laſtly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with oil of Juniper, Salt and Pepper, and ſo apply it to the Ring bone, it will in a very ſhort ſpace conſume the Ring bone quite away; always provided that you keep the Horſe from any wet during his cure.

CHAP. CIV.

Of hurts on the Cronet, by croſſing one foot upon another.

IF your Horſe by croſſing one foot upon another, chance to wound or hurt the Cronet of his hoof, you ſhall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers firſt waſh it well with white Wine or with warm Urine, and then lay unto it the white of an Egg mixt with Chimney ſoot and ſalt; and that, if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three days dry up the ſore. Other Farriers uſe firſt

to pare or cut away the hoof, that it touch not the hurt, and keep it clean from filth by waſhing it with Urine: then ſeeth two Eggs hard, and take off the ſhells, then preſs them with your hand long, and firſt roſt one hot, and tye it to hard; when that is cold, uſe the other, after make a plaiſter of Soot, Salt and Oyl boyled together, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once aday until it be whole.

CHAP. CV.

A moſt certain and approved cure for any hurt upon the Cronet whatſoever.

TAke of Sope and Salt, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a paſte, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt, and laid it plain, firſt waſh it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and with a cloath dry it, then bind on the mixt Sope and Salt, not renewing it in 24. hours, and thus do (if the wound be great) for 3. or 4. days together: Then, having drawn out all the venom (as this Salve will quickly do) take a ſpoonful or two of Train oyl, and as much Ceruſe, which we call white Lead, and mix it together to a thick Salve, then ſpread that upon the ſore, morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected ſuddenly: for nothing doth dry up ſooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new hoof.

CHAP. CVI.

Of the Crown-ſcab.

THe Crown-ſcab is a ſtinking and filthy ſcab, breeding round about the corners of the hoof, and is a cankerous and painful ſorrance, it cometh oft-times by means that the horſe hath been bred in a fenny mariſh ground, where the cold-ſtricken corrupt humours up to his feet, ingendreth this ſorrance, which is ever more painful in the Winter than in the Summer. The ſigns are, the hairs of the Cronet will be very thin and ſtaring like briſtles, and the Cronets will be always mattering and run on water. Now the cure, according to the opinion of many Farriers, is, to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon ſoot and ſalt beaten together, mingled with greaſe

or ſuet, wax, and pitch molten together, and if the fleſh chance to grow proud, eat it away either with Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, or with the ſcrapings of a Harts horn, or an Ox horn made into fine powder.

☞ Other Farriers uſe to take of Sope, and of Hogs greaſe, of each half a pound, of Bole-armeny a little, of Turpentine a quartern; mix them well together, and make a plaiſter, and bind it faſt on, renewing it every day until it leave running; and then waſh it with ſtrong Vinegar being luke-warm, every day once until the ſore be clean dryed up, and let the Horſe come in no wet until the ſorrance be whole. Others uſe only to bath it continually with old ſtale ſod with Salt, and that will dry up the humour and heal it.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the Quitter-bone.

THe Quitter-bone is a hard round ſwelling upon the Cronet of the hoof betwixt the heel and the quarter, and groweth moſt commonly on the inſide of the foot, it breeds moſt commonly by means of Gravel gathered underneath the ſhoo, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward, or elſe it cometh by the cloying or pricking of ſome nail driven by an ignorant Smith, the anguiſh whereof looſeneth the Griſtle, and ſo breedeth evil humours whereof the Quitterbone ſpringeth: the ſigns are, the Horſe will halt much, and the ſwelling is apparent to the eye, which in four or five days cometh to a head, and will break out with matter at a little deep hole like a Fiſtula; and ſurely than this Quitter-bone there is no outward Sorrance whatſoever more dangerous to a Horſe. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to cut the hoof to the quick, then ſeeth a Snake or an Adder till the fleſh part from the bone, and be molten as an unguent; then anoint the ſore place therewith very warm even to the bottom, and during the cure, keep the foot clean from any filth: for this both drieth and killeth the Quitter-bone.

☞ Others of the old Farriers, firſt burn about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a half Circle, and then with the ſame Iron draw another right through the midſt thereof in this ſort: then take of Arſnick the quantity of a Bean beaten into fine powder, and put it into the Hole, thruſting it down to the bottom with a quill, and ſtop the mouth of the hole

hole with a little tow, and bind it ſo faſt with a cloath and a rowler, that the Horſe may not come at it with his mouth, and ſo let it reſt for that day; and the next day; if you ſee that the ſore looketh black within, then it is a ſign that the Arſnick did work well; then to allay the burning of it, tent the hole with flax dipt in hogs greaſe, and Turpentine molten together, cover the tent with a Plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Wax and Turpentine molten together, but there muſt be as much Turpentine as of all the reſt: and thus you muſt continue to do until you have gotten out the core, which the Arſnick did eat; then you ſhall ſee whether the looſe griſtle in the bottom be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feel with your finger, or with a quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raiſe the griſtle with a little croked inſtrument, & pull it clean out with a pair of ſmall nippers, or mullets made for the purpoſe: that done, thruſt it again with a full tent, dipt in the aforeſaid ointment to aſſwage the anguiſh of the laſt dreſſing, and ſtop it hard to the intent that the hole may not ſhrink together or cloſe up: and the next day take out the tent, and tent it anew with Hony and Verdigreaſe boyled together till they look red, renewing it every day once until it be whole, keeping always the mouth of the ſore as open as you may, to the intent that it heal not up too faſt, and let not the Horſe come to any wet, nor travel until he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers uſe to cut the hoof open to the quick; then take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, pitch of *Greece*, *Olibanum*, Maſtick, Oyl and white Wax, of each one ounce, with half a pound of Sheeps ſuet: melt them upon a ſoft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place untill it be whole. Others uſe, after the ſore is opened, to put in ſalt of Tartar, and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heal it up with Honey and Verdigreaſe boyled as aforeſaid. Others take of Goats dung two ounces, of Sheeps tallow three ounces, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as will ſuffice to boyl them well in, and then therewith to dreſs the Quitter-bone until it be clean whole.

CHAP. CVIII.

Of gravelling a Horſe.

GRavelling is a certain fretting of gravel, ſand, or dirt, under the foot, betwixt the ſole and the ſhoo, ſometimes on the in-

ſide, ſometimes on the out-ſide of the foot, and ſometimes on both ſides of the heel. It cometh, as I ſaid, by means of little gravel ſtones getting between the hoof, or calking or ſponge of the ſhoo, which by continual labour and travel of the Horſe, doth eat through the hoof into the quick of the foot; & the rather, if the Horſes heels be ſoft and weak, or that the ſhoo do lie flat to his foot, ſo as the gravel being gotten in it, cannot get out again.

The ſigns whereof are theſe, the Horſe will halt much, and covet to go moſt on his toe to favour his heel, and the ſofter the way is, the more is the Horſes eaſe. Now for the cure, according to the old Farriers, it is thus; firſt pare the hoof till you may ſee the ſore, then take an ounce of Virgins wax and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Dears ſuet, & half an ounce of Boars greaſe, and beat them allwell together in a morter, & then melt them together, on the fire; that done, dip good ſtore of flax therein, and ſo ſtop up the ſore cloſe and hard, and then you may travel the Horſe whither you pleaſe; and do thus once aday until the foot be ſound. Others of the old Farriers uſe firſt to pare the hoof, and to get out the Gravel with a drawing knife, leaving none behind; then ſtop the ſore place with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and laid on with a little tow or flax, and then clap on the ſhoo, to keep in the ſtopping, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and ſuffer the Horſe to come in no wet until it be healed. Now you muſt underſtand, that if a gravelling be not well ſtopt to keep down the fleſh, it will riſe higher than the hoof and ſo put the Farrier to much more pains both in bolſtring it, and abating that ill-grown ſubſtance.

Others uſe only to pare the foot, and pick out all the gravel clean, then waſh it well with Beer and Salt; then melt into it Tallow, Rozen, and Pitch: then covering it hard and cloſe with flax, ſet on the ſhoo again, and do thus once aday. Others uſe after they have cleanſed the ſore, to lay hards into it, being dipt in the whites of Eggs, then after heal it with Salt beaten ſmall and mixt with ſtrong Vinegar, or elſe with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tartar mixt together, which alſo is good for any cloying or pricking.

CHAP.

CHAP. CIX.

Of Surbating.

SUrbatingis a continual beating of the hoof againſt the ground, and it cometh ſometimes by means of evil ſhooing, lying too flat to his foot, or by going long bare-foot; and ſometimes by the hardneſs of the ground,and the high lifting of the Horſes feet,either in his trot or in his amble; and the Horſes which are moſt ſubject to this ſorrance, are thoſe which have either great round feet, or ſuch as are flat footed, the coffins whereof are weak and tender, and alſo thoſe which have weak heels. The ſigns of the grief are, the Horſe will halt much, and go creeping and ſtiff, as if he were half foundred.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to roſt a cupple of Eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heat, to burſt them in the Horſes feet, and then pour hot boyling Sallet oyl amongſt them, and ſo ſtop the ſhoo up cloſe with a piece of leather, and two croſs ſplents of wood, and do thus thrice in one fourtnight,and it will help him.

Other of the ancient Farriers take off the Horſes ſhooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the ſhooes be not eaſie,that is to ſay, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them ſo, and tack them on again with four or five nails: that done, ſtop his feet with Hogs greaſe and bran boyled together ſo hot as may be,and alſo cover all the coffin round about with the ſame, binding all in together with a cloath, and a liſt faſtened about the joynt, renewing it every day once untill it be ſound; and give the Horſe during the cure, warm water to drink, and let him ſtand dry, and not have much travel.

Now if your Horſe ſurbait in your travel, if every night you ſtop his feet well with Cows dung, or with Cows dung and Vinegar, it will make him endure out his journey: or Cows dung and new laid Eggs beaten together.

CHAP.

CHAP. CX.

Of the prickle in the sole of the Foot, either by treading on a nail, or any other sharp thing.

IF a Horse in his travel chance to tread either on a stub, nail, thorn or any other sharp thing whatsoever, by means whereof he is prickt in the sole of the foot, the Rider shall perceive the same by the sudden faultring of the Horse, who will instantly stand still and lift up his foot, as desiring help: And if it chance at any other time, then, the halting of the Horse, and the diligent searching of a careful Farrier must find out the mischief.

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to pull off the shoo, and pare the foot, and with a drawing knife uncover the whole, making the mouth so broad as a two pence: then tack on the shoo again; that done, dost it by pouring into the hole Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, and lay some flax or tow upon it; and then stop all the Horses feet with Cows dung, and so covering it with a piece of leather, splint it with two cross sticks, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and let the Horse tread in no wet.

Now you must be very careful in the curing of this sorrance; For if it be not healed from the bottom, besides, that it is dangerous to the life of the horse, it is also a great hazard that the sore will break out at the top of the hoof, and so loosen the hoof round about, and perhaps make it to fall clean away; but if you see that it begin to break out above, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesh may have the more liberty; then take of Bole-armeny half a quartern, and of Bean flower as much, and two Eggs: beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the Cronet, bind it fast on, and so let it remain the space of two days, and then renew it again, not failing to do every two days until you see it wax hard and firm above: for this plaister being restrictive, will force the humours to resort always downward; which humours must be drawn out with Turpentine and Hogs grease as before, until it leave mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allom beaten into powder, and strowed upon the sore, with a little

flax

flax laid again upon that, continuing ſo to do every day once until it be hardned; and let not the Horſe come in any wet until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to tent the ſore with Tallow, Tar, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoint all the coffin and Cronet of the hoof with Bole-armeny and Vinegar beaten together, till the ſore be whole, eſpecially if the thing which did prick the Horſe was venemous or ruſty.

CHAP. CXI.

To draw out either Stub, Thorn, or Iron either out of the foot or any other part of the body.

IF either the Stub, the Thorn, the Iron, or any thing whatſoever, wherewith your Horſe is wounded, be gotten ſo deep into the fleſh, that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deep, yet it is not much too deep) you ſhall take a good quantity of black Sope, and lay it to the ſore for a whole night, and it will make it to appear, ſo as you may pull it out with a pair of nippers: but if it lie very deep, then you may open the place with a Lancet, and thruſting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by ſtrength, and afterwards heal up the wound as was before taught in the laſt Chapter.

Other Farriers ſay, that the roots of Reeds being ſtampt and mixt with Honey, will draw out any ſtub or nail; ſo will alſo black ſnails, being ſtampt and wrought with freſh Butter. Now if the place be much ſwoln, then it is good to molliſie it with a plaiſter made of Worm-wood, Parietary, Bears foot, Hogs greaſe, and honey well boyled and mixed together, which will aſſwage any new ſwelling that cometh by ſtripe, or otherwiſe. Now when you have gotten out that which you ſought for, then you ſhall pour into the wound ſcalding oyl of Olive; when that is cold, pour into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold ſtrow on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolſter his foot or the ſore with hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthineſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXII.

Of the Fig.

IF a Horſe having receiv'd any hurt, as is before ſaid, either by ſtub, great nail, thorn, bone, ſplent or ſtone, either in the ſole or any other part of the foot, and be not well dreſſed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in the place a certain ſuperfluous piece of fleſh like unto a fig, full of little white grains, as you ſee are in a fig. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt with a hot Iron to cut the fig clean away, and keep the fleſh down with Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little tow, ſtoping the hole hard that the fleſh riſe not, renewing it once aday until the ſore be whole.

☞ Now other of our latter Farriers uſe after they have, as before is ſaid, cut away the fig, then to take the crops of young Nettles, and chopping them very ſmall, lay them upon a cloath juſt as big as a Fig; then take the powder of Verdigreaſe, and ſtrow it thin upon the chopt Nettles, and ſo bind it to the ſore, renewing it once aday until the hoof have covered the ſore, and this is a moſt certain cure.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of a Retrait.

A Retrait is, when a horſe by the ill government of the Smith, is pricked in the foot with ſome ill driven nail, yet in ſuch ſort, that it is immediately eſpied, and the nail drawn back again; and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may alſo come by reaſon of the weakneſs of the nail, and the hollowneſs of the ſhank: for when the nail is a little too weak, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it ſhould go right forth; and when it is hollow, it ſhivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quick in pulling out, or elſe perhaps breaketh aſunder, and ſo remaineth ſtill behind. And this kind of pricking is the worſt of all other, becauſe it will rankle worſt, in as much as the ſlaw cankereth, and remaineth ſtill in the foot. The ſigns hereof are; Firſt, the apparent ſhrinking and ſtrug-

ling

ling of the Horſe, ſo ſoon as the quick is touched; and next, his much halting: Laſtly, you ſhall ſearch his foot with a Hammer, by knocking on the clench of every nail: for when you knock upon that nail where the grief is, the horſe will ſhrink up his foot; and if that will not ſerve, then grope the foot with a pair of pinſons round about until you have found the place grieved. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to pull of the ſhoo, and then open the place grieved, either with a Butteriſs, or with a drawing Knife, ſo that you may perceive either by feeling or ſeeing, whether there be any piece of nail or not; if there be, then pull it clean out: After take of Nettles half a handful, and bruiſe them in a Mortar, and put thereto a ſpoonful of red Vineger, and a ſpoonful of blake Sope, and two ounces of Boars greaſe, or the fat of ſalt Bacon, and Bray all theſe well together, and ſtop well the hole of the ſore with this, and then tack on the ſhoo again, and you may ſafely adventure to travel him. Other Farriers uſe, after they have opened the ſore, to ſtop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and ſo poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow upon it, and clap on the ſhoo again, renewing it thus once every day until it be whole; during which time, the Horſe muſt not come in any wet, and it muſt be ſtopped in this ſort, though it be but a prick, without any piece of nail remaining; and if for lack of looking to in time, this Retrait cauſes the horſe to break out, then you ſhall cure it either with a reſtrictive Plaiſter of Bole-armeny, Bean-flower and Eggs, mentioned in the 78 Chapter, or elſe with chopped Nettles and Verdigreaſe ſpoken of in the laſt Chapter.

Now there be many Farriers, which not only, for this Retrait, but for any prick in the Horſes foot, uſe after they have laid open the wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beef ſuet one ounce, and one head of Garlick, boyl them all together, and lay them to it ſo hot as may be ſuffered: and if it chance to break out above the hoof, then apply alſo the ſame Medicine unto it, and it will cure it.

CHAP. CXIV.

Of Cloying.

A Horse is said to be cloyed with a Nail, or pricked with a nail, when the whole Nail is stricken into the quick of the foot, and so remaineth still in the same, and is clenched as other Nails be, by means whereof the horse halteth extremely. Now this grief is known by searching the grieved place with a hammer or pinsons, as is before said. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, If the horse halt immediately, then pull off his shoo, and open the whole until it begin to bleed, and then stop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day until it be whole, and let the Horse tread in no wet, and let his shoo be tacked on again as soon as he is dresst. Others use only to pour into the hole hot scalding Butter, and that will heal it, or else to burn the hole with another Nail, and that will heal it. Other Farriers use, after they have open'd well the sore, to take half a pound of Frankincense, a pound of Rozen, a pound of pitch of *Greece*, half a pound of black Pitch, a pound of new wax, a pound of Goats grease, half a pound of Varnish, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oyl Olive, and melt them all together, and lay this to the hoof Plaister-wise, and it will not only heal any prick whatsoever, but also any cracks, chinks, or clifts, in the hoofs, how soever they breed; provided that you let the Horse tread in no wet during the cure: But if the sore chance to break out on the top of the hoof, then you shall take two or three yolks of Eggs, whites and all beaten together, and add thereunto an ounce of Bole-armeny, and as much Bean or Wheat flower as will thicken the same: then make a Plaister thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the Horses hoof, bind it fast on with a rowler, and renew it once a day until it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have searched and laid open the wound to put into it hurds dipped in the white of an Egg, then stop the hole with Salt beaten very small, mingl'd with Vervine and strong Vinegar, and cover it with flax dipped in strong Vinegar; or else holding up the Horses foot, pour into the wound hot scalding Oyl Olive; and when that is cold pour in hot Turpentine, and that being cold:

cold ſtrow upon it the powder of Sulphur, then lay on the bolſter of ſlox, then ſhooe him, and keep him from treading in any wet.

Others uſe to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphur, Mallows, and very ſtrong Vinegar; boyl them together until they be thick like an Ointment; then lay the ſame to the ſore as hot as the Horſe can endure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole.

Others uſe to take of Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and ſuet of a Hee-Goat, boyl them with a ſoft fire, and ſtir it: when it waxeth red, add Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each a like made into powder, ſtill ſtirring it till it be thick and red; then ſtop the ſore every day therewith until it be whole, after you have waſhed it well with Salt and Vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick and Cabbage leaves beaten with Swines greaſe, and lay that to the ſore; or elſe take Tallow and Horſe-dung, and mixing them well together, ſtop the ſore therewith, and in ſhort ſpace it will cure it.

Other Farriers uſe to take off the ſhoo, and having open'd the ſore, to waſh it with Wine: then lay upon it the inner rind of elder; and through that melt in greaſe with a hot Iron: then tack on the ſhoo again, and do thus divers days together, and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. CXV.

General Obſervations for the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe.

FOraſmuch as the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe are the only Inſtruments of Labour, and that, a ſmall grief in that part deprives a man of the benefit and uſe of the reſt; I think it not amiſs before I ſpeak of particular diſeaſes of the Hoofs, to ſhew you ſome general notes and obſervations which you ſhall obſerve for the benefit of the feet. Know then, that firſt it is meet that you let your ſhooes before be rather ſhort than too long, with ſtrong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nails, to have ſpecial good heads.

Let your ſhooes behind have no cawkin on the out-ſide; but if he enter-fere, let the cawkin be on the inſide, to make him caſt outward, and let the inſide of that ſide inward have a welt an inch deep, or be twice as thick as the out-ſide: but if all this help not his enter-fering, then bring him unto an Amble; but if he will not amble, burn him with a hot Iron between the Legs, that the ſoreneſs thereof may make him go wide behind, which is an ordinary practice amongſt the Italians and Frenchmen.

Let your ſhooes be made of Iron that will not break, of which our Engliſh is the beſt, the Spaniſh next, and the Dansk worſt. Let them alſo be light, yet ſo, as they may be able to bear the burthen of the Horſe, being broader at the toes, than at the cawkin or ſpunges.

Let your cawkins be ſhort, and blunt at the points, and your ſpunges long and thick.

Let your ſhoo be full as ſtrait as the horn of the hoof, ſo far as the Nails go, and from the two heel Nails backward, Let the ſhoo be broader than the hoof, that the ſhoo may be without the horn.

☞ Give unto every ſhoo nine nails, on each ſide four, and one in the midſt, and let the ſhanks of the nails be very flat and thin, that if the hoof be naught, they may yet keep the ſhoo firm with little hold: and the neerer that your nails are driven backward towards the heel, (ſo it be without danger) the faſter the ſhoo will ſit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let your cawkins ſit a ſtraws breadth behind the corner of the coffin, and let your nail head enter into the ſhoo, eſpecially on the out-ſide, and by all means hollow your ſhoo ſo little as poſſible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heel of a horſe: yet open his heels as ſufficiently as may be, becauſe ever the heel muſt be thick and the toe thin.

In fair ways pare the ſole thin, but in Froſt, or ſtony ways, pare, as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoof is higher on the out-ſide than on the inſide, it will make a horſe enter-feer, and when it is higher on the inſide, it will make a Horſe ſtraddle, ſo that a fair ſmooth table is of all moſt convenient. After travel, ever ſtop the inſide of the hoof with cows dung, and rub the out-ſide and the Cronet with the

☞ ſward of fat Bacon: For that will keep a tough, ſmooth and a ſound hoof. As your nails have ſtrong heads, ſo let them have thin ſhanks, for that will beſt prevent hurting, and keep the ſhoo cloſe unto the hoof.

CHAP. CXVI.

Of looſening the Hoof, and how to make the Hoofs grow.

A Horſe is ſaid to be looſned where there is a diſſolution or parting of the horn or Coffin of the hoof from the fleſh, at the ſetting

ſetting on of the Cronet: Now if this diſſolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by means of ſome foundring; but if it be but in part, then it proceedeth from ſome anguiſh,cauſed either by the pricking of ſome channel nail,or other nail piercing the ſole, or quarters of the foot, or by ſome Quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or ſuch like accident. The ſigns of the diſeaſe be theſe: When it is looſened by foundering then it will break firſt,and the diſſolution will appear on the fore-part of the Cronet, right againſt the toe, becauſe the humor doth covet always to deſcend towards the toe; but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or ſuch like,then the hoof will looſen round about equally, even at the firſt; but when it proceeds from ſome Quitter-bone, or hurt from the Cronet, then the Hoof will break right about the place that is offended, and moſt commonly will go no further.

Now the cure,according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is of what cauſe ſoever the looſeing proceed, firſt to be ſure to open the hoof in the ſole of the foot, ſo as the humor may have free paſſage downward;and then to bind about the top of it,the reſtrictive plaiſter ſpoken of in the ſeventy eighth Chapter,and in the 117. Chapter, and in ſuch ſort as is there written, and then heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together. Others of the ancient farriers take three ſpoonfuls of Tar,and a quarter of a pound of Rozin, and half a handful of Tanſie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a handful of red mint, and half a handful of Southern-wood and bray all theſe together in a mortar: then add half a Pound of Butter,and a penny worth of Virgins wax; then melt them altogether over the fire, until it come to a thick plaiſter or ſalve: then ſpreed ſome of it upon a cloath, and lay it to the ſore renewing it once a day for ſeven days, and it will heal it.

Others uſe to take the brains of a Swine, or a Pig,and to ſtop his hoof very well therewith three days together,renewing it twice or thrice a day,and it will grow faſt,and endure as well or rather better than ever it did. Other Farriers uſe to cut out the ſole below, Letting it bleed well;after ſtop it with hurds dipt in the whites of Eggs: tye this too for twenty four hours, then waſh it with ſtrong Vinegar warm,after fill it with Tartar and Salt, of each a like quantity,let that remain in two days;then annoint it with the ointment made of *Olibanum*, Maſtick, pitch of *Greece*, of each a like, and

a

a little *Sanguis Draconis* and of new Wax and Sheeps fuet as much as of the firſt, and melt and boyl them very well together, and let this ointment be applyed once aday till the ſore be whole. But if you perceive that any new hoof come, then cut away the old, leſt the hardneſs, of the one hinder the tenderneſs of the other; and then anoint the new hoof with fuet, oyl, and wax, of each a like boyled together, to make it grow; or elſe with pitch of *Greece*, Maſtick, *Oibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like, being molten with ſuet: for this will make the new Hoof to grow alſo.

☞ So will alſo new Wax, Honey, Oyl, Swines greaſe, and Sheeps ſuet, being boyled together, and when it is cold, add Maſtick, *Sanguis Draconis*, and Frankincenſe, and incorporate them alltogether, for nothing ſooner than this will make either new or old hoofs grow. Others uſe to take Shel-Snails, and ſtamp them, and lay them twice aday to the ſore: and it will either faſten the old hoof, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers, which firſt fill the ſore with Turpentine, and after it hath lain twenty four hours, then waſh the ſore with Urine and Copperas water, then fill it either with Verdigreaſe, or with ſheeps tallow, pitch and Rozen boyled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the ſore very hot twice aday till it be whole.

CHAP. CXVII.

Of caſting the Hoof.

THe caſting of the hoof, is when the whole coffin thereof falleth clean away from the foot; which cometh of all the former cauſes rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, and is ſo apparent to the eye, that it needeth none other ſigns. Now for the cure, it is thus; take of Turpentine one pound, of Tar half a pint, of unwrought Wax half a pound, of Sheeps ſuet half a pound, and of Sallet oyl half a pint: boyl all theſe things together, and ſtir them continually until they be throughly mixt together; then make a boot of Leather with a ſtrong ſole fit for the horſes foot, to be laced faſt about the paſtorn: then dreſs his foot with the Salve aforeſaid laid upon flax or tow, and bolſter and ſtop his foot with ſoft flax, ſo that the boot may ☞ grieve him no manner of ways, renewing it every day once until the new hoof come, then as the hoof beginneth to harden, if it grow either thick, crumple, or out of order, with a fine Rape-file keep

it

it ſmooth, and plain, until the hoof be perfect, and then put him to graſs, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughneſs.

CHAP. CXVIII.

Of the Hoof-bound.

THe Hoof-bound is nothing elſe but a ſhrinking in of the whole hoof in the upper part thereof, and at the heels, making the skin to ſtare above the hoof, and to grow over the ſame. It proceedeth from keeping the Horſes hoofs too dry in the ſtable, or from ſtrait ſhooing, or from ſome unnatural heat after foundring; and the ſigns of the diſeaſe are, that the Horſe will halt much, and his hoofs will be hot; and if you knock upon them with an Hammer, they will ſound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feet be not hoof-bound, then the ſore foot will be ever the leſſer: and you ſhall alſo underſtand, that this diſeaſe of ſome Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take a pound of the ſward of Bacon, and a quarter of a pound of white Sope, and a handful of Balm, and a handful of Bay leaves, and four or five branches of Rue, and ſtamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hoof very hot, ſuffering it ſo to abide the ſpace of five or ſix days, and then renew it, but in no caſe let him tread in any wet place, and this will help him.

Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, firſt to pull off his ſhooes, and to ſhoo him with half-moon ſhooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the ſhape whereof you ſhall ſee in another place; then raze both the quarters of the hoof with a drawing knife, from the Cronet unto the ſole of the foot, ſo deep that you may ſee the dew come forth: and if you make two Raſes on each ſide, it ſhall be ſo much the better, and enlarge the hoof the more; that done, anoint all the hoof above, next to the Cronet, round about, with the ointment deſcribed before in the laſt Chapter of caſting the hoof, continuing ſo to do every day once until he be gin to amend; and let him be ridden upon ſome ſoft ground an hour or two every day once for the ſpace of a moneth; and if he go not well at the moneths end, then take off the half ſhoos, and pare all the ſoles, fruſhes and all ſo thin, that you may ſee the dew come forth, and tack on a whole ſhoo, and ſtop all the foot within with Hogs greaſe and bran molten together, and laid very hot to

the

the foot renewing it every day once the ſpace of nine days, to the intent the ſole may riſe; but if this will do good, then take away the ſole clean, and clap on a whole ſhoo, and ſtop the foot with Nettles and Salt brayed together; yet ſtop it not too hard, to the intent the ſole may have liberty to riſe, and let this be renewed every day once till the ſole be grown again; and let him be ſhod with Lunet, and ſo ſent to graſs. Other Farriers uſe only to raze the hoof from the Cronet to the verge of the hoof in four or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the hoof. Others uſe only to open the horſe exceeding much at the heels once a week, and to ſhoo him with very wide open ſhooes, and then for a month or two to draw him in ſome Cart, that being forced to ſet his foot hard on the ground, he may thereby ſtretch forth and widen his hoof. Now to prevent this Sorrance, it is good to annoint his hoofs with Neats foot Oyl, or Turpentine, and to ſtop them underneath with Cows.dung.

CHAP CXIX.

Of the running, or rotten Fruſh.

THe Fruſh, which of ſome is called the Frog of the foot, is the tendereſt part of the hoof toward the heel, and is faſhion'd like a forked Arrow head, being only that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth when they ſay they cut forth the ſole of the horſes foot, Now in this Fruſh breedeth many times a rottenneſs or corruption proceeding of humors, which come out of the Legs, by which the Leg is kept clean from wind-galls, and all other humors or ſwellings, by means that the humors have paſſage that way: notwithſtanding the miſchief of this Sorrance is greater then the benefit, becauſe it maketh the Horſes foot ſo weak and tender, that he is not able to tread upon any hard ground. The ſigns of the Sorrance are, the horſe will halt much when he travelleth either upon looſe ſtony ground, or upon ſtiff dirty ways, and goeth ever beſt upon green ſwarth; but above all, he halteth, moſt when the paſſage of the humor is ſtopped with any gravel gathered into the Fruſh, and not being ſtayed or ſtopped, it will continually run, and ſtink ſo extremely, that a man can hardly endure the ſent of it; beſides in ſome places it will look raw,

Now

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient farriers, is thus; First, take off the ſhoo, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, ſo as you may ſee the water iſſue out of the raw places; then tack on the ſhoo again, being firſt made wide and large enough; that done, take of Soot one handful, of Salt as much; bruiſe them well together in a diſh, & put thereto the Whites of three Eggs, and temper them all together; and with a little Tow dipped therein ſtop all the foot, and eſpecially the Fruſh, and ſplent it in ſo, as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the ſpace of ſeven days, and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure, the Horſe muſt reſt, & come in no wet; and at the ſeven days end leave ſtoping him, and ride him abroad, and always when he cometh in, let his ſore foot be clean waſhed; for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorrance than gravel and dirt. Other of our latter Farriers only take off the ſhoo, & pare him well, and keep the ſore clean both from dirt and his own dung, by waſhing it three or four times a day with Urine, and that only will cure him as well as any medicine.

CHAP. CXX.

An approved and certain Cure for the running and rotten Fruſh.

AFter the foot is cleanſed, take a quart of old Urine, and boyl it with a quarter of a pound of Allom beaten to powder, and keep it in a cloſe Veſſel by it ſelf; then take a good handful or two of green Nettles ſtrong and Keen, and ſpread them on ſome Plate or other Veſſel, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after houſhould bread is drawn, then cruſh and bruiſe them into a very fine powder; then look what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine powder, and mix them both very well together, then keep this powder in a cloſe Gally-pot or Bladder.

Now, when you have occaſion to uſe it, firſt waſh the ſore place with the Urine and Allom made very warm, and the ſores throughly ſcoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Rag of Lawn, Cambrick, or fine old Linnen, and ſtrow or pounce the powder upon them, ſo much as may cover all the ſores, and thus do ever after travel, as once a day in the time of reſt.

CHAP. CXXI.

Of the Evil Hoofs.

HOrſes partly through a natural inclination, partly through the ſtonineſs of the Soil wherein they are bred, and partly through miſchance or ill government, will have ill-favoured and naughty hoofs, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or elſe moulded awry, or ſuch like; all which needs no ſigns, becauſe of the apparent ſign thereof: Then to amend them, the beſt cure is, with a fine Rape file to ſmooth the wrinkles away, and to anoint the cronet of the hoof with a fat ſward of Bacon rubbed in ſoot; then let the Horſe ſtand for at leaſt a fortnight upon his own dung, whereon you ſhall caſt good ſtore of water, only remove away the dung every night; and then preſently after the change of the Moon, ſhoo the Horſe with ſtrong ſhoos, keeping the ſole of the foot by paring, ſo hollow as you can poſſible, and it will ſhape his hoof to your pleaſure.

CHAP. CXXII.

Of Brittle Hoofs.

IF a Horſe either through the heat of his own nature, or in that he hath been either heated on his foot by labour, or foundred, and evil cured, ſhall happen to have his Hoofs ſo brittle and ſhort, that they will hardly bear a ſhoo: The ſigns where of are, the hoof will be white and crumbling: Then the beſt cure, according to the opinion of the beſt Farriers, is, to take Ox dung and Vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warm them on the fire, and ſo bind it both under and above round about the Horſes foot, and then lace on his boot of ſtrong Leather, as is afore ſaid in the Chapter of caſting of the hoof. Other Farriers uſe to let the Horſe ſtand upon his own dung, and anoint all the upper part of his hoof with the fat of Bacon ſod and mixt with Turpentine: And this you muſt do every day once till you ſee his hoofs come to ſome toughneſs.

Others uſe to take Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and Honey, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warm anoint all the hoof therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the Horſes foot

foot both under and above; and then put on his boot, dreſs him once a day, and once in two days let him ſtand four hours without his boot, that his hoof may grow as well hard as tough.

CHAP. CXXIII.

How to preſerve Hoofs.

IF you mean to preſerve your Horſes hoofs, either from any of the former Sorrance, or any other grief whatſoever, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rew, ſix ounces of Allom beaten into powder, two pound of old greaſe, and the dung of an Aſs; boyl them all very well together, and ſtop your Horſes hoof therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of Vinegar a quartern, of Tar half a pint, of Hogs-greaſe half a pound, of Oyl a pint, and a good handful of Wormwood, and four or five heads of Garlick; boyl all theſe together to a thick ointment and therewith anoint all the Horſes hoofs. Others uſe to boyl Beans till they burſt, and then temper them with Honey, and therewith anoint all the hoofs: or elſe waſh all the Hoofs with warm Vinegar, and then anoint them with Horehound, Wormwood, and Greaſe molten together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum*, and new Wax, of each one ounce, of Dialthea and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Butter four ounces, of old Oyl ſix ounces, and of Sheeps ſuet and Plantain, of each a pound; boyl them all well together, and therewith anoint the hoofs twice a day. Other Farriers uſe to anoint his hoofs with Turpentine, Hogs greaſe, and Honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foot well, and ſhoo him in the new of the Moon two or thre days after the change.

Others uſe to take chalk and white lead mingled together, or elſe bark duſt and honey mixt together, and being heated in a poſnet, laid hot on the bare fleſh, is moſt excellent to make any Hoof grow: To conclude, if a Horſe ſtand upon his own dung, (being very well watered) ſo he do not lye in it, it is moſt ſoveraign for the preſerving of hoofs.

CHAP. CXXIV.

For any hurt upon the hoofs.

IF your Horſe ſhall receive any hurt upon his hoofs, either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any falſe treading, or croſſing one foot upon another, or by any bruiſe upon cogle ſtone, flint, or ſuch like, then for the cure thereof, you ſhall firſt ſtop the hoof with Honey and Vineger mixt together, for the ſpace of three days at the leaſt; and then afterwards with leaves of Tamarisk well bruiſed and beaten together, until the hoof be ſound again.

☞ Other Farriers uſe only to ſtop the hoof with Sheeps greaſe and Horſe dung mixt together, renewing it once a day until it be well.

CHAP. CXXV.

How to ſoften the Hoofs.

THe Hoofs of Horſes will by long and dry ſtanding upon dry plaunchers, grow ſo hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteriſe: Beſides, they will ſo take from the Horſe the ſenſe and feeling of his feet, that the Horſe will go very ſtiff and unnimbly: Wherefore, when you ſhall perceive any ſuch defect, which is beſt known by offering to pare the hoof, then preſently you ſhall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unſlakt lime, with as much ſtrong lye as will make it ſoft like a Lenwick ſalve, then with that ſtop the Horſes feet daily till they come to a convenient ſoftneſs. Hot glowing embers put upon the hoof will ſoften it.

CHAP. CXXVI.

How to harden Hoofs.

AS dry ſtanding, and dry keeping doth harden the hoofs too much, ſo wet and moiſt keeping, as continual going in Marriſh grounds, or continual ſtanding either upon dirt, or the Horſes own dung, or too hot ſtoppings will make a Horſes hoofs too ſoft; inſomuch that the Horſe through the tenderneſs thereof, will neither be

be able to go, nor bear any ſhoo, which you ſhall perceive by the ſoft and eaſie cutting of the hoof. The manner then to harden and cure them, is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to burn an old ſhoo ſole, then ſeeth it well in Vinegar, and therewith bath the Horſes hoofs at the leaſt twice a day, and it will harden them.

Other skilful Farriers uſe to take of the powder of Galls, or Bran, and of Salt, of each a handfull; boyl theſe well in a pottle of ſtrong Vinegar, and therewith bath the hooofs, and in a ſhort ſpace it will harden them.

CHAP. CXXVII.

Of the Malt-long of the Hoof.

THe Malt-long, or as ſome Farriers call it, the Malt-worm, is a cankerous Sorrance above the Hoof, juſt upon the Cronet, which will break out into knobs and branches, and out of the ſame will run a watriſh ſharp lye or humour, which will venom the whole foot: as for the ſigns, they are the apparent ſight of the Sorrance, and the continual running out of the thin water. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, if it be in the Summer time, to take black Snails, and Bur-roots, and beating them well together, lay them unto the ſore, and renew them once in 24 hours. But if it be in the Winter, then take the Scrapings of a Pans bottom, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handful of the inner green bark or pils of the Elder-tree; and having beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it unto the ſore, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it. Others uſe to take Garlick, Pepper, and Honey, of each alike quantity, ſtamp them very well together, than anoint his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay ſome to his paſtorns, and that will cure the Sorrance.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How to skin any ſore Foot

THere is nothing better to skin any ſore foot, of what accident or Sorrance ſoever it proceed, than to take Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, and therewith every day to anoint the ſore foot, and it will

not only gather skin but hoof alſo, if it be in a place where any need requireth. Alſo white Lead, and Train-oyl beaten together, will do the like.

CHAP. CXXIX.

Of guorded or ſwoln Legs.

THe gourge, or gourded Legs, is an ill ſorrance, being a grievous ſwelling in the nether part of the Legs, proceeding either from the melting of the greaſe by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoid that greaſe out in excrements, it falleth down into the limbs, and there breedeth this ſwelling; or elſe when a horſe is exceedingly heated, and then without care ſet up, and taketh cold, in ſo much that the blood falleth down into his Legs and there congealeth and maketh his Legs to ſwell. To conclude, they do ſometimes proceed from hard beating in hard ways in the Summer time, which firſt raiſeth up wind-gals, and then thoſe wind-gals offending the ſinews, maketh them to ſwell, and this is the worſt gourding, becauſe ever for the moſt part lameneſs doth follow it.

The ſigns are, the Horſes Legs will ever be moſt ſwoln when he ſtandeth ſtill in the houſe, and leſt when he is in travel, eſpecially if he travel in much water: and the ſwelling moſt commonly is accompanied with ſome ſmall ſcabs, and in the end it will break out into the cratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handful above the knee, and then rope his Legs with a ſoft rope of hay wet in cold Water, and let it ſo remain a day and a night, and it will take away all the ſwelling. Other Farriers take two pound of Nerve Oyl, two pound of black Sope, a pound of Boars-greaſe and melt and boyl all theſe well together; then ſtrain it, and ſo let it cool; then when you have any need, anoint and chafe your Horſes Legs therewith, and to make it ſink in the better, anoint him firſt with Nerve oyl, and hold a hot Iron againſt his Legs to make it melt, then uſe the other ointment in the ſame manner, which done, keep his Legs clean from duſt by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

☞ Others of our latter Farriers uſe to take up the veins beneath the knee & let him bleed well: then knit the vein both above and below, and then anoint his Legs with this ointment: Take of Frankincenſe,

Rozen

Rozin,and freſh greaſe, of each a like quantity, and having boiled them well together,then ſtrain it,&uſe it once a day as you ſhall have occaſion,& it will heal any Gourge whatſoever; only for the taking up of the veins,you may, if you will,forbear it,ſith,if it be not done with great cunning it will make the Horſe ſtiff ever after. See further in the new Additions, for any ſtrain general noted thus ☞.

CHAP. CXXX.

A certain and approved Cure for any Surded or ſwell'd Legs by what accident ſoever.

FIrſt with a Fleam prick the ſweld parts,then take a pint of Wine-lees,an ounce of Cummin ſeeds,& a handful or more of Wheat-flower, and boil them till they be thick,then apply this pultus very hot to the ſwel'd part,and renew it but once in 24 hours,and if this in two or three days draw it to an head,then launce it,and heal it either with a Plaiſter of Shoo-makers Wax,or elſe with the yolk of an Egg,Wheat-flower and Honey beaten together to a Salve.

But if it do not draw to any head,and yet the ſwelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins wax, of Rozen half a pound,of juyce of Hyſſop half an ounce, of *Galbanum* half an ounce, of Myrrh ſecondary half a pound, of *Bdellium Arabicum* half an ounce,of Deers Suet half a pound, of *Populeon* half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, boyl all theſe together in an earthen pot, and after it is cooled,take of Bitumen half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and a half, and of Coſtus as much, beat theſe into fine powder,& then incorporate them with the other and boyl them all over again,which done, pour the whole mixture into cold Water, and then roll it into ſeveral rolls plaiſter-wiſe; after ſpread this plaiſter upon ſheeps Leather,and fold it about the ſweld member,and this will both aſſwage it, and give much ſtrength to the ſinews. You ſhall by no means remove this Plaiſter ſo long as it will ſtick on.

This plaiſter is wonderful ſoverain, and of a ſingular uſe,for the Horſe that is continually kept therewith,I mean,that hath it apply'd to his Limbs, ever when he cometh from travel, he ſhall never be troubled with ſweld Legs nor yet ever put out Wind-gal.

Now if you will neither go to this coſt,nor endure this trouble, ☞

yet

yet would have your Horſe cured of his infirmity, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the Houſe many times in the day, to lave and waſh your Horſes Legs, or other ſweld parts, with the coldeſt and cleareſt fountain Water that you can get, and ſometimes let the Horſe ſtand in ſome cold running ſtream the ſpace of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees & Cambrels, but in any caſe no farther.

This Medicine, how poor ſoever it look, is of much vertue. and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Only this you muſt take to your remembrance, that this application appertains not to impoſtumations, but unto ſtrains, and ſwellings, and bruiſes, which are without much anguiſh.

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the Farcy, or Faſhions.

THe Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Faſhions) is of all outward Sorrances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious and the moſt dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwiſe the moſt eaſie, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongſt ſome one vein or other, & ſometimes alongſt divers or ſundry Veins, according to the ſtrength of the infections. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, ſometimes from outward wounds or hurts receiv'd by cankerous or poyſonous inſtruments, as ruſty ſpurs, ruſty forks, biting of dogs or Horſes, biting of Ticks, Hog-lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of Swine againſt the Legs of the Horſe, or by lying in the litter where Swine have lain, or by enter-fearing, or hewing one leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the body, being ſurfeited by diſorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the bloood being heated, the greaſe melted, and ſudden cold taken, there groweth ſuch obſtructions in the blood, and ſuch putrifaction in the body, that can in no way evacuate or avoid, but by theſe ſmal Knots, Puſtules, or Ulcers, which are ſo infectious, that as many Horſes as do gnaw or gnap upon the Horſe infected will within one month have the ſame diſeaſe or if the Horſe infected do bite any other, he will infect him alſo; and this infection without preſent cure is mortal, and will kill any

Horſe:

Horſe: therefore, whenſoever you have any Horſe troubled with this Sorrance, ſee that you ſeparate him from other Horſes to prevent the danger.

Now for the ſigns, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which knots are never but accompanied with great ſwellings and rancklings, running along as the veins run, and dividing themſelves as the branches of the vein divide, the number of the knots multiplying and encreaſing until the body be univerſally covered over, or elſe that the number (if it be in a member) be utterly deformed and miſ-ſhapen.

Now the cure, (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the neck vein, and on both his ſpur veins, then give the Horſe this drink: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good Handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-ſeed, both being firſt bruiſed in a morter; then boyl them in water till the one half be conſumed, and give the Horſe this to drink in the morning faſting being cold, for divers Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to let the Horſe blood in that vein where the Sorrance firſt riſeth, as nigh the ſore place as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it ſo hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bigneſs of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned being little or much: That done, anoint every knot ſo burned with Hogs greaſe warmed every day once until the cores be ready to fall; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine, and when you ſee the cores ready to fall, then boyl the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt, and a few ſtrong Nettles, and with that water being warm waſh out all the cores, and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the powder of unſlakt Lime, continuing thus to do every day once until the holes be cloſed up; and if any be more rank than others, fill thoſe with Verdigreaſe; and during this cure, let the Horſe be thinly dieted, that is to ſay, with [illegible] and water only, unleſs it be now and then to give him a loaf of [illegible], or a little other Provender: for the lower he is kept in fleſh, the ſooner he will heal; and in any wiſe let his neck either be yoaked in an old bottomleſs pail, or elſe ſplented with ſtaves in ſuch ſort, that he may not come to lick any of his ſores, and the leſs reſt he hath, the better will be his

amendment. Now there be other latter Farriers, which for the Sorrance take a good quantity of Miſtleto, Honey and black Sope, and boyl them very well in old Urine, and being very warm, waſh your Horſe all over therewith, every day once for the ſpace of five or ſix days, and it will help it Others uſe to cut the Horſe two inches long down the forehead, and upon it in the midſt thereof on both ſides two inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the innerrind of Elder bark which is green, and look that it lie croſs the cut; for ſo it will deſtroy all the venemous humour in his Body, and it will heal him very perfectly, having been very oft approved. Others uſe to take a very ſharp bodkin, and to thruſt it croſs-wiſe through the nether part of the Horſes noſe, even through the ſmall griſtle, ſo that he may bleed well; or elſe to let him blood in the neck-vein, then feel the knots, and as many as are ſoft, Launce them, and let them run, then take ſtrong lye, Lime, and Allom, and mixing them well together, bath all the ſore therewith, and it will cure him.

Others take a ſharp lance Knife, and in the top of the Horſes fore-head ſomewhat above his eyes, make a long ſlit even unto his skul; then with a blunt inſtrument for that purpoſe, looſe the fleſh from the ſcalp a good compaſs, then take carret roots cut into little thin round pieces, and put them between the skin and the skul, or, for want of carret roots, you may take red Dock roots, and ſee that they be a little beaten or bruiſed before you put them in, and once a day ſee that you thruſt out the matter, but by no means thruſt out the roots: but if the roots do not ſtay in, then with a needle and ſilk ſtitch the wound together that it may hold in the Medicine; then once a day anoint the wound with freſh Butter: This has held a very certain cure for the Farcy, for look how this wound made thus ſhall rot, waſt, and grow ſound, ſo ſhall the Sorrance break, dry up, and be healed; only the fault of this cure, is, that it will be ſome-what long in healing, and is a foul eye-ſore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which, after the puting in of roots, as is aforeſaid, uſe to burn all the ſore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burn the ſore in the midſt till the white matter come forth, then with a pair of pinſors pluck out the knots; this done, anoint all the ſore place with Sope, and then dreſs him no more the ſpace of four or five days, in which time you muſt prepare a good quantity of ſtrong piſs, with the which you muſt waſh him every day, the piſs being firſt made ſcalding hot, and rub the ſores well until they be-

gin

gin to bleed; then having dried all the ſore places, throw on the powder of unſlakt Lime, or of Burnt Allom, which will heal better than Lime. Now if you ſee that in any of the ſores through negligent dreſſing there riſeth proud fleſh high, that you cannot correct it ſufficiently with the aforeſaid powder, then you may burn any ſuch place ſo ſore or ſorer as you did at the firſt, and dreſs it as before. Now there be other Farriers, which, when they ſee the Farcy to have been old and long gone, and that it is ſo far entred into one Member or other, that the member is diſfigured, they will then firſt purge the Horſe with ſome ſtrong purgation, of which you may find choice in a Chapter before written, and then under his Belly, put in one rowl either of Hair or Leather; or on the pitch of his ſhoulder of his grieved Leg (if it be before) or elſe on the ſtifling places if his grief be behind, put in another Rowel, and ſo keep thoſe two places, together with the iſſue in his fore-head open, until the cure be finiſhed; then with another hot Iron burn all his Leg down with long ſtrikes, even from the Body to the hoof, not above an inch one ſtrike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a ſtraws breadth and draw your ſtroak ever downward with the hair, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look brown. Now, when by this practice you have cured the diſeaſe, if then the Member be unfaſhionable, or by ſwellings out of all form, then you ſhall lay unto the member a plaiſter made of Wine lees, and Wheat-flower, and Rowl it with a wollen Rowler, renewing it once in twenty four hours, till the member be aſſwaged, and this practice will heal any great ſwell'd Leg, if it be applyed and continued with patience; but if by former dreſſings, burnings, manglings or cuttings of ſome ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny ſubſtance grown about the member, which the plaiſter afore-ſaid will not reſolve, then you ſhall take of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Myrrhe one pound, of Raiſins a pound, of *Galbanum* half a pound, of Coſtus, ſix ounces, of Armoniack ſix ounces, of ſwines greaſe two pound; put your ſwines greaſe firſt in an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad Cauldron full of water, then make a ſoft fire under it, to the end that your water may boyl; and when you do perceive your ſwines greaſe is almoſt melted, then ſhall you put in all the other ſimples, except the Coſtus, and when they are all molten, which will ask five or ſix hours boyling at the leaſt, then your Coſtus, which is a white root, being beaten into fine powder, you ſhall add to the fore-ſaid things after it is taken from the fire, and incorpo-

rate them all very well together, then make a plaister thereof upon a piece of Sheeps leather, somewhat bigger than the sore, and this Plaister without renewing will serve for at the least thirty days, with a very little refreshing, only you must once a day take it off and rub his Leg very well for fear it itch, which may cause the Horse to beat and stamp with his foot, and so rather increase than decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you do not Rowle him too strait, for that is most hurtful. It shall not be amiss now and then to ride him into the water, and walk him an hour after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his Leg well; then warm his Plaister over a chasing-dish and coals and so lay it to again: and this practice in two or three months will take away any deformity of swelling, be the Member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Farcy, if it be but young, and especially if it be about the head or face of a Horse; will take only of *Aquavitæ* two spoonfuls, of the juyce of Garlick two spoonfuls, and of the juyce of Rew, or herb of grace, two spoonfuls; mix them well together, then take plegants or round balls of flax, & steep them therein, and then stop them hard into the horses ears; then take a needle and thred and stitch the tips of his two ears together, by means whereof he cannot shake out the Medicine, and use the horse thus three several mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy; as hath been oft proved.

☞ Other Farriers use to take Drag-worts, or Ground-sel: and beat it well in a mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the Horses ear, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in fourteen hours for three or four dressings, and it will heal any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to anoint all the sores either with Tansey, and Verjuice boyled together, or else with Boars grease very hot, and that will kill it. Others use first to wash the sores with old Urine, then take the powder of Glass, Brimstone and Hogs grease well stamped and beaten together, then opening, and slitting the knots, anoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the Horse blood, if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not; and then to burn all the knots as is aforesaid, and then to heal the burnings with Tar, Oyl and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonful of the powder Diapente: or else give him four ounces of the powder of Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, with a pint and a half of Malmsey three days together:

after

after that take an ounce of Aloes, one ounce of Centaury, one ounce of Opoponax, beat them all into fine powder, and give them him to drink in a pint and a half of Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforesaid herb called Wall-wort, or Dan-wort, have been sodden: use to Ride him oft until he sweat, and when the Disease is killed, turn him to grass: for running in the open air is very wholesome.

There be others, which take black Sope, Arsnick, unslakt Lime, Verdigrease, and Red Lead, work all these well together, and opening the Knots, dress them therewith till you see them begin to dry up and die. Others open the Knots with a hot Iron, and then take black Sope and great Bay Salt beaten together, and half so much as of them, of Verdigrease, and boyl the Verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a saucerful of Mustard, and put them all together, and dress the sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quick-silver, and put it into a bladder, with two spoonfuls of the juyce of Oranges or Lemons, and shake them together to cool the Quick-silver: then take half a pound of fresh Hogs grease, and Verdigrease an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, and work them well together: then anoint the knots with this Ointment till they rot: then let them out with a sharp Knife, and anoint them still, and put into his ears the juyce of Ragweed, and the sores will dry up. This Medicine is very well approved. Others take black Sope, Mustard made of Wine Vineger, and red Lead; mix all these together, and anoint the vein all along, holding a hot Iron close to the sore, to make the Ointment strike in, and do thus once a day until the sores dry up. Other Farriers take the juyce of hemlock a good quantity, and dipping tow therein, stop his ears therewith, then open all the knots and thrust in Salt. Lastly, give him to drink sweet wort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other Farriers take the Butter Bur, and being dryed and beaten to powder, strew it upon the knots after they have been opened, and then give two or three spoonfuls of the same powder with a pint of Malmsey to drink, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is also exceeding good for all manner of Ulcers; the root is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take Sulphur, Orpiment, unslakt Lime, and mixing them together, put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, anoint him with Bole-armony made into powder, and incorporated with strong Vinegar, the juyce of Housleek, and of white

Leeks

Leeks and Solatro. Other Farriers after they have let the Horſe blood, will boyl in Vinegar, Bean-flower and Swines-greaſe, then add a pretty quantity of Oyl, and then ſtrain it, then add one part of Aloes, and two of Brimſtone, and boyl it a little: then being warm, anoint all the ſore places therewith, or elſe anoint them twice a day with the juyce of ſmallage, and the yolks of Eggs beaten together.

There be other Farriers which take two ounces of Oyl de Bay, one of *Euforbium*, and two ounces of Arſnick, and mixing them together, anoint the ſores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all theſe many Receipts, of which not any but have been approved to be very good, yet theſe two which I ſhall now rehearſe, I have ever found to be the moſt excellent for any manner of Farcy, whatſoever, whether it be, as our ſimple Smiths term it, a dry Farcy, a wet or watery Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cauſe; only ſome Horſes not having ſuch flux of humors in them as others have, the Knots will be unwilling to break, then they ſay it is a dry Farcy: others of the contrary part will break as faſt as the Knots ariſe, and run filthy matter, then they call it a watery Farcy: Others will ſpread in many parts of the body, yet not break, but as it were move betwixt the skin and the fleſh, but that they call a running Farcy.

Now all theſe are but one Farcy, and having but one certain Cure, which is this. Firſt, with diligent heed mark upon what principal vein of the Horſes body the Knots do ariſe, and note how they ſpread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into ſundry branches, according as the vein doth divide, you ſhall take the laſt knot of every branch, which for the moſt part will be hard, and not come to rottenneſs; and then ſlit them, and fill them with your Knives point full of white Mercury: then thoſe which you find to be rotten let the matter forth, and anoint them with black Sope and Mercury mixt together: then within a day or two you ſhall ſee thoſe which you dreſs with Mercury ſimple, to have their cores fall out; and the reſt which you dreſs with black Sope, will dry up: then anoint them all with freſh Butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceive any new knots to ariſe, then you ſhall dreſs them likewiſe with Mercury ſimple, as was ſaid before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it were newly begun, then if you only take black Sope and Mercury, as before ſaid,

and,

and anointing your finger and your thumb therewith, do but nip and bruiſe every knot, and within two or three days after they will dry up and heal. But if the Farcy befoul and deſperate, that is to ſay, either univerſally ſpread over the Body, or ſo gotten into any Limb or Member, and the Limb is deformed, and hath loſt his proportion, ſo that a man can neither judge which way the veins run, nor in what part the knots are moſt venemous, becauſe that healing one, two new ones will ariſe;

In this ſame caſe, you ſhall firſt give your Horſe a ſtrong ſcouring or purgation, according to the ſtrength of his Body, of all which, a pint of Muskadine, or a quart of ſtrong Ale, with half a pint of the oyl of Oats, is the moſt ſoveraign: then ſhall you take a penny-worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve penny worth of white Mercury; mix all theſe very well together, and make them into a ſalve: then with a ſlice daub it all over the ſore place, leaving no part of the Member uncovered; then heating a bar of Iron Red hot, hold it ſo near that it may dry the ſalve upon the ſore: then lay more freſh ſalve on, and dry in like manner, and ſo let it reſt until it fall off, and it will kill any Farcy whatſoever, at the firſt or ſecond dreſſing. There be others which will ſtop the Knots with the powder of Verdigreaſe and of Arſnick mixt together, or elſe waſh the ſores with *Aqua fortis*, but they are neither ſo good as the other before rehearſed.

CHAP. CXXXII.

Of the Canker in any part of the Body.

A Canker is a poyſonous creeping Ulcer, fretting and gnawing the fleſh a great breadth, whoſe beginning is knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and ſpreadeth it ſelf into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one Wound or filthy ſore, from whence there runneth a thin ſharp lye, which galleth off the skin whereſoever it goes, and ſo both encreaſeth the Ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from Melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by rankneſs of keeping, or elſe by too extreme poverty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with ſharp and Salt humours, then it cauſeth more painful and grievous exulceration. It alſo may proceed from ſome loathſome Wound, which is neither clean kept nor well dreſt, but in ſuch

ſort,

ſort that the corrupt matter thereof poyſoneth the other clean parts of the body. For ſigns of the ſorrance, there needeth no more but the deſcription already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is, firſt to let the Horſe blood in thoſe veins which are next the ſore, and make him bleed well; then take of Allom half a pound, of green Copperas as much, of white Copperas one quartern, and a good handful of Salt, boyl all theſe things together in fair running water, from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warm, waſh the ſore therewith with a clout, and then ſprinkle thereon the powder of unſlakt Lime, continuing ſo to do every day once the ſpace of fifteen days; and if you ſee that the Lime do not mortifie the rank fleſh, and keep it from ſpreading any further, then take of Sope half a pound, of Quick-ſilver half an ounce, and beat them together in a pot until the Quick-ſilver be ſo well mingled with the Sope, as you can perceive no Quick-ſilver in it; and with an Iron ſlice or ſplatter, after that you have waſhed the ſore with the ſtrong water aforeſaid, cover the Wound with this ointment, continuing thus to do every day once until the Canker leave ſpreading abroad. And if it leave ſpreading, and that you ſee the rank fleſh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the waſhing dreſs it with Lime, as before, continuing ſo to do until it be whole; and in the dreſſing, ſuffer no filth that comes out of the ſore to remain upon any whole place about, but wipe it clean away, or elſe waſh it away with warm water: and let the Horſe during this cure, be as thinly dyeted as may be, and throughly exerciſed. Now if this cankerous Ulcer happen to be in the tail of a Horſe, as it is often ſeen, and which you ſhall perceive as well by the falling away of the hairs, as alſo by the wound, then you ſhall make a bolſter of ſoft cloath or ſponge, and wet it with Vinegar both within and without, and ſo bind it on laſt to the ſore; and always when it waxes dry, you muſt wet it again; do this twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better; ſo ſhall you continue for three or four days, and then heal up as you heal an ordinary wound; that is, with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, or ſuch like. There be other Farriers, which for the Canker on the body do take an ounce of the juyce of the root of Aſſodely, three ounces of unſlakt Lime, two ounces of Orpiment, Arſnick, put this in an earthen Veſſel cloſe ſtopt, and either boyl or bake it in an oven till it come to a powder; then firſt waſh the ſore with ſtrong Vinegar, and after ſtrew this powder thereon.

Others

Others uſe to take Garlick, and beat it in a mortar with Swines greaſe till it come to a Salve, and then having waſht the ſore either with Vinegar, Allom water, Copperas water, or old Urine, anoint it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farries take the herb Mullen, and bruiſe it, and mix it with Salt and Verdigreaſe, and dreſs the ſore therewith morning and evening for the ſpace of three or four days; then uſe the ſame ſalve again as long without Verdigreaſe; then laſtly uſe the herb alone: but if at any time you ſee it do begin to Wax raw, then begin again, as is aforeſaid, and ever before you anoint, waſh it firſt with Vinegar and greaſe mixt together. Others take Savin, Bay-ſalt, and Rue ſtampt with Barrows greaſe, and anoint the ſore therewith, and when the ill humours are kill'd (which you ſhall know by the whiteneſs) then heal it with Tar, Oyl, and Hony mixt together.

Laſtly; (and which I hold the beſt) take Vinegar, Ginger, and Allom, and mix them together till they come to a Salve, and with it anoint the ſore, and it will both kill the Poyſon, and heal the Ulcer.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

Of the Fiſtula.

A Fiſtula is a deep, hollow, crooked, mattering Ulcer, and for the moſt part, commonly a great deal ſtraighter at the mouth than at the bottom, being ingendred in ſome Wound, Bruiſe, Sore, or Canker, not throughly healed. The ſigns to know it are, the hollowneſs of the ſore deſcending downward from the Orifice, and the thinneſs of the matter which iſſueth from the ſame; beſides, the crookedneſs which you ſhall find in the Ulcer, when you ſearch it.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt ſearch the bottom thereof with a Gooſe or Swans quill, or with a ſmall Rod well covered with a fine Linnen cloath; and having found the bottom thereof, cut it ſo large with a Razor, that the matter may have free paſſage downwaards; but take heed in launcing it, that you cut not any maſter ſinew, or main tendon: then having ſtanched the blood either with Swines dung, or ſuch like, take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigreaſe one ounce, and boyl them well together upon a ſoft fire three quarters of

an hour; then having cleanſed the ſore by tying a tent of flax or fine Linnen cloath to the point of your quill, with a thread draw it ſoftly into the Wound: then cut off your quill or feather ſo long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the tent, which then ſhall come out at the bottom of your ſore: then dip another tent in the aforeſaid Salve, and then with a needle and thred make faſt your tent to your firſt clout, at the upper end thereof, then draw out your firſt tent downward, ſo ſhall you draw your tent with the Medicine eaſily into the Wound, and your firſt tent will have cleanſed the ſore very clean; and if the matter do abound much, then it ſhall be good to dreſs him twice a day: but you muſt not dreſs him with this Medicine no more but one day, and afterward you ſhall dreſs him with this Medicine following: take of Turpentine, of Swines greaſe, of Honey, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and make a ſalve thereof, wherewith you ſhall dreſs your ſore four days, for one day that you dreſs him with the former Medicine made of Honey and Verdigreaſe; and take heed that you make your tent of very ſoft Linnen cloath, and fine flax: and let not your tent be too big after the firſt and ſecond time dreſſing, but preſently after the firſt dreſſing you muſt cover the ſore place, and round about the ſame, with this Pultus here following.

Firſt, take to Gallons of fair Water, and having boiled and ſcum'd it ſo long till you have perfectly cleanſed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfuls of Mallows, and as much of Violet leaves, and two or three of Oat-meal, and having boyled all theſe three things well in your former prepared Water, you ſhall add thereto of Hogs-wort, and freſh Butter, of each a pound: then ſhall you let it boyl ſo long till it become thick, like paſte or pap, and then apply it hot to the ſore, and take heed that in opening this ſore you let not any hair ſtrike into it; And on the other ſide, that you keep it not too hot: And if this Fiſtula be in the Horſes Withers, you muſt take heed that you tye his head to the rack, ſo as he may neither lye down, nor put his head lower than his manger: for if you ſuffer him to feed on the ground when he hath any grievous ſore in his Withers, it ſhall hardly be poſſible ever to cure him; but it you perceive the Wound to heal apace, and that it matter but a little, then ſhall it be enough to dreſs him once a day: and alſo it ſhall be good, to take great heed, that you make not your tent to big, and ſee that you uſe your

Pultus

Pultus till it be perfectly cured. Now there be others of the ancient Farriers, which use for this cure, first to search the depth of the Fistula either with a quill, or with some other Instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way: for unless you find the bottom of it, it will be very hard to cure; and having found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger to feel whether there be any bone or else gristle perished, or spongy, or loose flesh, which must be gotten out; and then tent it with a tent of flax dipped in this Ointment: Take of Myrrhe, of Aloes, and of Sarcocolla, of each one ounce, of good Honey six ounces, and of Verdigrease two ounces: and melt all these on a gentle fire, and make them into a Salve; then being look-warm, dress the tent therewith, & bolster the tent with a bolster of flax, & if it be in such a place as the tent cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a shoe-makers thread right over the bolster, to keep in the tent, which ends may hang there, as two laces to tye and untye at your pleasure, renewing the tent every day once until the sore leave mattering, and then make the tent every day lesser and lesser until it be whole: for you shall understand, that this Salve doth purge this fistula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you have done as aforesaid, then you shall close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unslakt Lime; but if the fistula be in such a place, as you can neither cut against the bottom, nor tye the same, then there is no remedy, but every time you dress it, to pour into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or sirringe, some strong white Copperas water, or some Allom water, so that it may go down to the bottom, and dry up the filthy matter: and this you may do twice a day at least until it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers, which use this cure, after they have searched the fistula to the bottom, to take a pottle of white Wine Vinegar, of Camphire half an ounce, of Mercury precipitate half an ounce, of green Treacle three ounces, of Red Sage an handful, of Yarrow and Rib-wort of each an handful, of Honey half a pint, of Boars grease half a pint, boyl all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound. Then to heal up the same, you shall take oyl of Roses, Virgins Wax and Rozen,

of each a like quantity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the gum of Ivy and Dears suet as much, boyl these together unto a Salve, and therewith dresse the sore therewith until it be whole, observing ever, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soon as you have put in your Tent, to clap a plaister over it of Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, Turpentine and Hogs greate molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evil humours, and also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the Fistula be in or about the head of the Herle, then you shall take the juyce of Houslick, and dip therein a lock of Wool, and put it into the Horses ears, and it will slay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten and false flesh, and then bath it well with the grounds of Ale made warm, and then wipe the blood clean away: then take Butter, Rozen, and frankincense a little, and boyl them all together, and boyling hot pour it into the wound, and then clap on the plaister; do thus once a day till the Horse be whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the Horses ears, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shall boyl the roots of Mallows in water till they wax tender, then bruise them, and strain out the water clean, and being warm, apply it to the sore, and it will heal it.

There be other ancient and skilful Farriers, which for the general Fistula use a prevention thereof, to take Honey and Sheeps suet, and making it scalding hot, to scald the sore extremely therewith upon the first swelling, and it will keep the Fistula that it shall not breed; but if it breed, then you shall Launce it in the nethermost part, and put into it as much Mercury *Sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with Sallet oyl, and laid on with a feather; after that take of Verdigrease four penny-worth, of Vitriol a half pennyworth, of Red Lead three penny-worth, beat these together, and every day wash the wound with Copperas water, made with Copperas and elder leaves in Summer, and with the inner green bark in Winter; after the washing take the powder, and put it on the sore, and after it drop on a little Oyl.

☞ Other Farriers take the outermost green shels of Wal-nuts, and put them in a Tub, strowing three or four handfuls of bay salt upon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, and some on the top, & so keep them all the year; and when you will use them, take a pint of them, a little bay Salt, and half a quarter of a pound of black Sope, with half a spoonful of May Butter, (and for want thereof,

other

other Butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then ſpread it on the ſore, or tent the ſore therewith; but two hours before you lay it on, anoint the place with *Venice* Turpentine, and do thus till the fiſtula be whole.

Other Farriers take *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, which is made of Honey a pint, Vinegar half a pint, Allom a quarter of a pound, and Verdigreaſe one ounce and a half; and ſeeth them all together till they be thick, and of a tauny colour; this is called *Ægyptiacum*, and to make it the ſtrongeſt way, is to put in of Mercury *Sublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arſnick two ſcruples, and boyl it together; with either of theſe, eſpecially the ſtronger, dreſs any Fiſtula, Canker, or foul old Ulcer whatſoever, and it will kill it; and the weaker of theſe, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arſnick, may be applyed to the Fiſtula in the mouth of a Horſe. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midſt of well Leavened bread ſlack baked three ounces, of Nenin ten drams, mingle them together with a little Roſe water, and make tents thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, and at your pleaſure tent your fiſtula therewith, and it will aſſuredly kill it. Others take ſtrong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allom, and Mercury, and ſeeth them together, and ſquirt it into a Fiſtula, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you mean to dry up the Fiſtula, take red Wine, Goats dung, and Bean-flower, and ſeeth them together, and apply it to the Fiſtula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to ſink down the ſwelling of a Fiſtula, firſt of all ſear it with a drawing Iron in this proportion ſ, and then take Roſin, Sheeps ſuet, and Brimſtone, and boyl them together, and lay it upon a Fiſtula very hot with a cloth, and it will ſink down the ſwelling. It is alſo moſt excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the Wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reaſonable, and it will keep it alſo very clean.

There be other Farriers, which for a fiſtula take Verdigreaſe, Butter and Salt melted together, and pour it ſcalding hot into the ſore; and uſe this till all the fleſh look red; then tent it with Verdigreaſe, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower, and the yolks of Eggs well beaten and mingled together: Laſt of all, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXIV.

A rare and true approved Medicine to cure any Fistula, or hollow impostumation whatsoever.

TAke a pint of the strongest Vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mix therewith the lome of a clay Wall, which hath not any Lime in it, but by no means do not pick out the chopt straws or hay that is in the lome, but boyl them all together till it come to a Salve: then being reasonable hot, spread it over all the swelld place, and over every part which you shall feel hard: and you shall thus do twice a day, and it will not only ripen and break the hollow Ulcer, but also search it to the bottom and heal it. This medicine cureth any sore back whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gall'd or bruised.

CHAP. CXXXV.

Of the Ambury.

AN Ambury is a great spungy Wart full of blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horses body, chiefly about the Eye-brows, Nostrils, or privy parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks-stone. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to tye about with a thred or hair so hard as you can pull it, and the thred will eat in by little and little, in such sort as within seven or eight days it will fall away of it self; and if it be so fat, that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and so deep as you leave none of the root behind, and then dry it up with the powder of Verdigrease, but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the core with the powder of Realger, or mercury, and then to stop the hole with flax dipt in the white of an Egg, for a day or two: and lastly, to dry it up with the powder of unslakt Lime, and Honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers, in stead of tying the Wart with a thred, do tye it with some Horse hair: and that is a great deal the better, and it will rot it off sooner, and faster.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

Of the Cords.

THe Cords is a certain ſtring, which cometh from the ſhackle vein to the Griſtle in the Noſe, and between the Lip, the length of an Almond ; or there be two ſtring like threds, which ly above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and go like a ſmall cord through the body to the noſtrils, making a Horſe to ſtumble much, and ſometimes to fall alſo; and it is a diſeaſe very much incident to many young Horſe. The ſigns are, an apparent ſtiff going, and much ſtumbling, without any outward or viſible Sorrance; the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked Harts horn that is ſharp, put it under the cords, and twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horſe be conſtrained to lift up his foot; then cut the cord aſunder: and put a little Salt into the iſſue, or cut it firſt at the Knee, then at the end of his noſe, and ſo draw it upward a ſpan length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the Horſe blood in the vein that deſcendeth in the inſide of the Leg, by the breſt, and take away at leaſt a pottle of blood, and after ſeven days waſh him with Beef-broth, and it will heal him.

Other Farriers take Muſtard, *Aquavitæ*, and Salet oyl, and boyl them them on the coals, and make a plaiſter, and bind to a place that is grieved, and it will heal him.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warm, bath his Legs therewith, and then rop them up with wet hay ropes, and it will make the Horſe perfectly ſound.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

Of the String halt.

THe ſtring halt, of ſome called the Mary hinchcho, is a ſuddain twitching up of the Horſes hinder Legs, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to indure his feet upon the ground ; the ſigns whereof be an apparent ill-favoured manner of halting moſt viſible to the eye. And the cure is, to take up the middle vain above the thigh, and underneath the ſame, then under the ſaid vein

there

there lies a ſtring, which ſtring muſt be cut away: and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well, and go well.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

Of a Horſe that is Spur-gall'd.

IF a Horſe by the indiſcretion of an Evil Rider, be ſpur-gall'd, which is a diſeaſe moſt plain both to be felt and ſeen: then the cure is, either to bath it with Urine and Salt mixt together, or with Water and Salt, or with warm Vinegar, or elſe bind unto the place the crops of leaves of Nettles ſtamped; and any of theſe will cure him.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

Of Wounds in general.

WOunds, according to the opinion of all Farriers, is a ſolution, diviſion, or parting of the whole: for if there be no ſuch ſolution, or diviſion then it is rather called a Bruiſe then a Wound; & therefore, Wounds are moſt commonly made with ſharp or piercing Weapons, and bruiſes with blunt weapons: notwithſtanding, if by ſuch blunt weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken, then it is to be called a Wound, as well as the other, and theſe wounds do proceed from ſome ſtroak, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds, ſome be hollow, and ſome be deep and hollow: Again, ſome Wounds chance in fleſhy parts, and ſome in boney and ſinewy places; and thoſe which chance in the fleſhy parts, though they be very deep, yet they be not ſo dangerous as the others, and therefore I will ſpeak firſt of the moſt dangerous. If then a Horſe have a wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place which is full of ſinews, bones or griſtles, then, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, you ſhall firſt waſh the Wound well with white Wine warmed, and keep it ever whilſt you are in dreſſing it, covered with cloaths wet in warm white Wine: that done, you ſhall ſearch the bottom of the wound with a probe or ſmall inſtrument of Steel made for the purpoſe, ſuffering the wound to take as little wind or air as you can poſſible: then having found the depth, ſtop the hole cloſe with a clout until your ſalve be ready: then take of Turpentine, *Mel-roſarum* oyl of Roſes, of each a quar-

tern,

tern, and a little unwrought Wax, and melt them together ſtirring them continually that they may be well mingled together; and if the Wound be a cut, make a handſome rowl or round plegant of ſoft tow, ſo long and ſo big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the moſt part is not ſo wide as the mouth of the Wound: then make another rowl or plegant ſomewhat bigger to fill up the reſt of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both theſe rowls be anointed with the ointment aforeſaid, made luke-warm; only this you muſt ever obſerve, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is beſt, if you can conveniently, to ſtitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimſon ſilk: for that will make it heal the ſooner, and make the skar leſs. But if the hurt be like a hole made with ſome prick, then make a ſtiff tent either of tow or lint ſuch a one as may reach the bottom, anointed with the aforeſaid Ointment, and bolſter the ſame with a little tow: and over both this and the other, or any wound whatſoever, as ſoon as your rowels, plegants or tents are put in, you ſhall clap a ſticking plaiſter made of Pitch, Rozen, Maſtick, and Turpentine melted together as hath been before taught, both to keep in your ſalve, and to comfort the ſore. Now if the mouth of the wound be not wide enough, ſo as the matter may eaſily run forth, if it be in ſuch a place as you may do it without hurting any ſinew, then give it a pretty ſlit from the mouth downward, that the matter may have the freer paſſage, and in any wiſe have an eſpecial regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one means or other, and alſo that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying ſome threed about the upper end thereof, ſo kept, that it may be taken out at pleaſure. Now if the hole be deep, and in ſuch a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full, as big as the hole of a dry ſponge that was never wet, ſo long that it may reach the bottom; and the tent being made ſomewhat full, with continual turning and wrying of it, you ſhall eaſily get it down, and then dreſs the wound with this twice a day, cleanſing the wound every time with a little white-wine luke-warm: for the ſponge anointed with the Ointment aforeſaid, will both draw and ſuck up all the filthy matter, and make it ſo fair within as is poſſible; and as it beginneth to heal, ſo make your tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until it be ready to cloſe up, and never leave tenting it ſo long as it will receive a tent, be it never ſo ſhort: for haſty healing of wounds breedeth Fiſtulaes, which properly be old ſores; and therefore muſt be healed like Fiſtulaes. Now if the

wound proceed from any ancient impoſtumation, then you ſhall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little bay Salt, and a little whole Saffron, and ſo roaſt them in the hot Embers: then plaiſterwiſe lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be putrified, and you would have it away, then make a plaiſter of Cows dung ſod in milk, and clap it to for four and twenty hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others uſe generally for any cure whatſoever, to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Sope, of each half as much, and a little Turpentine; boyl all but the Sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the Sope, and with this ointment dreſs any cut, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers uſe only to take Hogs greaſe and Venice Turpentine and to melt them together, and it will heal any Wound. Other Farriers take eight drams of Turpentine, four drams of new Virgins wax; melt them in a pewter veſſel, and ſtir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whileſt they be hot, pour into them half a pint of white Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoint your hands with Oyl of Roſes, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together, after that put them into the pewter veſſel again, then put to them half an ounce of the gum of Fir-tree, and three drams of the juyce of Betony, then ſeeth them well together until the juyce of Betony be waſted, then put to it three drams of Womans milk, or the milk of a red Cow, and ſeeth them once again until the milk be waſted; and then put it in a cloſe pot or glaſs, and with this dreſs any wound whatſoever, and it will heal it. Others uſe to take Roſemary, and dry it in the ſhadow, and beat it to powder, then waſh the wound with Vinegar, or the Urine of a child, and ſtrew thereon the aforeſaid powder, and it will heal an indifferent wound.

Other Farriers take Worm-wood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, *Olibanum*, beat them all into fine powder, then take Wax and Barrows greaſe, and boyl them on a ſoft fire until they be as thick as any ointment or Salve, with this dreſs any wound and it will heal it. Others uſe to take the tops of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a morter till they come to a Salve, and it will dry and heal a Wound. Now the powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, will dry up and skin any

Wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs greaſe, Wax and Sheepsſuct of each alike; melt them well together to a ſalve, and they will heal any wound. Now if a Horſe be goared upon a ſtake, then you ſhall caſt him, and pour into the wound Butter ſcalding hot, and ſo let him lie till it be gone down into the bottom; and do thus once a day till the wound be whole. If you deſire to keep a wound open, put into it the powder of green Copperas, and it will do it; but if you intend to heal it ſpeedily, then wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve will do it, dreſſing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. CXL.

Of a hurt with an Arrow.

IF a Horſe be ſhot or hurt with an Arrow, tent the hole only with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a day untill the wound be whole.

CHAP. CXLI.

Of the healing of any old ſore or Ulcer.

OLd Ulcers or ſores are of three kinds; the firſt deep, hollow and crooked, and they be called Fiſtulaes; the ſecond broad and ſhallow, but moſt ſpreading and encreaſing, and they be called Cankers; and the laſt broad, deep, black about the ſides and bottom, yet not much increaſing, although not at all healing, and they be called old Sores or Ulcers: They proceed either from ſome great Bruiſe, Wound, or Impoſtume, which is either venomed or abuſed in healing by contrary ſalves; or through the flux and abundance of humours flowing down to thoſe parts, through the negligence of a moſt unskilful Farrier. The ſigns are, the long continuance of the ſore, the thinneſs of the matter which iſſueth away, and the blackneſs of the ſore, which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt cleanſe the ſore well with white Wine; then take Copperas and the leaves of Lillies, beat them well in a morter with Swines greaſe till it come to a perfect Salve, and lay it upon the ſore with flax, and then cover it with a plaiſter as in

caſe of wounds, and renew it once a day, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough Horſe dung, and mix it very well together with Pepper, and the white of an Egg, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day till the Ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers ſtrew opon the ſore the powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others ſeald it once a day with hot oyl Olive, and that will heal it.

CHAP. CXLII.

A moſt certain and approved Cure, for the healing of any old Ulcer whatſoever.

TAke Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cloves, green Copperas, and Brimſtone, of each a like quantity, or Myrrhe double ſomuch as of any one of the other; beat all to powder, then burn it on a Chafing-diſh and coals, but let it not flame: then as the ſmoke ariſeth, take a good handful of Lint, or fine hurds, and hold it over the ſmoke, ſo that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it, then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the Lint or hurds into a very cloſe box, and ſo keep it.

Now when you have occaſion to uſe it, firſt waſh the ſore with Urine or Vinegar made warm, then dry it; and laſtly, lay on ſome of this Lint or hurds; and thus do twice a day, and it is a ſpeedy and moſt infallible cure.

CHAP. CXLIII.

Of Bruiſings or Swellings.

ALL Bruiſings and Swellings come unto a Horſe, either by accident, or by ſome blow, ruſh, pinch, or outward venoming; or elſe naturally, as through the flux of Blood, or through the abundance of Wind. The ſigns are the ſightly appearance in what place or member ſoever they be: And the firſt, which are thoſe which come by accident, are properly called bruiſings, or ſwellings; and the other, if they do rot or corrode, and ſo turn to matter, are called impoſtumes.

Now for the general Cure of any bruiſe or ſwelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take of dry Pitch, of

Gum.

Gum, of each an ounce, of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each four ounces, of Bitumen two ounces, of Wax three ounces, melt and boyl them very well together, then anoint the sore place therewith once a day and it will heal it. But if the swelling proceed only from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of Verjuyce, one pint of Barm, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boyl them very well together, then bind the hay to the swelling very hot, and after pour on the Liquor; do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the tops of Worm-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, Branck Ursine, beat them well together with Swines grease, then seeth them; then add a pretty quantity of Honey, Linseed-Oyl, and Wheat meal; then stir it over the fire till all again be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers use first to prick the swelling with a fleam, then take of Wine-lees a pint, as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of Cummin; boyl them together, and lay this somewhat warm unto it, renewing it every day once until the swelling either depart or else come to a head; which if it do not, then launce it, and heal it according to a wound.

Other Farriers take of Rozen, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each half a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then strain them, and add of Myrrh, Sarcocol, and the flower of Fenugreek, and of Linseed, of each an ounce; incorporate them all together, and then make it thick like a Salve with the meal of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling, and it will asswage it.

Other Farriers take of *Galbanum*, and of Cerus, of each an ounce, of Oyl two ounces, and of Wax three ounces, mix them together over a soft fire, and when they are brought to a Salve, then lay it unto the swelling, and it it will asswage.

If you take only rotten Litter, or Hay boyled in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any swelling, it will take it away. Now if the swelling be upon the Legs, and come by any strain. Then you shall take of Nerve oyl one pound, of black Sope one pound, of Boars grease half a pound, melt and boyl them all well together, then strain it, and let it cool; then when occasion serveth, anoint and chafe your Horses Legs therewith, holding a hot Iron near thereunto, to make the Ointment enter in the better; then rope up his Legs, and keep them clean from dust or durt: But if the

swelling

ſwelling be upon any part of the back or body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boyl them together, then ſpread it on a cloath and lay it on the ſwoln place, and let it there ſtick till it fall away of it ſelf. Now if the ſwelling proceed from any windy cauſe, and ſo appear only in the Horſes belly, then you ſhall take a ſharp pointed Knife or Bodkin, and arm it ſo with ſome ſtay that it go not too deep for piercing his guts: then ſtrike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of the Haunch bone, half a foot beneath the back bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quill thercin, or ſome feather to keep it open a while, the wind will avoid the better, then heal it up again.

It is alſo very good to Rake the Horſe, and to ride him up and down a little: but if the ſwelling be under the Horſes jaws, or about any part of his head, then you ſhall take his own dung hot as ſoon as he makes it, and with a cloath bind it faſt thereto renewing it twice a day till the ſwelling be gone. See further in the new additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞.

CHAP. CXLIV.

Of Impoſtumes, and firſt how to ripen them.

IMpoſtumes are a gathering and knitting together of many and moſt corrupt humors in any part or member of the body, making that part to ſwell extremely and growing into ſuch violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and break out into foul, mattery and running ſores, they commonly proceed either from corruption of food, or corruption of blood; they are at the firſt appearance, very hard, and very fere: wich hardneſs is the principal ſign that they will rot. And of theſe impoſtumes, ſome be hot impoſtumes, and ſome be cold; yet foraſmuch as every impoſtume muſt firſt be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we will firſt ſpeak of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any impoſtume, (according to the opinions of the ancient Farriers) You ſhall take of *Sanguis Draconis*, of gum *Arabick*, of new Wax of Maſtick, of Pitch of *Greece*, of Incenſe, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and ſtraining them make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the impoſtume without renewing: and it will both ripen, break, and heal any impoſtume.

Other

Other Fariers take of ſwines greaſe, red wax, and the flower of *Euforbium*, and mixing them on the fire well together, lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of Honey, and of Wheat-meal, of each a like quantity, and either boyl it in the Decoction of Mallows, or elſe mix it with the yolk of an Egg, and it will ripen, break, and heal; yet it muſt be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barly meal, and boyl it with Wine and Pigeons dung, and ſo lay it to the Impoſtume plaiſter-wiſe, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock Leaf, roſt it in the hot Embers as you would a warden, and then lay it to the Impoſtume as hot as may be well endured, renewing it once a day; and it will ripen, break, and heal it. A Plaiſter of Shoo-makers Wax will do the like alſo.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow roots, and Lilly roots, and then bruiſe them, and put thereto Hogs greaſe and Linſeed meal, and plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it perfectly. See further in the new additions for the Fiſtula, noted thus ☞.

CHAP. CXLV.

Of old Impoſtumes.

IF the Impoſtume do proceed from any old Cauſes, as thoſe which riſe after cold taking, or when a Horſe is at graſs, in the Winter ſeaſon, then you ſhall take the herb called Balm, and ſtamp it and Hogs greaſe well together, and ſo plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the ſore, and it will heal it: or elſe when the impoſtume is ripe, open it in the loweſt part with a hot Iron, then waſh it with warm Urine; after that anoint it with Tar and Oyl well mixt together; and if you make your inciſion in the manner of a half Moon, it is the better.

Other Farriers take white Mints, and ſeeth them in Wine, Oyl, Ale, and Butter, and ſo lay it hot to, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Cuckow-ſpit, and ſtamp it with old greaſe, and ſo apply it, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take a handful of Rue, and ſtamp it well with the yolks of Eggs and Honey, and then apply it plaiſter-wiſe, and it will heal any cold impoſtume. ☞

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLVI.

Of hot Impostumes.

IF the Impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of travel, parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the blood, then according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stamp it, and mix it with the grounds of Ale, Hogs grease, and bruised Mallows, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, break, and heal it: But if you would not have the swelling to break, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beer, and having boyled Mallows therein, bath the sore place therewith, and it will drive the swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettice-seed, or Poppy-seed, and mix it with oyl of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take it clean away.

CHAP. CXLVII.

Of the Tetter.

A Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many times it will remain between the skin and the flesh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not break.

The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers, is, to make a strong-Lye with old Urine, Ashes, and green Copperas, and bath the knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tail, and cast them away, the rest cut into small pieces, and roast them on a spit, then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot anoint the Sorrance therewith, and it will heal it in a short time, but look that you touch no part of the Horse therewith, save only the Sorrance, for it will poyson and venom.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

Of sinews that are cut, pricked or bruised.

IF a Horse by the mischance of some Wound, shall have any of his sinews either cut, prick'd, or sore bruised, then if there be no Convulsion of the sinews, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take Tar, and Bean-flower, and a little Oyl of Roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the place, and if it do not present good, take Worms and Sallet oyl fryed together, or else the ointment of Worms, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they knit the sinews again if they be not clean asunder. But if there be a Convulsion, then with a pair of shears you must cut the sinew in pieces, and then take Rozen and Turpentine, Pitch, and *Sanguis Draconis*; then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take flax and put upon it, for that will cleanse and defend it, and than this Medicine there is none better for any swoln joint whatever.

Now if the joynt be not much sweld, but only that the sinews are exceeding stiff through the great bruisings, then you shall take of black Sope a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale till it wax thick like Tar, then reserve it, and when you shall see cause, use to anoint the sinews and joints therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth, although they be never so much shrunk, as hath been approved.

CHAP. CXLIX.

Of fretting the Belly with the foregirths.

IF when you saddle and gird your Horse, the girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithal drawn too straight, they will not only gall and wound the Horse under the belly very much, but they will also stop the blood which is in the principal veins, called the plat-veins, in some sort, as they will occasion most extreme and hard swellings.

The cure whereof, is, according to the general opinion, to take of Oyl de Bay, and Oyl of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozen; mingle them well together

gether and then anoint the Horſes ſore bowels therewith; then take either ſlox, or chop ſlax, and clap upon it, and ſo let it abide until it fall away of it ſelf, and it will ſurely cure him.

Other Farriers uſe to take Vinegar and Sope, and beat them well together, and ſtir it with a ſtick or cloath, and then all to rub and waſh the galled place therewith, and do thus at leaſt twice a day and it will dry it up in two or three days at the moſt; but if the galling be about any part of the Horſes neck, then you ſhall take the leaves of Briony, (called the hedge-vine) and ſtamp them and mix them with wine and then plaiſterwiſe lay it to the ſore, and it will heal it.

CHAP. CL.

Of Bliſters.

BLiſters are certain wateriſh hollow blebs, which do ariſe betwixt the skin and the Fleſh, proceeding either from ſlight burnings, ſcaldings, or chafings, and they be very full of thin matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the moſt general Farriers is, firſt in the Sun to fret them till they bleed; then take the roots of Ivy, and ſtamping them in a morter, mix them with as much Tar, Brimſtone and Allom, till they come to a Salve; and then dreſs the bliſter therewith, and it will heal it.

CHAP CLI.

To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any ſuperfluous fleſh.

WHen a Horſe hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more then natural, or when he hath any Lumps or bunches of ſuperfluous fleſh, otherwiſe than of right doth belong to his true proportion; then ſuch bones knots or bunches, are called Excretions, proceeding from tough and flegmatick ſubſtances, ſtirred up either by moſt ſore bruiſes, imperfect healed Wounds, or other naughty putrifaction of the blood, being moſt apparent to the eye, and moſt palpable to the hand;

Now for the Cure, (according to the general opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) you ſhall firſt uſe Corroſive medicines, after drawing Medicines, and laſtly drying medicines; or more particularly, thus you ſhall cure them: firſt with an inciſion Knife ſcarifie the Excretions,

Excretions, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and ſifted, and when it hath eaten the Excretion away, then heal it up with drying Salves, as powder of Honey, and Lime, or Bole-armony, or ſuch like. Other Farriers uſe after they have made the Excretion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the aſhes of Vitis, and as much unſlakt Lime mixt with ſix ounces of ſtrong lye, firſt ſtrained, then ſod till half be conſumed and ſo brought to a firm ſubſtance; then keep it in a glaſs in a dry place, and apply it to the Excretion till it have eaten it away, and then heal it up as is beforeſaid; other Farriers uſe to take a pound of ſtrong Lye, and Sope, and a quarter of a pound of Vitriol Romane, one ounce of Sal-armoniack, and as much Roch Allom, and boyl them together until they be very thick, and then with that Ointment eat away the Excretion. Others uſe to take of *Egyptiacum* the ſtrongeſt kind, and lay it on the Excretion with a Cotton three or four times, and it will take it clean away: This medicine is moſt excellent for any ſplint, and no ſmall importance, if it be uſed againſt any Fiſtula; for it will ſink it although it were in the Crown.

CHAP. CLII.

How to eat away any ſuperfluous and dead Fleſh.

IF when your Horſe hath any Wound, Ulcer and other ſore you ſhall perceive that there groweth therein dead Fleſh, which dead Fleſh you ſhall know partly by the inſenſibility thereof, and partly in that it is a ſpungy, hollow, naughty fleſh, not ſubſtantial as the true fleſh is, and either of a blackiſh, or an high red Colour; then it ſhall be meet that you ſeek all means poſſible how to conſume and eat away that ſuperfluous and naughty fleſh, becauſe the ſore that is peſtered therewith, neither can nor will ever heal, till it be cleanſed of the ſame: Therefore according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, the beſt means to eat it away, is, to boyl freſh greaſe and Verdigreaſe, of each alike quantity together, and either to tent or Plaiſter the ſore therewith, until the dead fleſh be conſumed.

Other Farriers take either the ſcrapings of Harts-horn, or Ox-horn, and mixing them with old Sope, dreſs the ſore therewith, and it will eat away dead fleſh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea-ſponge, and therewith dreſs the ſore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers uſe the

powder of Risagallo, Risagre, but it is a great deal too strong a fretter. Others use Litargy, or Lime in Lye, but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either White or black Elleborus, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Lithargy, Vitriol, unslakt Lime, Roch Allom, Galls, Soot, or the ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce, and they will consume dead flesh; likewise Quick-silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce made into powder, will do the like: the juyce of Borage, of Scabious, of Fumitory, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce; a little old Oyl and Vinegar, boyl with a soft fire, put to it Tar, & it will likewise eat away any dead flesh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Ox dung, and Vinegar, and mix them well together, and lay it to the sore, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then anoint it with grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment: Other Farriers use instead of Risagallo, to take the powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of unslakt Lime and Tartar, of each two ounces; mix them together and therewith dress the sore, after you have washt it well with strong Vinegar, and if you please, you may add thereunto Vitriol, and Allom for they are both consumers of dead flesh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar and Mans-dung burnt with Salt, and then beaten into powder, and strewed on the sore; or else take salt, unslakt Lime, and Oyster-shels, and beat them in a Morter with strong Lye or old Urine, till it be like a paste. Then bake it in an Oven, and after beat it to a powder, strew it on the sore, and it will eat away the dead flesh.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle-seeds have been sodden, and then strew upon it the powder of Ver-digrease.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these Medicines, you do shave away the hair, that it be no impediment to the Salve; also when you have dresst it once, and see that there is no asker raised, then you shall dress it with some mollifying or healing salve till the asker come away, and then dress it with your eating Salve again: and thus do until you behold that all the dead Flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound Flesh and then heal it up as in case of Wounds. Also Precipitate simple of it self will eat away any dead Flesh.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLIII.

For Knots or joynts, Hardneſs, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

THere do grow in joynts three ſorts of ſwellings: namely, a hot ſwelling, a hard ſwelling, and a ſoft ſwelling, all which you may eaſily diſtinguiſh by your feeling; and they do proceed either from abundance of groſs humours ingendred by foul keeping, or elſe by accident, as from ſome Wound, Ruſh, or Strain. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, is, to beat the powder called Diapente, together with Oyl, till it be like an Ointment, and then apply it once a day to the grief, and it will take it away, eſpecially if it be a Cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers uſe to incorporate with oyl, half an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of Wax, and ten of Bird-Lime, and apply that to the grief, and it will eaſe it. Other Farriers take Wine, and old Oyl, and Tar, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place, and it will help it,

Others of our old and latter Farriers take half a pound of greaſe, three ſcruples of Muſtard, and the like of Bay Salt, mix theſe with Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Others uſe to take a plaiſter of figs, and the roots of fern and rocket, or mingle them with Greaſe and Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Other Farriers uſe to take the *Unguentum Baſilicon*, which is made of Honey, Storax, *Galbanum*, *Bdellium*, black Pepper, Bay-berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniack, and of the powder of Frankincenſe as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with Sheeps ſuet, and apply it to the grief, and it will help it.

Other Farriers take dry Pitch, pitch of *Greece*, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of Lime, of each four parts, of *Bitumen* two parts of Wax three parts; melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grief, and peradventure alſo the eye-ſore.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLIV.

How to cure any Wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.

ACcording to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first with a Probe, or long instrument, search whether the Bullet remain within the flesh or no; and if you find that it doth, then with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remain: for in the end nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any grief or impediment; because Lead will not corrode nor canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little Varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, anointing it within even unto the bottom: Then stop the mouth of the wound with a little soft flax dipped in Varnish also; then charge all the swoln place with this charge: Take of Bole-armony a quartern, of Linseed beaten into powder, half a pound, of Bean-flower as much, and three or four Eggs, shells and all, and of Turpentine a quartern, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the fire, and being somewhat warm, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clap a cloath or piece of Lether upon it, to keep the wound from the cold air, continuing both to anoint the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of four or five days: Then at the five days end, leave anointing of it, and tent it with a tent reaching to the bottom of the Wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, renewing it every day once or twice until the fire be throughly killed, which you shall perceive by the mattering of the Wound, and by falling of the swelling; For as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thick matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish water, neither will the swelling allwage; and then take of Turpentine washed in nine several waters, half a pound, and put thereunto three yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this ointment, renewing it every day once until the wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few Weavers Linnen thrums, made very Knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them clean through the wound, turning them up and down in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side upon the swoln places, with the charge aforesaid,

until

until you perceive that the fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaister upon one of the holes, and tent the other with a tent in the Salve, made of washt Turpentine, Eggs, and Saffron, as is before said. Other Farriers use only to kill the fire with oyl of Cream, and after to heal the wound up with Turpentine, Wax, and Hogs grease molten together.

Other Farriers kill the fire with Snow Water, and charge the swelld place with Cream and Barm beaten together, and then heal up the Wound by dipping the tent in the yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron well beaten and mixt together.

CHAP. CLV.

Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.

ACcording to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the sore round about, and in every part very clean with warm Urine; then kill the fire, by anointing the place with oyl and Water beaten together: dressing him so every day until the sore be all raw, and then anoint it with Hogs grease, and strew thereupon the powder of unslakt Lime, dressing him thus every day once until he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash and cleanse the sore with Sallet Oyl only warmed, then to kill the fire with Cream and Oyl beaten together, and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Cream and Soot mixt together; and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of Honey and Lime, until it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP. CLVI.

Of the bitting with a mad Dog.

IF your Horse at any time be bitten with a mad Dog, the venom of whose teeth will not only drive him into an extreme torment, but it will also infect and inflame his blood, in such sort, that the Horse will be indangered to dye mad. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goats dung, of flesh that hath lain long in Salt, and of the herb Ebulus generally called Danwort, of each half a pound, and forty Walnuts; stamp all these together, and lay part thereof to the sore, and

and it will ſuck out the venom, and heal up the wound; but upon the firſt dreſſing, you ſhall give the Horſe Wine and Treacle mixt togethar to drink.

There be other Farriers, which firſt give the Horſe Sack and Sallet Oyl to drink, then with a hot Iron cauterize and burn the ſore; and laſtly heal up the wound with the ſalve firſt recited.

Qther Farriers firſt give the Horſe two or three ſpoonfuls of the Powder of Diapente to drink in a pint of Muskadine; then take a live Pidgeon, and cleaving her in the midſt, lay it hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the venom; then heal the ſore with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe well molten together. The leaves of Ariſtoloch bruiſed will take away any poyſon.

CHAP. CLVII.

Of hurts done by the tusks of a Boar.

IF a Horſe be ſtricken with the tusks of a Boar, you ſhall then take Copperas or Vitriol, and the powder of a Dogs head being burned, after the tongue have been pulled out, and caſt away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the ſore, and it will cure it: Yet before you dreſs it, firſt waſh the ſore very well, either with Vinegar, or with white Wine, or Urine.

CHAP. CLVIII.

To heal the biting or ſtinging of Serpents, or any venemous beaſt whatſoever.

IF your Horſe be either bitten or ſtung, either with a Serpent, or any other venemous beaſt, which you ſhall eaſily know by the ſudden ſwelling either of the body or member; then you ſhall firſt chafe him up and down until he ſweat, and then let him blood in the roof of the mouth; and laſtly take a young Cock or a Pidgeon, and cleaving it in the midſt, clap it hot to the Wound, and then give the Horſe white Wine and Salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the Herb called Sanicula, ſtamp it, and temper it together with the milk of a Cow, till it be all of one colour, and give it the Horſe to drink, and it will heal him. Other Farriers clap to the ſore Hogs dung, or Ox dung, or Henbane bruiſed, or elſe the

aſhes

aſhes of Reeds; then give him to drink Mug-wort, or great Tanſie, and Wine and Camomil ſtampt together: Or elſe give him Wine and *Oleum Roſatum* mixt together.

Other Farriers make a Plaiſter of Onions, Honey, and Salt, ſtampt and mingled together, and lay that to the ſore place, & give the Horſe Wine and Treacle to drink, or elſe white Popper, Rue, and Time, mixt with Wine. Other Farriers take Aphodillus, *Haſtula Regia*, ſtamp with old wine, and lay to the ſore: for it is moſt ſoveraign good.

CHAP. CLIX.

Of Lice or Vermin, and how to kill them.

THe Lice or Vermin which breed upon a Horſe, be like unto geeſe Lice, but ſomewhat bigger, and do breed moſt commonly about the Ears, Neck, Mane, Tail, and generally over the whole body; they do proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where Trees are continually dropping upon them: The ſigns are, the Horſe will be always rubbing and ſcratching, and albeit, he eat much meat, yet will not proſper: and with this continual rubbing, he will fret and wear away all his Mane and Tail, and you ſhall alſo perceive the Lice, when the Sun doth ſhine, running on the tops of the hairs. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Sope one pound, and Quick-ſilver half an ounce, mix and beat them together well, until the Quick-ſilver be kill'd, and then anoint the Horſe all over therewith, and it will conſume the Lice preſently.

Other Farriers take Staves-aker and Sope, and mixing them together, anoint the Horſe all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their roots or ſtalks, and ſeeth them in ſtrong Urine, and then waſh the Horſe therewith, after that anoint all his body over with *Sanguis Draconis*, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Oyl, and Swines greaſe, very well mixt together.

Others uſe to chafe all the body over with Quick-ſilver, and ſoft greaſe mixt together, till the Quick-ſilver be kill'd, and in two or three dreſſings the Lice will be conſumed.

CHAP. CLX.

How to save Horses from the stinging of Flies in Summer.

IF you will save your Horse in the Summer time from the stinging or biting of flies, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall anoint all the Horses body over either with oyl and Bayberries mingled together, or else bind unto the head-stal of his Collar, a spunge dipped in strong Vinegar: Some use to sprinkle the stable with water wherein herb of Grass hath been laid to steep; or else to perfume the stable with the smoke of Ivy or Calamint, or with Githe burnt in a pan of coals.

☞ But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is, to make two good wisps of Rue, and therewithal to rub the Horses body all over, and no flye will light upon him, or touch him, as hath been often approved.

CHAP. CLXI.

Of bones being brooken, or out of joynt.

OUr common English Farriers are very far to seek in this cure; ☞ because they do neither perfectly acquaint themselves with the members of a Horse, nor have so much invention in this extremity, to make a Horse, being an unreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also that in the old traditions in Horse-leach craft affirm, that all fractures above the Knee are incurable; and so despairing, they cease to make practice. But they are much deceived: for neither the fracture above the Knee, nor the fracture below the Knee, is more incureable in a Horse than in Man; if the Farrier can tell how to keep the Horse from struging or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your Horse have any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the deprivation of the use of that member, and as easie to be felt by the separation of the bones, and one part being higher than the other besides the roughness and inequality of the place grieved: you shall then for the cure thereof, First take a strong double Canvas, which shall be as broad as from the Horses fore-shoulder to the flank; and shall have another double Canvas,

which

which ſhall come from between the Horſe fore-booths up to the top of the withers, where meeting with the reſt of the Canvas, and having exceeding ſtrong loops, to which ſtrong ropes muſt be faſtned, you ſhall by main force ſling up the Horſe from the ground, ſo as his feet may no more but touch the ground: And if it be a fore Leg that is broken, then you ſhall raiſe him a little higher before than behind: If a hinder Leg, then a little higher behind than before, ſo that the Horſe may reſt moſt upon the Members moſt ſound. When your Horſe is thus ſlung, then you ſhall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrap it cloſe about with unwaſhed Wool newly pulled from the Sheeps back, binding it faſt to the Leg with a ſmooth Linnen roler ſoaked before in Oyl and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roler lye as ſmooth and plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wool dipt in Oyl and Vinegar, and then ſplint it with three broad, ſmooth, and ſtrong ſplints, binding them faſt at both ends with a thong, and in any caſe the Horſes Legs be kept out very ſtraight, the ſpace of forty days, and let not the bones be looſened above thrice in twenty days, unleſs it ſhrink, and ſo require to be new dreſt and bound agan; but fail not every day once to pour on the ſore place, through the ſplints, Oyl and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty days end, if you perceive that the broken place be ſowdred together again with ſome hard Knob or Griſtle, then looſe the bonds, and eaſe the Canvas, ſo as the Horſe may tread more firmly upon his ſore foot, which when he doth, you ſhall looſen him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, uſing from henceforth to anoint the ſore place either with ſoft greaſe, or elſe with one of theſe Plaiſters, or Ointments, Take of *Spuma argenti*, of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Sallet Oyl half a pound, of Armoniack, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Wax, and of Rozen, of each two ounces, of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdigreaſe, of eack half a pound, boyl the Vinegar, Oyl and *Spuma argenti* together, until it Wax thick: then put thereunto the Pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without ſtirring at all, and that being alſo molten, put in then all the reſt, ſet the pot again to the fire, and let them boyl all together, until they be all united in one: that done, ſtrain it, and make it in Plaiſter form, and uſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerve.

Other ancient and well experienced Farriers, take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the pureſt and fineſt part of Frankincenſe one ounce, of *Amoniacum* four ounces, of dry Rozen and of *Galbanum* of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints; boyl firſt the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the *Amoniacum* diſſolved firſt in Vinegar, and after that the aforeſaid Drugs: and after they have boyled all together, and be united in one, ſtrain it, and make it into a Plaiſter, and uſe it according to occaſion.

Other Farriers take of old Sallet oyl a quart, and put thereunto of Hogs greaſe, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyl together until it begin to blub above: then take it from the fire, and, when you uſe any of the Ointment, let it be very hot, and well chafed in; and then one of the two former Plaiſters folded above it, and it is moſt ſoveraign and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

CHAP. CLXII.

Of bones out of Joynt.

IF a Horſe have any of his bones out of the joynt, as either his Knee, his ſhoulder, his paſtorn, or ſuch like, which you ſhall perceive both by the uncomelineſs of the joynt, and alſo feel by the hollowneſs of the member that is diſplaced: Then your readieſt Cure, is, to caſt the Horſe on his back, and putting four ſtrong paſtorns on his feet, draw him up ſo as his back may no more but touch the ground; then draw the grieved Leg higher then the reſt, till the poiſe and weight of his body have made the joynt to ſhoot into its right place again; which you ſhall know when it doth, by a ſudden and great crack which the joynt will give when it falleth into the true place: then with all gentleneſs looſe the Horſe, and let him riſe: And then anoint all the grieved place, either with the laſt ointment rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, or elſe with the oyl of Mandrake, or the oyl of Swallows; both which are of moſt ſoveraign vertue.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXIII.

To dry up humours, or to bind, being astrictive, or binding charges.

TAke of *Vnguentum Tripharmacum*, made of Litargy, Vinegar, take old Oyl, boyled till they be thick, only take as much oyl as of both the others, and it will stop & stay the flux of any humours.

If you take strong Lye, it is a great drier, and binder of humours.

Dissolve in Vinegar, Rozen, Affalto, and Myrrhe, of each an ounce, of red Wax half an ounce, and of Armoniack half an ounce, mingle them well together in the boyling; for this Salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pound; and when it is sodden, strain it with three ounces of Ceruse, and as much Allom melted, and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figs beaten with Allom, Mustard, and Vinegar, do dry abundantly.

Oyl and soft grease beaten to a Salve with Vitriol, Galls, and Allom, and the powder of Pomegranats, Salt and Vinegar, both dry and bind sufficiently.

Sope and unslakt Lime mixt together, drieth perfectly after any incision.

Verdigrease, Orpiment, Sal-armoniack, and the powder of Coloquintida, of each alike, made into a Plaister, with Milk or Wax, drieth and bindeth.

The grease of Snakes roasted, the head and tail being cut away, is a great drier.

To conclude, the bark of a Willow tree burnt to ashes, is a great drier, and binder, as any simple whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIV.

A plaister to dry up superfluous moisture, and to bind parts loosened.

TAke of Bitumen one pound, of the purest part of Frankincense three ounces, of *Bdellium Arabicum* one ounce, of Deers suet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of Common Wax one pound, of Resin

Cabial

Cabial half a pound, *Viſcus Italicus*, one ounce and a half, of Apoxima one ounce, of the juyce of Hyſſop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound: let all theſe be well and perfectly molten diſſolved, and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a Plaiſter thereof.

CHAP. CLXV.

Another plaiſter to dry up any ſwelling, wind-gall, ſplent, or bladders, in or about the joynts.

TAke of Virgins Wax half a pound, of Rozen one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and an half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrhe ſecundary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Coſtus three ounces: boyl all theſe things together in an earthen pot, ſaving the Armoniack and Coſtus, which being firſt grouud like fine Flower, muſt be added unto the other things, after that, they have been boyled and cooled, and then boyled all together again, and well ſtirred, ſo as they may be incorporated together, and made all one ſubſtance, and then applying as occaſion ſhall be adminiſtred.

CHAP. CLXVI.

Receits to diſſolve humours.

TAke of Worm-wood, Sage, Roſemary, and the bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boyl them in oyl with a good quantity of Linſeed: and make a bath thereof, bath the grieved part, and it will diſſolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figs ſtampt with Salt till they come to a perfect ſalve, diſſolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores, and giving a large paſſage.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXVII.

How to mollifie any hardneſs.

Take of Linſeed pun'd, and of Fenugreek, of each four ounces, of Pitch and Rozen, of each three ounces; of the flowers of Roſes two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* three ounces; boyl them together, then add three ounces of Turpentine, ſix ounces of Honey, and a little Oyl: and then applying the ſalve, it will mollifie and ſoften any hard ſubſtance.

Malvaviſco well ſod, and ſtampt with *Oleum Roſatum*, being laid hot to any hardneſs will make it ſoft.

Boyl Branck urſine, and Mallows together, and beat them with Oyl and Lard, and they will ſoften much.

Malvaviſco, Cole-worts, Branck urſine, herb of the wall, and old greaſe pounded, doth mollifie very much.

The oyl of Cypreſs, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheat-meal, Honey, Pelitory, Branck urſine, and the leaves of Worm-wood being beaten with Swines greaſe, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth ſuddenly mollifie it, and is paſſing good for any ſtripe alſo.

Greaſe, Muſtard-ſeed, and Cummin boyled together, doth mollifie very much;

Take of Sope half an ounce, of unſlakt Lime an ounce, and mix them well with ſtrong Lye, and it will mollifie even the hardeſt hoofs.

The juyce of the Leaves and roots of Elder, or a plaiſter made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvellouſly.

So doth the juyce of the tops of Cypreſs, and dry Figs, macerated in Vinegar, and ſtrained, of each three ounces: And if you add to it of Salt-niter one ounce, of armoniack half an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an Ointment, it will mollifie any hardneſs very ſufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the roots of Cucumbers, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old greaſe, will mollifie any hardneſs ſpeedily.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

To harden any ſoftneſs.

THe ſole of any old ſhoo burnt, and ſodden in Vinegar, will harden hooſs, and ſo will alſo the powder of Galls boyled with Bran and Salt in ſtrong Vinegar.

The powder of Honey and Lime, or the Powder of Oyſter-ſhels, or the powder of a burnt felt, or thick Cream and Soot mixt together, will harden any ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIX.

To Conglutinate.

IRis *Illyrica* beaten and ſifted, mingled with Pepper, Honey, Currants, and given the Horſe to drink with Wine and oyl, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward rupture or burſtneſs whatſoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the pine, with the yolks of Eggs, given likewiſe to drink with Wine and oyl, doth alſo conglutinate any inward member or vein broken.

Incenſe, Maſtick, and cut, doth the like alſo. Poligano ſod in Wine, and given to drink is good alſo.

The roots and ſeed of Aſparagus ſod in water, and given to the Horſe; then after for three days give him Butter and Opoponax with Honey and Myrrhe, and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXX.

To mundifie and cleanſe any ſore.

TAke oyl of Olives, ſwines greaſe clarified, the greaſe of a young Fox, Turpentine, Allom, and white Wax, ſeeth them oll together till they be moſt throughly incorporated together, and with this Ointment dreſs any foul ſore whatſoever, and it will mundifie and cleanſe it moſt ſufficiently.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXI.

Of Repercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive back humours.

REpercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive evil humours back, are commonly called amongſt Farriers, Plaiſters or Salvers defenſative, and are to be uſed about every great Wound or Ulcer, leſt the flux of humours flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of theſe Repercuſſive medicines theſe are the beſt, either Vinegar, Salt, and Bole-armoniack beaten together, and ſpread round about the ſore, or elſe white Lead and Sallet oyl beaten alſo together, or red Lead and Sallet oyl, or elſe *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and ſuch like.

CHAP. CLXXII.

Of burning Compoſitions.

BUrning Compoſitions are for the moſt part Corroſives, of which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more at large in a Chapter following: yet for as much as ſome are of better temper than others, you ſhall here underſtand, that of all burning compoſitions, the gentleſt is *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, next to it is Verdigreaſe and Hogs greaſe beaten together; next to it is Precipitate and Turpentine mixt together: next to it is Arſnick allayed with any oyl, or healing ſalve: Next to it is Mercury ſublimate, likewiſe allayed with ſome cooling ſalve: And the worſt is Lime and Sope, or Lime and ſtrong Lye beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the ſoundeſt part or member whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIII.

For all manner of hurts about an Horſe whatſoever.

TAke an ounce of Oyl, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Wax, mingle them at the fire: this will heal any wound or Gall, and keep it clean from filth, water, and durt.

Take Vinegar and Honey, and boyl it together, when it is cold, add the Powder of Verdigreaſe, Copperas and Braſs burnt, mingle them well together: this will take away all ill and dead fleſh, and cleanſe and heal any old Ulcer.

Take Wax, Pitch, Swines greaſe, and Turpentine, and mix them well together: this will heal any bone, ſpel, or any other ſtub.

Take houſe Snails, and ſeeth them in Butter, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being oft renewed. So will alſo the roots of Reeds being bruiſed and applyed.

The Roots of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with Honey, is good for any old ſore whatſoever.

Take Salt, Butter, and Honey, or white Wax, Turpentine, and oyl *Roſatum*, of each a like quantity, with twice as much Bean-flower as of any of the other: mix it very well together, and make it into a Salve, and it will heal any ſore, either old or new whatſoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine, and Deers ſuet, or the Marrow of a Stag, and mix them well together, and it will heal any Wound or any Impoſtume whatſoever: ſo will alſo Wax, Oyl, Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Sheeps ſuet, well molten together: or the Powder of Maſtick, Frankincenſe, and Aloes, mixt and molten well together.

The whites of Eggs beaten with *Oleum Roſatum*, and Salt, and ſo laid upon flax hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part where the Muſcles are.

If you will purifie, cleanſe, and heal any old ſore, take three pints of well clarified Honey, and boyl it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigreaſe, and ſo apply it: or elſe take of Maſtick, and Verdigreaſe, of each half an ounce, of Frankincenſe one ounce, of new Wax four ounces, of Turpentine ſix ounces, and of Hogs greaſe two pound: boyl and incorporate all theſe together, and then apply it to the ſore place, and it will both cleanſe, purifie, and heal.

Chick-weed, Groundſel, Graiſe, and ſtale Urine, very well boyled together, will heal any galling or hurts by halter, or other accidents, or any ſtrain, or ſtripe, or ſwelling, which cometh by any ſuch like miſchance.

Take of new Milk three quarts, a good handful of Plantain, let it boyl till a pint be conſumed: then add three ounces of Allom made into powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy, made likewiſe into Powder: then let it boyl a little, till it have a hard curd, then ſtrain it: with this warm, bath any old Ulcer, then dry it, and lay on ſome *Unguentum Baſilicon*; this cleanſeth, drieth, ſtrengthneth, and killeth the itch, and healeth the fouleſt Ulcer either in man or beaſt that may be. Alſo, if you take of Milk a quart, of Allom in Powder two ounces, of Vinegar a ſpoonful; when

when the Milk doth ſeeth, put in the Allom and Vinegar, then take off the curd, and uſe the reſt, and it will likewiſe dry up and heal any foul old ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIV.

How to make the powder of Honey and Lime.

TAke ſuch a quantity of unſlakt Lime, as you ſhall think fit, beat it into very fine powder: then take ſo much Honey as ſhall ſuffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very ſtiff paſte, in the form of a thick Cake or Loaf: then put the ſame Cake or Loaf into a hot Oven, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red: then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine Powder, and then uſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerve. It drieth, healeth, and skinneth any ſore whatſoever very marvellouſly.

CHAP. CLXXV.

The order of taking up of Veins, and wherefore it is good.

FIrſt, before we ſpeak of the order of taking up of Veins, you ſhall underſtand, that all Veins, except the Neck-veins, the Eye-veins, the Breſt-veins, Palat-veins, and the Spur-veins, are to be taken up, and not ſtricken with the fleam: partly becauſe they are ſo little and thin, that if you ſtrike them, you ſhall either indanger the ſtriking thorough them; or partly becauſe they are ſo near adjoyning to Arteries and Sinews, that if in ſtriking you ſhould hit and prick either Artery or Sinew, it were a preſent laming of the Horſe, as I have oftentimes ſeen and noted in the practice of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a vein, it is thus.

Firſt, you ſhall caſt your Horſe either upon ſome ſoft ground, graſs, ſome dunghill that is not very moiſt, or in ſome lightſome Houſe, upon good ſtore of ſweet ſtraw; then when the Horſe is thus caſt, you ſhall look for the vein which you intend to take up, and if it be either ſo ſmall, or lye ſo deep, that you can hardly perceive it: Then you ſhall with warm Water, rub, chafe, and bath all that part where the vein lyeth; then take a narrow ſilk garter, and a handful or two above the vein, (if it be of any of the Horſes Leggs) garter the member very ſtraight; but if it be a vein to be

taken upon the body or breaſt, then with a good ſurſingle either cloſe behind the hinder point of the ſhoulder, or within a handful of the place, where you mean to take up the vein, gird him very ſtraight, and preſently you ſhall ſee the vein to ariſe; then mark that part of the ſkin which covereth the vein, and with your finger and your thumb, pull it ſomewhat aſide from the vein, and then with a very fine inciſion Knife ſlit the skin clean through, without touching the vein, and in any wiſe cut no deeper than through the skin, and that long wiſe too, in ſuch ſort as the vein goeth, yet not above an inch at the moſt in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumb, and the skin will return again into his place, right over the vein as it was before, in ſo much, that but opening the orifice, or ſlit, you ſhall ſee the vein lye blew, and bare before your eyes; then take a fine ſmooth Cronet, made either of the browantler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thruſt it underneath the vein, and lift it up a pretty diſtance, (that is to ſay, half the thickneſs of the Cronet) above the skin; that done, you ſhall then looſe either the Garter or Surſingle, for they are but only helps for you to find out the vein: and when the vein doth appear, have a ſpecial care that you touch not the ſinews.

Now when you have thus taken your vein upon your Cronet, you ſhall then either put a red ſilk thred, dipt in Oyl of Butter, or elſe a ſmall Shoo-makers thred, underneath the vein alſo, ſomewhat higher than the Cronet, which ſilk or thred muſt ſerve to knit the vein when time requires; then the Cronet ſtanding ſtill as before, with your Knife ſlit the top of the vein long wiſe, the length of a Barly corn, that it may bleed: then ſtopping the nether part of your vein with the ſilk, or the thred ſuffer it to bleed from above; then with your ſilk or thred removed above, knit it faſt with a ſure knot above the ſlit, ſuffering it only to bleed from beneath, and having bled there alſo ſufficiently, then knit up the vein beneath the ſlit with a ſure knot, then fill the hole of the vein with Salt, and heal up the wound of the skin with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, or elſe with a little freſh Butter, laid on with a little flax or ſoft tow is ſufficient.

Now the vertue which redownds from this taking up of veins: firſt, it is very neceſſary, and doth eaſe all griefs, ſtrains, and ſtiffneſs of the Limbs: for the taking up of the Plat veins eaſeth all pains in the breaſt, and griefs in the cheſt; the taking up of the fore-thigh veins caſeth Farcies, and ſwellings of the Legs: the taking up of the

ſhackle

ſhackle veins before, helpeth Gourding, Quitter-bones, and the ſwelling of the joynts, ſcabs and ſcratches: the making up of the hinder hough veins, helpeth Spavens of both kinds, moſt eſpecially, any Farcy in thoſe parts, and generally all ſwellings or impoſtumes; the taking up of the paſtorn veins behind, helpeth ſwellings about the Cronet, or nether joynts, pains, Mules, and all manner of Kibed heels, beſides ſundry other ſuch like diſeaſes.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

Of Cauterizing, or giving the fire, the kinds and uſes.

THe giving of fire, which amongſt the beſt Farriers is called Cauterizing, and amongſt the ſimpler burning, ſearing, or bliſtring, is, (according to the general opinion of all the moſt ancient Farriers, the chiefeſt Remedy) and as it were the laſt refuge of all Diſeaſes incident to any Horſes body, whether they be Natural or Accidental: for the violence of fire ſeparating and digeſting all manner of humours into a thin air, and looſe body, cleanſeth and avoideth thoſe groſſneſſes which are the material cauſes of Putrefaction and Ulceration. Now of Cauterization, there be two kinds, the one of them Actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the Inſtrument, that is to ſay, of the hot Iron of what faſhion ſoever; the other Potential, which is done by the applying of a Medicine, whoſe nature is either Corroſive, Putrifactive, or Cauſtick.

Now the firſt of theſe, which is the Cauterize actual, is principally to be uſed when there is any apoſtumation in any ſinew, part, or member, or amongſt any of the moſt principal veins: alſo when you ſhall diſmember or cut away any joynt, or make any inciſion, where there is fear of any flux of blood, or where you ſhall find either the skin or Muſcles, ſhrunk or ſtraightned; and in many ſuch like caſes.

The Cauterizing potential is to be uſed in old cankered Ulcers, Wens, or any ſpungy excretions, either of fleſh or bone whatſoever, of whoſe natures and properties you ſhall read more hereafter in a following Chapter.

CHAP. CLXXVII.

Of the Cauterize actual, and the form of Inſtruments.

AN actual Cautery, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, being moderately uſed, is a notable remedy to ſtop all corruption in members, to keep perfect the complexion of the ſame, and alſo ſtanch the blood; only you muſt have a careful regard that in the handling of your Iron you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords nor Ligaments, leſt you do utterly diſable the member or breed Cramps or Convulſions; except it be when you diſmember or cut away any joynt: As when you do make Curtals, geld Horſes, or ſuch like, and then your Cautery is to be uſed only to ſear the Veins, Sinews, and Ligaments, till ſuch time that you are perfectly aſſured that all Flux of blood is ſtopped whatſoever.

Now again the actual Cautery bindeth together parts looſened, it doth attenuate things blown, and puffeth up, it drieth up ſuperfluous moiſture, it both looſneth, diſperſeth, and divideth evil matter gather'd into knots, it aſſwageth old griefs, it rectifi'th thoſe parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their firſt perfect eſtate, and ſuffereth no abundance of evil humors to grow or increaſe: For the skin being ſeparated, and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction whatſoever through the vertue of the fire, is firſt digeſted and ripened, and then ſo diſſolved that the matter doth iſſue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or ſickned member is now healed, and eaſed of all pain and grief; yea, and inſomuch that the holes being once cloſed, and cloſe ſhut up, the place is ſtronger and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skin than ever it was before; only the greateſt blemiſh that can any way be found in Cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar, which is many times an eye ſore more than is tolerable: and therefore the uſe of Cauterizing is only to be preferred, but in deſperate caſes of great extremity: for albeit it work foul, yet I am perſwaded it is moſt certain, and it works moſt ſure.

Now as touching the Inſtruments wherewith you muſt Cauterize their ſubſtance and proportion, you ſhall underſtand, that the moſt curious Farriers do prefer either Gold or Silver to be the beſt metal to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burn: But the wiſeſt, beſt, and moſt skilful Farriers, take

Copper

Copper to be ſufficient enough, and a metal without any lawful exception; yet where Copper inſtruments cannot be had, there you may with Commendations enough uſe ſuch inſtruments as are made of Iron, and find your work nothing at all hindered.

Now for the faſhion or proportion of your Inſtruments or Irons, they are only to be referred to the ſore or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diverſity whereof your Inſtruments are to be made of divers faſhions; as ſome are to be made Knife-wiſe, either with thin edges, or broad edges; and they be called drawing Knives, or ſearching Knives, becauſe they are principally imployed in the drawing of ſtraight lines, ſhallow or deep, and ſometimes in circular or divers ſquares: ſome are made like ſtraight and ſome like crooked Bodkins, and they are employed either in Fleſhly Excretions, to cauſe Exulcerations, or elſe impoſtumes, to open ſmall paſſages for the matter; ſome are made like hooks or ſickles, and they are to be uſed where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead fleſh, or ſuch like hidden evils, which cannot be reacht by any ſtraight Inſtruments: Others are made either with great Buttons, or little Buttons at the end, and they are uſed to open Impoſtumes, or elſe to burn into the ſound Fléſh, where you intend to make any new ſore or iſſue for the drawing or keeping back of other evil humours. And in making of theſe Irons, the Farriers own Judgment is to be of great value, becauſe he muſt either increaſe or diminiſh them according to the manner of the place grieved; and be ſure that he ever make them fit for his right purpoſe.

Now for the uſe of theſe Inſtruments, there are two principal things to be regarded; Firſt, the heating of the Iron, and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farriers hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron, you ſhall underſtand, that the back of the Iron muſt never be ſo hot as the edge, that is to ſay, you muſt never make the back of the Iron red hot for fear that thereby it yelid too much heat, and conſequently breed inflammation: therefore, whenſoever you ſee the back of your Iron as hot as the edge, you ſhall a little cool it with water.

Now for the temper of the bearing of your hand, you ſhall underſtand, that the more evenly, and light it is done, ſo much the better it is done: and herein is to be conſidered, the fineneſs or thickneſs of the Horſes skin, which you ſhall know moſt commonly by his hair: for if it be ſhort and fine then the skin is thin: if it be long and rough, then is his skin thick and boyſterous.

Now

Now the skin that is fine, muſt be Cauterized or ſeared with a very light hand, in as much as the skin is ſo ſoon pierced through, and the thick skin with a heavy hand, and both of them with ſuch a tempered hand, that the skin muſt no more but look yellow: where in you ſhall ever find, that the fine skin will ſooner look yellow than the thick skin, the main reaſon being, becauſe the thickneſs and roughneſs of the Hair of the thick skin doth cool and choak the heat of the Iron, inſomuch, that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the Inſtrument ſo much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot work that effect which in Art it ſhould do.

Now you ſhall alſo obſerve, that in drawing of any Line or other Cauterize, whatſoever that you ever draw with the hair, and never againſt the hair, whether the Lines be ſhort, long, deep, ſhallow, ſtraight, crooked or over-thwart, according as the grief doth require.

Now to conclude you are to obſerve in Cauterizing, theſe few precepts: Firſt, that you do not give fire to any ſinewy place except there be ſome apparent ſwelling, or elſe impoſtumation. Secondly that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joynt, for fear of breeding a general weakneſs in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire ſo deep, or ſuffer your hand to be ſo heavy, that you may miſhape, or deform the Horſe, either by unneceſſary figures, or uncomely Skars. Fourthly, not to be too raſh or haſty in giving fire, as if every cure was to be wrought by that practice only, (as I know ſome very well reputed Farriers hold opinion) but only to attempt all other good means before, and when all hope elſe is deſperate, then to make the fire your laſt refuge, as an extremity that muſt prevail when all other practices do periſh.

Laſtly, I would not have you, like the fooliſh Farriers, which know nothing, utterly to contemn and neglect it, as if it were uſeleſs, but with all moderation and Judicious diſcretion to apply it in fit time and place, ſo the poor Horſe may gain eaſe, your ſelf good Reputation, and the owner profit: which is moſt certain, as long as you are governed by wiſdom.

CHAP. CLXXVIII.

Of Canterize by Medicine, which is Canterize potential,

THe potential Cauterize, or ſearing of the fleſh by Medicine, is (as I ſaid before) when the Medicines are either Corroſive, Putrifactive,

Putrifactive, or Cauſtick, Corroſive, as when they do corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the fleſh. Putrifactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and do induce a main Skar like dead fleſh, cauſing infinite pain, in ſuch ſort, that they are often accompanied with Fevers and mortallity, and therefore are not to be adminiſtred, but to ſtrong bodies, and in very ſtrong diſeaſes; and Cauſtick, which is as much to ſay as burning, when the operation is ſo ſtrong, that it inclineth, and cometh neareſt to the nature of fire, and ſo burneth and conſumeth whatſoever it toucheth.

Now theſe Potential Cauterizes do exceed and excel one another by certain degrees, as thus: the Corroſives are weaker than the Putrifactives, and the Putrifactives are weaker than the Cauſticks; the Corroſives work upon the upper part in the ſoft fleſh, the Putrifactives in the depth of the hard fleſh, and the Cauſticks have power to break skin ſound or unſound, both in hard and ſoft fleſh, and that very deeply alſo.

Now of Corroſives ſome be ſimple, and ſome be compound: the ſimple Corroſives are Roch allom, burnt or unburnt, the Spunge of the Sea ſomewhat burnt, Lime, red Curral, and the powder of Mercury, the ſhavings of an Ox or Harts-horn, Precipitate, Verdigreaſe, and ſuch like. The compound Corroſives are, black Sope and Lime, *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Caraceum*, and many ſuch like: and theſe are to be applied unto Sores, Ulcers, or Excreſcions, after they are Corroded.

The Putrifactives are Arſnick, either white or yellow, Reſalgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; beſides, Sandaracha, Chryſocolla, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your Putrifactive medicines to be cauſtive, that is, breeding a great Skar, and hot in the fourth degree: then they are unſlakt Lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and theſe are to be uſed to Carbuncles, Cankers and Amburies.

The Cauſtick medicines are thoſe which are made of ſtrong Lye, called *Capitellum*, or Magiſtra, of Vitriol Roman, Sal-niter *Aqua-fortis*, *Apium*, Cantharides, Ciclamine, onions, ſtrong Garlick, *Melanacardium* the ſtones or grains of Briony, and many ſuch like.

Now in concluſion, I would wiſh every diligent Farrier, ſeldom or never to uſe either Arſnick, Reſalgar, or Mercury ſublimate, ſimply of themſelves, but rather to allay them (if the ſubſtance whereon they are to work be very great) with *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*; but if it be vary little, then with Hogs greaſe Turpentine, or ſuch like. And

thus much for this potential Cauterizing, and the proper uſes.

CHAP. CLXXIX.

Of the Rowelling of Horſes, and the uſe thereof.

THe Rowelling of Horſes, is, amongſt our ignorant and ſimple Smiths, the moſt ordinary and general practice of all other whatſoever, inſomoch that not any Diſeaſe can almoſt be found about a Horſe, either how ſlight or great ſoever it be, but preſently without any reaſon or ſenſe therefore, they will Rowel him for the ſame; whereby they not only put the Horſe to a needleſs torment, but alſo bring down (now and then) ſuch a flux of naughty humours, that they lame the Horſe, which otherwiſe would be perfectly ſound. But it is not my Theam to diſpute of thoſe ignorances; only this I muſt ſay of Rowelling, it is a practice as neceſſary and commendable for the good eſtate of a Horſes Limbs, and Body, as any medicine whatſoever, ſo it be applied in his due time, and in his due place: otherwiſe on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodneſs.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are theſe; it ſeparateth and diſſolveth all evil humours, which either through Natural or Unnatural corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any ſuperfluity or evil ſubſtance; it looſeneth thoſe parts which are bound, and bindeth thoſe parts that are Weakned; it giveth ſtrength unto ſick joynts, and comforteth whatſoever is oppreſſed with any cold flegm, or hot cholerick ſubſtance: The general uſe of Rowelling, is either for inward ſtrains, eſpecially about the ſhoulders or hips, or elſe for great hard ſwellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either Plaiſter or Unguent, for you ſhall underſtand, that when a Horſe receiveth any ſtrain or bruiſe, either in the upper joynts of his ſhoulder, or his hips, which joynts do not ſtand one upon another, as the lower joynt do, but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I ſay, when a bruiſe is received in theſe parts, if by preſent application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grief be not taken away, then eſt-ſoons there gathers between the pot and the bone, a certain bruiſed jelley, which continually of-

fending the tender Griſtle which covers the end of every bone, makes the Horſes to halt vehemently, and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only; and as I ſpake of the ſhoulder, ſo I ſpeak of the hips, alſo, where the upper thigh-bone, goeth into the pot of the cannel-bone, and there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the manner of Rowelling it is in this ſort, Firſt, when you have found out the certain place of the Horſes grief, as whether it be on the fore-Pitch of the ſhoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you ſhall (having caſt the Horſe upon ſome Dung-hill, or ſoft ground) make a little ſlit more than a good hanful below the place of his grief through the skin, and no more, ſo big as you may well thruſt in a Swans quill into the ſame: then with your Cronet raiſe the skin a little from the fleſh, and then put in your quil, and blow all the skin from the fleſh upward, even to the top, and all over the ſhoulder: then ſtopping the hole with your finger and your thumb, take a ſmall Hazel ſtick, and all to beat the blown place all over; and then with your hand ſpread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: then take a tampin of Horſe hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarcinet, half the bigneſs of a mans little finger, and about a foot or ſixteen inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling needle, which would be at the leaſt ſeven or eight inches long; thruſt it in at the firſt hole, and ſo putting it upward, draw it out again at leaſt ſix inches above; and then, if you pleaſe, you may put in another above that: and then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skin, in any wiſe not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hogs greaſe, or Oyl de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opinionated, that theſe long rowels, or tampins of hair or ſilk, do make both a double ſore, and a great ſcar, therefore they make their rowels of round pieces of ſtiff Leather, ſuch as is the upper part of and old ſhoo, with a round hole in the middeſt, according to this form: and then doubling it when they put it in, as ſoon as it is within, to ſpread it, and lay it flat between the fleſh and the skin, and ſo as the hole of the Rowel may anſwer juſt with the hole that is made in the horſes skin; and then once in two or three days to cleanſe the Rowel, and to anoint it, and ſo put it in again.

Other Farriers do uſe to make the Rowel of Lanthorn-horn, in the ſame faſhion as is made of Leather, and in like ſort to uſe it. But for mine own part, I have uſed them all, and truely in my practice find not any better than another: only the Leather or the horn is ſomewhat more cleanly, and leſs offenſive to the Eye, yet they ask much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horſe for any ſwelling, then you ſhall ever put in your long Rowel the ſame way that the veins run, and ſeldom or never croſe-wiſe,, and the more you blow the skin for a ſwelling, ſo much the better it is: for the wind is it which only occaſioneth putrifaction, and makes theſe feſtred humours to diſſolve, and diſtil down from the ſecret hollows of the joynts, into theſe open places, where it falleth away in matter, and ſo the Beaſt becomes cured.

CHAP. CLXXX.

How to geld Horſes or Colts.

THere is to be obſerved in the gelding of Horſes, firſt, the age Secondly, the ſeaſon of the year: and laſtly, the ſtate of the Moon. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen, if his ſtones be come down: for to ſpeak the truth, the ſooner that you geld him, it is ſo much the better, both for his growth, ſhape, and courage: albeit, ſome hold opinion, that at two years old ſhould be the ſooneſt, but they are miſtaken, and their reaſons are weak therein.

Now if it be a Horſe that you would geld, then there is no ſpeech to be made of his age: for it is without any queſtion, that a perfect Farrier may geld a Horſe without danger at any age whatſoever, being careful in the cure.

Now for the ſeaſon of the year, the beſt is in the Spring, between April and May. or in the beginning of June at the fartheſt, or elſe about the fall of the Leaf, which is the latter end of September.

Now for the ſtate of the Moon, the fitteſt time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane; as touching the manner of Gelding it is in this ſort, whether it be a Foal, Colt, or Horſe: Firſt, you ſhall caſt him either upon ſtraw, or upon ſome dunghil: then taking the ſtone between your foremoſt finger, and your great finger, you ſhall with a very fine inciſion Knife ſlit the Cod, ſo that you may

preſs

preſs the ſtone forth, and no more: Then with a pair of ſmall Nippers, made either of Steel, Box-wood, or Braſil, being very ſmooth, and clap the ſtrings of the ſtone between them, very near unto the ſetting on of the ſtone, and preſs them ſo hard, that there may be no flux of blood: then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, ſear away the ſtone; then take a hard Plaiſter made of Rozen, Wax, and waſht Turpentine, well molten together, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the ſtrings: then ſear the ſtrings, and then melt more of the Salve, till ſuch time as you have laid a good thickneſs of the ſalve upon the ſtrings: Then looſe the Nippers, and as you did ſo with that ſtone, ſo do with the other alſo: Then fill the two ſlits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outſides of the Cod, and all over the Horſes belly and thighs with Hogs greaſs clean rendered, and ſo let him riſe: And keep him in either ſome very warm ſtable, or otherwiſe in ſome very warm paſture, where he may walk up and down; for there is nothing better for a Horſe in this caſe, than moderate exerciſe.

Now if after the gelding you do perceive that his Cod and ſheath doth ſwell in any extraordinary faſhion, then you ſhall chaſe him up and down, and make him trot an hour in aday, and it will ſoon recover him, and make him ſound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXXI.

Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of the tails of Horſes.

THe Curtailing of Horſes is uſed in no Nation whatſoever, ſo much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reaſon of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horſes continually are exerciſed and imployed withal, and the rather, ſith, we are ſtrongly opinionated, that the taking away of thoſe joynts doth make the Horſes chine or back a great deal ſtronger, and more able to ſupport a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily find it by contiuual experience.

Now for the manner of Curtailing of Horſes, it is in this ſort: Firſt, you ſhall with your finger and your thumb, grope till you find the third joynt from the ſetting on of the Horſes tail; and having found it, raiſe up all the hair, and turn it backward: then taking a very ſmall ſtrong Cord, wrap it about that joynt, and pull it both with your own ſtrength and another mans, ſo ſtreight as you can poſſible pull it: then wrap it about again, and draw it as ſtraight

or

or ſtraighter again: and thus do three or four times about the tail, with all the poſſible ſtraightneſs that may be; and then make faſt the ends of the cord: then take a piece of Wood, whoſe end is ſmooth and even, of juſt height with the ſtrunt of the Horſes tail, and ſetting it between the Horſes hinder Legs, after you have tramelled all his four Legs, in ſuch ſort that he can no ways ſtir, then lay his tail thereupon, and taking a main ſtrong ſharp Knife made for the purpoſe, ſet the edge thereof ſo near as you can gueſs it, between the fourth and fifth joynt, and then with a great Smiths Hammer, ſtriking upon the back of the Knife, cut the tail aſunder: then if you ſee any blood to iſſue forth; you ſhall know that the cord is not ſtraight enough, and therefore you muſt draw it ſtraighter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you ſhall take a red hot burning Iron, made round after this faſhion, of the full compaſs of the fleſh of the Horſes tail, that the bone of the tail may go through the hole, and with it you ſhall ſear the fleſh till you have mortified it; and in the ſearing, you ſhall plainly ſee the ends of the veins ſtart out like pap-heads; but you ſhall ſtill continue ſearing them, until you ſee all to be moſt ſmooth, plain, and hard, ſo that the blood cannot break through the burning: then may you boldly unlooſe the Cord, and after two or three days, that you perceive the ſore begin to rot, you ſhall not miſs to anoint it with freſh Butter, or elſe with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine, until it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXII.

To make a white Star in any part of a Horſe.

IF you will at any time make a white Star, either in your Horſes fore head, or in any other part of his body, you ſhall, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, take a Tile ſtone, and after you have burned it, beat it into fine Powder: then take Lilly Roots, Daſie Roots, White brier Roots, of each a like quantity, and having dryed them, beat them alſo into fine Powder, and mix them with the firſt: then with a Razer ſhave that part of your Horſe where you would have your Star: and then with this Powder rub it ſo vehemently, that you ſcarce leave any skin on; then take a good quantity of Honey-ſuckle flowers, & a like quantity of Honey, and the water wherein a Moul hath been ſodden, and then diſtil them

them into a water, and with that water waſh the ſore place the ſpace of three days together, and keep the Wind from it, and you ſhall preſently ſee the white hairs to grow; for this Receipt hath been often very well approved.

There be other Farriers, which take a Crab, and roaſt it, and being fiery hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it will ſcald away the old hair, and the next hair that groweth will be white. Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſhaved the place to take the juyce of ſharp Onions, or Leeks, and to bath the place very much therewith: then take Barley bread, as fire hot as it cometh from the Oven, and clap it to the ſhaven place, ſuffering it to lye ſo till it be cold; and then after anoint it with Honey, and the White hair will come. Other Farriers uſe to anoint the ſhaven place with the greaſe of a Mouldy-warp ſodden, and that will bring the white hairs. Other Farriers uſe after they have ſhaved it; to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to waſh it with the broth wherein a Mouldy-warp and ſome Swines greaſe hath been ſodden.

Other Farriers uſe to boyl a Mouldy-warp in Salt water for three days together, or elſe with ſtrong Lye, and ever as one Liquor conſumeth, to ſupply it with another; then with this Decoction being warm, anoint the ſhaved place, and it will bring white hairs ſuddenly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goat, and rub the ſhaved place therewith, and it will bring white hairs alſo.

Other Farriers take Sheeps milk, and boyl it, and in that wet a Linnen cloath, and being very hot lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the hair with your finger; this done, apply the milk to it twice aday luke-warm, till the hair do come again, which without all queſtion will be white.

Other Farriers take the Roots of wild Cucumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oyl and Honey, or elſe add to your Cucumbers Sal-nitrum beaten, and Honey, and anoint the ſhaven place therewith, and it will bring white hairs.

Other Farriers uſe to take a piece of a Brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chaſe the place, till by the continuance thereof, you have rubbed away both the hair and the skin, ſo broad as you would have the Star, and then to after anoint it with Honey, until the hair come again: Or elſe to roaſt a Colewort ſtalk like a Warden, or an Egg, until it be ſtone hard; and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horſes fore-head, and it will

will ſcald off the hair, then to anoint it with Honey till the hair come again.

Now to conclude, and to ſhew you the moſt perfect and abſolute experiment, which I have ever found to be moſt infallible, and it is thus: You ſhall take a very fine, ſharp, long Bodkin, made for the ſame purpoſe, and thruſt it up betwixt the skin and the bone upwards, ſo long as you would have the Star; and in thruſting it up, you ſhall hollow the skin from the bone, the bigneſs that you would have the Star: this done, you ſhall take a piece of Lead, made in the true ſhape of your Bodkin, and drawing out the Bodkin, thruſt in the Lead into the the ſame holes; then you ſhall thruſt the Bodkin croſs-wiſe the fore-head underneath the Lead; and then thruſting in ſuch another piece of Lead, you ſhall ſee it in the Horſes face to preſent this figure; which being done, you ſhall take a very ſtrong pack-thread, and putting it underneath all the four ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all ſtraightneſs, you ſhall gather all the hollow skin together on a purſe, folding the pack-thread, oft and oft about, and ſtill ſtraighter and ſtraighter, ſo that you ſhall ſee it then to preſent unto you this figure: this done, you ſhall let it reſt at leaſt the ſpace of eight and forty hours, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: then may you unlooſe the pack-thread, and draw forth the leaden pins, and with your hand cloſe the hollow skin to the Fore-head hard again: and ſhortly after you ſhall ſee the hair to fall away, and the next hair which cometh be white; and this experiment is moſt infallible.

Now there be ſome other Farriers, which will not put in pins, nor uſe any packthread, but only will ſlit the fore-head, and open the skin on both ſides, and then put in either a Horn or a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and ſo let it remain till the skin Rot: Then take out the Horn or Lead and anoint the place with Honey, and the water of Mallows ſod, and it will bring white hair: And ſurely this experiment alſo is moſt infallible; but it maketh a foul ſore, and is ſomewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect. Agai-

Again, I have ſeen a white Star alſo made by taking the guts of a Hen, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the Horſes face, having in readineſs ſome hollow round thing made for the ſame purpoſe, to keep the guts together upon the horſes face.

CHAP. CLXXXIII.

How to make a black Star, or white hair black.

IF at any time you would have a deſire to make upon a white Horſe a black Star, you ſhall take a ſcruple of Ink, and four ſcruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to Powder; incorporate this in as much Sheeps ſuet as will well ſuffice, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white hair black.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fern Roots, and Sage ſod in Lye, and waſh the place therewith, and it will breed black hair: but you muſt waſh the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers uſe to take the ruſt of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and ſtamp them with Oyl: or elſe take Souters Ink, Galls, and Ruſt, and beat them well together, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will turn any white hair to black.

CHAP. CLXXXIV.

To make a red Star in a Horſes face.

IF you deſire to make in your Horſes face, or any other part, a Red Star, you ſhall take of *Aquafortis*, one ounce, of *Aquavitæ* a penny-worth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them into a glaſs, and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the hair to be of a perfect Red colour, only it will endure no longer than till the caſting of the hair: and therefore, at every ſuch time you muſt renew the hair again, if you will have the Star to continue.

CHAP. CLXXXV.

How to make Hair to come very soon, very thick, and very long.

☞ IF you would have Hair to come very soon in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or long where it is short, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the Urine of a young Boy, and with it at first wash the place: after that, take Lye made of the unslakt Lime, Ceruse, and Litargy, and with it wash the hair oft, and it will make it come soon, long, and thick.

Other Farriers use to wash the place with water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been sod: then after dry it gently with your hand, and it will encrease hair much. Other Farriers use to wash the place with Oyl mingled with the ashes of Nut-shels burnt, or else Snail-shels burnt, and it will increase hair also. Other Farriers take Agrimony pounded with Goats milk, and with it anoint the place, or else Oyl wherein a Mouldiwarp hath been boyled, and anoint the place with either of them, and it will encrease hair very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goats, Allom, Honey, and the blood of a Swine: mingle them all together, and stir them till they be ready to boyl, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-seed bruised with Honey, Water and Salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the Root of a white Lily beaten and sod in Oyl, and anoint the place therewith. Others take the juyce of a long Onion, or else the juyce of Radishes, and anoint the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oyl Olive, and Honey boyled together, and with it anoint the bare place. Others take the Soot of a Cauldron mixed with Honey and Oyl, and anoint the place therewith.

☞ There be other ancient Farriers which use this, and it is the best of all, they take green Wal-nut-shels, and burn them to Powder, and then mix it with Honey, Oyl, and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will encrease hair wonderfully, and very soon.

CHAP. CLXXXVI.

To make hair ſmooth, ſlick, and ſoft.

IF you will make your Horſes Coat to be ſmooth, ſlick, ſoft, and ſhining, you ſhall with ſufficient ſtore of cloath keep him warm at the heart, for the leaſt inward cold will make the hair ſtare: then you ſhall make him ſweat oft; for that will raiſe up the duſt and filth, which makes his coat foul and hard, then you ſhall, when the Horſe is in his greateſt ſweat, with an old Sword blade turning the edge towards his hair, ſcrape, or as it were curry away all the white foam, ſweat, and filth, which ſhall be raiſed up, and that will lay his coat even and make it ſmooth: And laſtly, you ſhall when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own blood, and ſo let it remain two or three days, and then curry and dreſs him well, and this will make his coat ſhine like glaſs.

CHAP. CLXXXVII.

How to take off Hair in any part of a Horſe.

IF you will at any time take off the Hair from any part of a Horſe, you ſhall diſſolve in water (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unſlakt Lime: and then boyl it till a quarter be conſumed, then add to it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a Plaiſter thereof to any part of the Horſe, and it will in few hours bring all the hair away.

There be other ancient Farriers which boyl in running Water, Ruſt and Orpiment, and with it being very hot waſh the place, and it will ſoon bring the hair away.

CHAP. CLXXXVIII.

How to caſt and overthrow a Horſe.

WHenſoever you intend to caſt or overthrow your Horſe, after you have brought him into a convenient place: as namely, either upon ſome green ſwarth, or upon ſome Dung-hill, or in ſome Barn upon good ſtore of ſoft ſtraw, you ſhall take and double a

long rope, and caſt a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder paſtorns, underneath his fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends faſt, and hold down his head, under which always you muſt be ſure to have good ſtore of ſtraw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your Horſe on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs, that he may not ſtrike, take up his contrary fore Leg, and when you do brand your Horſe, ſee that the Iron be Red hot, and that the hair be both ſear'd quite away, and the fleſh ſcorched in every place before you let him go, and ſo you ſhall be ſure to loſe no labour.

CHAP. CLXXXIX.

How to know the age of a Horſe.

THe age of every Horſe is known, either by his teeth, by his hoofs, or by his tail.

It is known by his Teeth; at two years old he changeth the four fore-moſt teeth in his head, at three years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparent foals teeth but two of each ſide, above and below: at four years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foals teeth but one on each ſide, both above and below; at five years old he hath never a foals tooth before, but then he changeth his tuſhes, on each ſide: at ſix years old he putteth up his tuſhes near about which you ſhall ſee apparently growing a little circle of new and young fleſh; beſides, the tuſh will be white, ſmall ſhort, and ſharp: at ſeven years old, the two out-moſt teeth of his nether chap on both ſides will be hollow, with a little black ſpeck in them: And at eight years old, then all his teeth will be full, ſmooth, and plain, the black ſpeck being clean gone, and his tuſhes will be ſomewhat yellow, without any circles of young fleſh: At nine years old, his foremoſt teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foul, and his tuſhes will be blunt: At ten years old, in the inſide of his upper Tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers end, which till that age you ſhall ever moſt perfectly feel; beſides the temples of his head will begin to be hollow and crooked: At eleven years of age his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only

he

he will cut even, and his teeth will ſtand directly oppoſite one againſt another; At Twelve years old his teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his nether teeth; At thirteen years his tuſhes will be worn cloſe to his chap, if he be a much ridden Horſe, otherwiſe they will be black, foul, and long like the fangs of a Boar.

If a Horſes hoof be rugged, and as it were ſeamed, one ſeam over another, if they be dry, full, and cruſty, it is a ſign of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow, and well ſounding hoof is a ſign of young years.

If you take your Horſe with your finger and your thumb, by the ſtern of the tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by his buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your finger and your thumb of each ſide his tail, a joynt ſtick out more than any other joynt, by the bigneſs of a hazel Nut, then you may preſume, the Horſe is under ten years old, but if his joynts be all plain, and no ſuch thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at leaſt thirteen. If a Horſes eyes be round, full, and ſtarting from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, ſmooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinkles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the Horſe is young; if otherwiſe you ſee the contrary Characters, it is a ſign of old age. If you take up a Horſes skin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from the fleſh; then letting it go again, if it ſuddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horſe is young, and full of ſtrength; but if being pulled up it ſtand, and not return to this former place, then be aſſured he is very old, and exceedingly waſted.

Laſtly, if a Horſe that is of any dark colour, ſhall grow griſſel only about the Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane, it is then an infallible ſign of moſt extreme old age: And thus much touching a Horſes age.

CHAP. CXC.

How to make an old Horſe ſeem young.

TAke a ſmall crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outmoſt teeth of each ſide the nether chap before, next to the

the tuſhes, and then with an Aul blade prick it, and make the ſhell fine and thin; then with a ſharp ſcraping Iron, make all his teeth white an clean: this done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the Horſes eyes which are ſhrunk down, make a little hole only but through the skin, and then raiſing it up, put in a quill that is very ſmall, as the quill of a Raven, or ſuch like: and then blow the skin full of wind, till all the hollowneſs be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the wind will ſtay in, and the Horſes countenance will be as if he were but ſix years old at the moſt.

CHAP. CXCI.

How to make a Horſe that he ſhall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in ſervice in the Wars, and would not be diſcovered, or when upon any other occaſion, you would not have your Horſe to neigh, or make a noiſe, you ſhall take a liſt of wollen cloath, and tye it faſt in many folds about the midſt of your Horſes tongue and believe it, ſo long as the tongue is ſo tyed, ſo long the Horſe can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinary noiſe with his voice, as hath been often tried and approved of.

CHAP. CXCII.

How to make a Horſe exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur.

IF your Horſe be either dull of the Spur through his natural inclination, or through tyring, or any other accident, you ſhall firſt ſhave him the breadth of a ſaucer on both ſides, juſt in the ſpurring place, on both ſides the vein, then with a Launcet make ſix iſſues, or ſmall orifices on both ſides; then raiſing the skin from the fleſh, you ſhall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt Salt, which will make the ſore to rankle.

In this ſort you ſhall keep it three days, and by no means ride the Horſe, the third day being ended, you ſhall ſet a Child on his back with ſpurs, and make him ſpur the Horſe in the ſore place; which done, you ſhall waſh the place with Piſs, Salt, and Nettles ſodden well together, and it will make his ſides ſmart ſo extreamely, that he will never abide the Spur after.

Now

Now you ſhall let him ſtand after his waſhing three days more, and then take half a pint of Honey, and with it anoint his ſides once a day till they be whole. Alſo rub his ſides with the powder of glaſs, and it will do the like.

CHAP. CXCIII.

How to make a Horſe that tires, or is reſtiff, to go forward.

IF your Horſe, (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtineſs of his nature, or dullneſs of ſpirit, be either ſo reſtiff, or ſo tyred, that he will not go forward a foot, but ſtandeth ſtock ſtill: You ſhall then make a running ſuickle of a good ſmall cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, in ſuch ſort that it may not ſlip: then you ſhall draw the reſt of the cord between the girths and the Horſes body, and bringing it up juſt between the Horſes fore-Legs, be ſure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you ſit in the Saddle, then ride the Horſe forward, and when he beginneth to grow reſtiff, or to ſtand ſtill, then pluck the cord, and cramp him by the Stones, and you ſhall ſee that immediately he will go forward. And in this ſame manner you ſhall uſe him for at leaſt a fortnight together, and it will clean take away that evil quality.

CHAP. CXCIV.

Other moſt excellent and approved ways to preſerve a Horſe from tyring, never diſcloſed till now.

IF your Horſe either through violence of Labour, diſtemparatue of Body, or naughtineſs of Nature, happen to tyre under you, or travel not with that ſpirit you deſire, their when you come to a baiting place alight, and ſet up your Horſe warm, but do not walk him: then after he hath been well rubb'd, take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the fine ſearſt powder of Elicampane, and brew them together, then give it the Horſe with an horn; which done, tye his head to the rack, for you need not care for Provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him Oats or Bread, or both in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his back, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampane as aforeſaid; and doubtleſs you ſhall find

him

him to travel with great courage and ſpirit, as hath been approved. Alſo if you take a bunch of Penny-royal, and tye it to the mouth of your bit or ſnaffle, you ſhall find it very comfortable, and it will cauſe your Horſe to travel luſtily.

☞ Again, if you take of your beſt Tobacco, and dry it in the Sun in a glaſs cloſe ſtopt, then pound it very ſmall, and mix it with an equal quantity of the Cockle-ſhels, then with the Oyl of Dill, and the Oyl of Cloves, make the powder into a paſte, then make pretty round balls thereof as big as Walnuts, and dry them in the ſhadow in the Dog-days, then keep them cloſe in a Gally pot, and give them as Pills in the time of neceſſity; that is to ſay, a ball at a time, whenſoever your Horſe ſhall fail in travel: And this doth not only help tyring, but alſo takes away any cold whatſoever.

☞ Laſtly, if your Horſe notwithſtanding for all this, do happen at any time to tyre, then preſently take off his Saddle, and with the herb Arſmart rub his back all over very hard, then laying Arſmart alſo under the Saddle, ſo ride him gently at the firſt, and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, as it hath been made proof of.

CHAP. CXCV.

How to make a Horſe to follow his Maſter, and find him out, and challenge him amongſt never ſo many people.

IF you will have your Horſe to have ſuch a violent love towards you, that he ſhall not only follow you up and down, but alſo labour to find you out, and own you as ſoon as he hath found you: you ſhall then take a pound of Oat-meal, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your boſome next unto your naked skin; then run or labour your ſelf up and down until you ſweat, then rub all your ſweat upon your Cake; this done, keep your Horſe faſting a day and a night, and then give him the Cake to eat, which as ſoon as he hath eaten, you ſhall turn him looſe, and he will not only moſt eagerly follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeek you out when he hath loſt or doth miſs you; and though you be environed with never ſo many, yet he will find you out, and know you, and you ſhall not fail, but every time that he cometh unto you, you ſhall ſpit in his mouth, and anoint his tongue with your ſpittle: And thus doing, he will never forſake you.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXCVI.

The nature and special qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet.

A

Abrotanum, which we call in English Southern-wood, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short wind.

Absinthium, which we call Worm-wood, is hot in the first Degree, and dry in the second: it cleanseth, and bindeth, and is good for the stomach.

Aceto, which we call Vinegar, especially if it be of wind, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third Degree.

Agaricum, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: it expelleth humours, purgeth all flegm and choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

Allium, which we call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evil humours.

Agrecum, which we call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it burneth, draweth, and resolveth, and is exceeding good for Scurf, or wild Scabs, or for the Lungs.

Agripa, is a known Unguent that is good against all tumours.

Allom, called commonly Roch-Allom, is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is good for cankers.

Alder, or Elder-tree, is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and flegm, and healeth wounds.

Alloes, is hot in the first, and dry in the third Degree: it cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vital parts.

Althea, which we call white Mallows, is hot and dry: it looseneth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moistneth very much.

Almonds, are hot and moist in the first Degree: provoke Urine, and are very good for the Lungs or Liver.

Ambrosia, which we call Wood-sage, represseth, driveth back, and bindeth humours

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree: it softneth, and dissolveth humours.

Anetum, which we call Dill, is hot in the third and dry in

the ſecond Degree : it ripeneth crude humours,and expelleth heat.

Anniſeeds are hot and dry in the third Degree: expel cold, diſſolve humours, and provoke Urine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

Apio, which we call *Smallage* or *Parſley*, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree : it ripeneth, cleanſeth, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Ariſtolochia which we call *Birth-wort*, or *Hart-wort*, is hot, and cleanſeth : but if it *Rotunda*, then it is ſo much ſtronger, being hot and dry in the fourth Degree : it draweth and purgeth thin water and flegm, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good againſt all manner of poyſon whatſoever, or biting of any venemous Beaſts.

Armoniack both drieth, cooleth, ſoftneth, and draweth.

Artemiſia, which we call great Tanſie, or Mug-wort,is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree : it is very good for Worms, and ſwellings in the ſinews.

Arſnick of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree : it bindeth,eateth,and fretteth, being a very ſtrong Corroſive.

Aſſafetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree : it cleanſeth evil humours.

Aſphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen* : it is hot and dry and comforteth any ſwelling.

Aſſonteo is hot in the firſt,and dry in the ſecond Degree : it cleanſeth and drieth,and is good for to comfort the ſtomach.

Aſſungia,which we call the ſoft or freſh greaſe, is hot and moiſt in the firſt Degree : It mollifieth,ripeneth, and healeth any Wound, Impoſtume, or Ulcer.

Avena, which we call commonly Oats, are naturally dry : they do dry, bind, cleanſe, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the only principal ſimples which do naturally agree with the compoſition of a Horſes body; and therefore the Oyl or the Quinteſſence of them is the only abſolute and perfect medicine that can be adminiſtred for any inward ſickneſs, as experience will approve and make perfect.

Avelane, which we call the aſhes of Nutſhels burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or ſtop the flux of matter.

B

Bay-berries, are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rheums, or ſhortneſs of Wind, eſpecially for any diſeaſe in the Lungs: they are good againſt poyſons, conſumptions, ſhort Breath, flegm, hardneſs of hearing, help tyring, Cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, ſtoppings of the Liver, cure the Yellows and Dropſie.

Balſamum is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cleanſeth, draweth and comforteth.

Bdellium is a gum that is hot and dry: it ſoftneth, and draweth away moiſture, and is excellent againſt all hard ſwellings whatſoever.

Bertonicum, or *Bettonicum*, which we call Dog-ſtone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the firſt Degree: it purgeth, and cleanſeth all evil humours.

Biacca is cold and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cloſeth things opened, it ſoftens hardneſs, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

Bittole, which we call Beets, is cold and moiſt, and cleanſeth Ulcers.

Bitumen is a kind of Brimſtone, or fatneſs from the Sea, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree, and is comfortable againſt any ſwelling.

Bottiro is hot in the firſt, and moiſt in the ſecond Degree, and it ripeneth impoſtumes.

Bole-Armonia is a certain earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth back evil humours, and is alſo an excellent Defenſative againſt fluxes of Blood.

Brancurſin is a wonderful great ſoftner and mollifier.

Braſſica, which we call Cole-worts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth Ulcers and Tumours, it holdeth the ſeed and killeth evil humours.

Brotano, which is the ſame that *Abrotanum* is, look there.

Bruſco which we call Butchers Broom, or kneeholm, is hot in the ſecond Degree, and dry in the firſt, it provokes Urine.

Briony, of theſe there are two kinds the white and the black, but the White is more effectual; the root of it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree: it cleanſeth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diſeaſes; it alſo drieth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardneſs.

C

Alafonia or *Colofonia*, doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are ſeparated.

Calaminto, which we call Wild Penny-Royal, or Wild Mint, of which, that which grows on the Mountains is the beſt, is hot and dry in the third degree, doth reſolve tumours, and draweth away humours.

Calcinaviva, which we call unſlakt Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth Degree, it aduſteth, drieth and corrodeth.

Camomila, which we call Camomile, is hot and dry in the firſt Degree it mollifieth and diſſolveth all griefs, and is good eſpecially for the Liver.

Camedros, which we call Germander, is hot and dry in the third Degree; and is good againſt all moiſt colds.

Camphora, is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preſerveth the body from putrefaction and bindeth humours.

Canabis, which we call Hemp, is hot, the ſeed whereof driveth away extraordinary colds: it ripeneth and diſſolveth humours, and mollifieth and drieth inflammations.

Cinamon, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward ſickneſſes.

Canna, which we call Reeds, eſpecially the hedge Reed, draweth out pricks, if you lay the Roots to the Knobs.

Cantharides, are certain flyes, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raiſe bliſters in the ſound parts.

Capillivenere, which we call maidens hair, is dry, and bindeth looſe humours.

Cardimonium is hot, it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with Vinegar killeth ſcabs.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrowaies are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind, and cleanſeth evil humours.

Caſſia is hot and moiſt in the firſt Degree, it expelleth Wind, diſſolveth humours, and purgeth the ſtomach of choler and flegm.

Caſtoreum is hot and dry and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, it cleanſeth and ripeneth humours

Cenere, which we call Aſhes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanſeth mightily.

Centuria, which we call wild running *Bettony*, ſmelling like *Majoram*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diſeaſed Livers, for the Worms, Sores and Wounds, and is Commonly called Centutary.

Cepe, which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: it doth cleanſe corruptions, and ripens ſwellings.

Cervil is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

Ceruſa is a white Oyntment made of Oyl and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the ſecond degree: and for the effects it hath all thoſe, which *Braccha* hath.

Cerecallo: ſee *Serecocollo*.

Chelidonium which we call *Seladine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanſeth all putrifactive humours, and is excellent againſt inward ſickneſſes, eſpecially yellows or jaundies.

Cicuta, which we call Hemlock, is cold in the fourth degree, it nummeth and aſtonieth.

Cicoria, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the firſt degree, and bindeth much.

Comin is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipollo, which is Leeks, or as we call them, chives, ſee *Cepe*.

Cinabar, or *Sanguis Draconis*, or as we call it *Vermillion*, is a certain metal drawn from quick Sulphur, and Quick-ſilver, it drieth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

Cito or *Ciſto*, is dry in the ſecond degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons, or *Citbrons*, are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, they do cleanſe and pierce.

Colloquintida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth only.

Colofonia, which we commonly call Earth-pitch, or Greek pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree; it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Pece Græce*.

Cocumeri, ſee *Cucumer*.

Conſolida, which we call Comphry, is cold: it conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good againſt Ruptures.

Coſtro, or *Coſſo* being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

Coſtus, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond degree: and it raiſeth up worms, and is that which we call Herb *Mary*, or the root of *Angelico*.

Corne

Cornu di cervo, which we call harts-horn, is dry, yet it ſtrengthneth very much, and expelleth poyſon.

Crocum which we call Saffron, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and reſolveth impoſtumes.

Cucumeri Silvatici, is hot and dry in the third degree: it diſſolveth, ſoftneth, and purgeth flegm.

Cucumeri elaterium, is cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth much, and is made of the juice of wild Cucumbers.

D

Dates are hot and moiſt in the ſecond degree: they do reſolve, and diſperſe things knit together.

Diacatholicon purgeth all offenſive humours which offend the body whatſoever.

Diaphinicon, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all griefs of the belly which are begot by crude humours, ſpringing from Colicks or ſuch like pains.

Dialtea or *Dialthea*, is an ointment made of Holy hox, or Sea mallow; it warmeth and moiſtneth.

Dragonwort is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E

Ebuli, which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree; it drieth, and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thin flegm; ſee *Sambuchus*.

Edera terreſtris, which we call ground Ivy, ſee *Hedera*.

Elaterium ſee *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which we call neeſing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and black; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Eruca, which we call Rocket, and of which the wild is the beſt; the ſeeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth Urine, Worms and Water.

Eluſa, which is a herb like ſponge, is hot in the fourth degree, and drieth and cleanſeth exceedingly, and of ſome is called Wolfs milk.

Euforbium is a gum that is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth, purgeth, cleanſeth, and exulcerateth much.

Excruſion

Excruſion is that which we call *Oxicration*, is a certain compoſition or mixture made of *Aceto* and water, and is good to allay ſwellings and tumours.

F

Faba, which we call a Bean, is cold and dry, and it cleanſeth, and diſſolveth very much.

Farina which we call Bran, is hot and dry in the firſt degree, and diſſolveth very much.

Fern is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleanſing, and killeth Worms.

Felle, which we call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanſeth and mundifieth.

Ferrugo, which we call the ruſt of Iron, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it comforteth and reſtraineth evil humours.

Fici aridi, whtch we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they ripen tumours, ſoften and conſume hardneſs, and are good for purſiveneſs, coughs, and Diſeaſes of the Lungs.

Filomontano, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to herbs, winding about them like threds; it openeth the Liver and Milt, and purgeth all flegm and choler.

Filomio is a compoſition, which will aſtoniſh or benumb any part or member.

Fennel is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: it doth diſſolve all manner of groſs humours, and is good for the Liver or Lungs.

Fuligo which we call Soot, is hot and dry, and it drieth marvelouſly, and ſo doth all ſoots whatſoever.

G

Galanga; which we call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it eaſeth the ſtomach of all griefs which proceed from cold cauſes: it ſtregthneth the brain, and comforteth the ſenſes.

Galbanum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond: it ſoftneth, ſtopeth, and draweth away evil humours, and is good cold againſt.

Galla, which we call Galls, or a light fruit of Oaks, are hot and piercing.

Garriſilata, which we call herb Bennet, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree.

Garoſoli

Garofoli, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward ſickneſs.

Ginger is hot, and is excellent to preſerve heat in the inward parts.

Geniſtra or *Giniſtra*, which we call Broom, is hot and dry in the third degree; it killeth Worms, and ſcoureth much.

Gentian, eſpecially the Root, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanſe all evil humours, and it is good for the Liver and Stomach, and for Wounds and ſores.

Gillio, which we call Lillies, ſoftneth ſinews, and are good for wounds and ſores.

Gramen, which is any manner of grain or pulſe, is cold and dry, except wheat, and that is temperately hot and moiſt; they do incarnate and mundifie.

Graſſo, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moiſt and doth ripen and ſoften.

H

H *Arundinis cortex*, which we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

Hedera, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

Helxine, which we call Pellitory of the wall, cleanſeth and bindeth and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

Hiſſoppo, which we call Hyſſop, there is both wild and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the beſt; it is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanſeth and warmeth, it is good for inflammations of the Lungs, old Coughs, Pozes, Rheums, and ſhort Wind.

Hordeum, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the firſt degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

I

I *Necenſe*, which we call Frankincenſe, it drieth and incarnateth; ſee *Olibanum*.

Ipericon, which we call Saint *Johns* wort, expelleth moiſture, and healeth burnings.

Iries

Irios Florentia, which we call Flower-de-luce, especially the root: it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illirica: see *Helpine*.

Iris is a root that is hot and dry: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iaspiana, which we call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree, it astonisheth and benumbeth.

Iuniper is hot and dry in the third degree: the berries are good for the Stomach, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneys; cureth all coughs, gripings, and Windiness of the Belly, and provoketh Urine: is good against all Venom, the infection of the Plague, and kills Worms.

L

Liguſtum which we call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth Wind, especially the Seed and Root.

Lapathum, which we call a Dock, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

Lauri, which we call Laurel, or Bays, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

Lentisco is a gum that is like Mastick; it is dry in the second Degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taste, and ever green.

Linosa, which we call flax or Line, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it is very adustive, cleansing and piercing.

Lythargyrio, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver: it is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; and of these two, that which is like Gold is the best.

Lolium which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

Lumachs, which we call House-snails without shells, do conglutinate very much.

M

Malva is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth pain.

Malvaviſcus is very dry, it ſoftneth, looſneth, and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third Degree, without heat, and only bindeth.

Manna is of equal temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Marion or *Martion*, is a hot unguent againſt all cold humours: it helpeth the grief of ſinews, purgeth old watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

Marrobio, which we call Hore hound, of which there be two kinds, the white and the black; but the white is the better: it is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree: it helpeth obſtructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt colds and for ſores.

Maſtick is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it draweth and drieth, bindeth and ſoftneth, and is good againſt cold.

Medulla, which we call Marrow, of what kind ſoever, is cold and moiſt, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the beſt Marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stage, the next of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the laſt that of a Goat.

Mel which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it cleanſeth the ſtomach and the entrails, ſloppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

Meliſſa, which we call Balm, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt Degree; it cleanſeth and conglutinateth.

Mentha, which we call Mint, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree, of which the wild Mint is the beſt: it killeth Worms, it bindeth, it diſſolveth, and is good for the ſtomach, or a cold Liver.

Minio, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good againſt ſwellings.

Myrrhe or *Myrrha*, is a ſoveraign Gum; it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanſeth wounds, is good againſt all colds killeth worms, and helpeth the purſick: for though it doth cleanſe much, yet it doth not exaſperate the Arteries; alſo it doth incarnate.

Morcoſita or *Marcaſita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humors.

Mortilla is the fruit of the Myrtil tree, it is dry in the third Degree, it doth bind good, and looſen evil humours.

Morus, which we call the Mulbery, the unripe is cold and dry in the ſecond Degree: the bark, but chiefly the root, is hot and

dry

dry in the third Degree: it doth cleanſe, purge and bind, the root thereof killeth Worms, and the gum thereof doth looſen, and the juyce of the berry doth heal cankers, or ſore mouths.

N

Narciſſi radix, which we call the Root of a white *Daffodil*, or elſe Prim-roſe pearleſs, is dry, it cleanſeth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

Nardi radix, which we call Set-wall, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the Second Degree; it bindeth and *Spica Nardi* provoketh Urine.

Naſturtium is hot and dry in the fourth Degree: it burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth Worms; ſee *Agrecum*, which we call Creſſes.

Nigella, which we call Git, is hot and dry in the third Degree: it ſtayeth Wind, killeth Worms, and looſeneth, yet to give too great a quantity is dangerous.

Nitrum is of the ſame nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

Olibanam is a gum, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it warmeth, bindeth, cloſeth wounds, and incarnateth.

Oyl of Olives is of a very temperate nature, and changeth his qualities according to the nature of the Simples which are mixt with him.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy dried and mixt with Safron, it doth aſtoniſh and provoke ſleep.

Opoponax is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: it ſoftneth and ſtayeth humors; it is good againſt all Colds. See *Papaver*, *Galbanum*; *Bdellium* or *Sagapenum*.

Orpimento is a kind of Mettal, of which the artificial is called Arſenick, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond, it bindeth, corrodeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corroſive.

Origano, which we call wild Marjoram or Peniroyal, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away ſtoppings, and is good for Coughs.

Orebus, which we call Fitches, are hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree: they do open and cleanſe.

Orizo, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the firſt degree: it ripeneth and cleanſeth.

Urtica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: they are biting and wholſome for the Lungs, or for Sores.

Ovum, which we call Eggs, the white is cold, and the yolk is hot, and doth incarnate.

P.

PAnacea is that Herb whoſe fruit we call *Opoponax*.

Panico is a grain which we call Panick, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papaver, which we call Poppy, the Seeds thereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree. See *Opium*.

Paſtinache, which we call Parſnips, are hot, and do provoke Urine.

Pece, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, draweth, drieth and ripeneth.

Pece liquida, which we call Tar, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, is good againſt Colds, or evil humors gathered together in the breaſt, and draweth wounds.

Pece Raſina, which we call Roſin, or Pitch of *Greece*, it draweth, healeth and incarnateth.

Pece Raſina & liquida, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt or Lungs.

Peaches are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: they bind and ſtir up Worms.

Petaſites, which we call Butter-bur, is dry in the third degree.

Petrolium, is a certain Oyl made of Salt-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree, it healeth wounds and comforteth weak members.

Petrocellinum, which we call Parſley, or Stone-Parſley, is, and eſpecially his Seed, hot and dry in the third degree: it ſtays wind, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Persicum*, are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable after the loss of blood.

Pologono, which we call Knot-grass, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth back humours.

Plantago, which we call Plantain, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, drieth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

Porri, which we call Leeks, Scallions or Onions, are hot and dry, and do extenuate Obstructions, and raise and loosen all evil humors in the Body.

Puce or *Porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and it is good for all cold watrish Stomachs.

Pulegium, which we call Penyroial, is hot and dry in the third degree, it doth vehemently dry in moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs.

Punicum Malum, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: it bindeth, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach.

R

R*Afano* or *Raphanus*, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: they comfort and are good for old Colds; but especially they provoke Urine.

Resina, which we call Rosin, is hot and dry in the second degree: it stoppeth, softneth, cleanseth, draweth and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

Resalgar, see *Risigalla*.

Rogoretio or *Rigolio*, which we call Licoras, is temperate in heat, and moisteneth, and ripeneth, and is good for Heat in the Stomach or Liver, and profitable against wounds.

Risigalla is a composition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unslakt Lime; and is a most strong Corrosive.

Rossa flos, which we call Rose leaves, or Rose-cakes, are dry and binding.

Rubea which we call Madder, is dry: it comforteth and incarnateth, the root thereof provoketh Urine and is good for the yellows.

Ruberb or *Rubarb* it hot and dry in the second degree, it purgeth choler and flegm, and putteth away stoppings.

Ruta, which we call Rue or Herb of grace, is hot and dry in the third

third degree: but the wild Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth, the Garden-Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammations it ripeneth, and drieth, and expelleth wind.

S

Savina which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree, it openeth dissolveth, drieth mightily, and is most soveraign against worms.

Sacro is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.

Sagapenum see *Serapino.*

Sagina or *Saggina* or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

Sale, which we call Salt, is hot and dry in the second degree: and it cleanseth.

Salamora, which we call Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same nature that Salt is.

Sal-armoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree: and it cleanseth.

Salce, which we call Sallows or Willows: it bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Salcemma, is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry: it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Salnitro, some use for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: it comforteth Sinews and taketh away tyring or wearinesse.

Salvia, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second degree: it cleanseth and bindeth. Is good for Wounds, or Exulceration of the Lungs.

Sambucus, which we call Elder-tree or Wall-wort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: it dricth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

Sandolo, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive back humors.

Sandolo Rosso or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red Sand or white Sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skin.

Sanguis draconis, see *Cinabar*: yet some take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not so.

Sapone, which we call Sope, is hot: it draweth, mollifieth, drieth, cleanseth and pargeth.

Saxifragia

Saſſifragia, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

Scabioſo, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they do regenerate, and are good for ſcabs, for the Lungs, or for the ſoreneſs in the breaſt.

Scammonium, which is the juyce of a root, is hot in the third degree: it digeſteth and purgeth cholar, but muſt never be given inwardly, unleſs it be corrected.

Scarola which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

Sarcocolla, is a Gum of the kind of *Euforbium*, it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth, incarnateth, and comforteth Wounds.

Sea Onions, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindreth putri action, and preſerveth health.

Semola, which we call young Coleworts, are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Semper vive, which we call Houſleek, and ſome call Stone crop, is cold in the third and dry in the ſecond degree: it is good for burnings or frettings, or for inflammation of Ulcers; it driveth back humours, cooleth and bindeth.

Savadolce is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it cleanſeth and openeth.

Serapino, is a Gum of Ferula, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: it mollifieth, looſeneth, and is good for Colds.

Serpillo, which we call wild running Betony or Time, ſmelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

Sinapi, which we call Muſtard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it draweth and reſolveth, and is good for Scurfs or wild Scabs.

Solatro, which we call Night ſhade, is cold in the third degree.

Sulphur vive, which we call Brimſtone, is hot and dry in the third degree: it draweth, diſperſeth humours, and killeth worms.

Spelta, which we call Beer-Barley, is a grain leſs than Wheat, and ſhorter than Rye, but not ſo black, is cool and cleanſing.

Sparaci, which we call Aſparagus, is without any manifeſt heat or cold, and only cleanſeth.

Spiga or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the firſt, and dry

dry in the ſecond degree: it cleanſeth, and is good for the head, eſpecially the Conſerve, which is very comfortable.

Squilla, is that which we call the Sea-Onion: ſee Sea-Onion.

Staechas, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

Storax or *Styrax*, is a ſweet Gum, which is hot and dry: it correcteth, ſoftneth, and is good for coughs or any ſickneſs in the head.

T

Tartarum, which we call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which ſtick to the Veſſel: it is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanſeth.

Tataruch, which we call Snails with ſhells, are of the ſame nature that Snails without ſhells are.

Taſſo barbaroſſo, which we call Yew, is of nature poiſon.

Turpentine is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: it draweth, cleanſeth, skinneth and comforteth.

Thymum, which we call Time, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth flegm.

Thuris Lacrimæ, which we call frankincenſe, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree. See *Olibanum*.

Thuris cortex, is dry in the ſecond degree, and bindeth.

Thuris ſucculis is hot and dry in the third degree.

Tithymalis, which we call Spurge or Milk-Thiſtle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it cleanſeth and purgeth flegm and choler, and is good for old ſores or fiſtula's.

Trifera Magna is a certain Compoſition which will provoke ſweat, helpeth grief in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

Tutia Preparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, and is very good for ſore Eyes.

V

Veratro, ſee *Ellebor*.

Verbena, which we call Vervin, is hot and dry: it comforteth and mundifieth.

Verderame, which we call Verdigreaſe, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corroſive that eateth away dead fleſh.

Vermi,

Vermi, which we call Worms, do conglutinate and comfort ſinews.

Verce is hot and dry, See *Braſica.*

Vitro, which we call Glaſs, is hot in the firſt and dry in the ſecond, and it cleanſeth.

Vinacce, which we call the Kernels of Grapes, are dry.

Virga Paſtoris, which we call Wild Taſſel, is cold in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: it comforteth and bindeth.

Viſchio, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree: it drieth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid ſtuff, it burneth, and is Corroſive.

Vitelli or *Vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the root: it cleanſeth and killeth ſcabs: it drieth, it draweth, mollifieth and diſſolveth.

Vitelli which we call the yolks of any Eggs, are hot, and do ſtrengthen and incarnate.

Vitriol, which we call Copperas, is of two kinds, that is, *Vitriolum Romanum*, which we call green Copperas, and *Vitriolum album*, which we call white Copperas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the ſtronger; they take away ſcurfs, and kill ſcabs.

Vitriola Calcanthum, is reckoned amongſt Mettals, and is a kind of inky earth: drieth and fretteth.

Vitriola herba is an herb that groweth on the wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall. See *Helxin.*

Urtica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and ſtop and cleanſe humors, and are good for ſores.

Z

Zeferano, which we call Saffron, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: it comforteth and expelleth all inward Poiſon, and incarnateth Wounds.

Zebulus, ſee *Ziziphe.*

Zeutonico, which we call Worm-ſeed, is hot and dry.

Zenzera, which we call Ginger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the ſtrength of long Pepper; it maintaineth natural heat, and is good for cold ſtomachs.

Ziziphe taketh away Coughs, and helpeth the ſhortneſs of Breath.

Zucche, which we call Gourds, are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and it allayeth all manner of Inflammations, or hot ſwel-

CHAP. CXCVII.

Certain Principles touching SIMPLES.

YOu ſhall underſtand, that touching Simples, ſome are only to eaſe pain, as Linſeed, Camomil, ſoft Greaſe, Suet of all ſorts, or any other Oyl that is hot in the firſt degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or Lynogs.

There are other Simples which are aſtonying, benumbing or bringing aſleep, as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock, and ſuch like, which are groſs and cold in the fourth degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongſt Leaches, called *Narcotica.*

The third ſort of Simples are ſuch as incarnate or breed fleſh, as Frankincenſe, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, and ſuch like, which are hot in the ſecond degree; and whenſoever any of theſe Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica.*

The fourth ſort of Simples are corroding, fretting or burning, as Arſnick, Riſſagallo, Mercury, Lime, and ſuch like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whenſoever they are applied ſimple or compound, then the Medicine is called Corroſive.

The fifth ſort of Simples are thoſe which be called mollifying, and are four in number: that is, green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-urſin.

The laſt ſort of Simples are thoſe which are called Cordials, and are three in number; that is to ſay, Violets and Bugloſs of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, uſe, property, and operation of Simples.

CHAP. CXCVIII.

Of Weights and Meaſures, and to know them by their Characters.

ALbeit I have in this work ſet down your Weights and Meaſures in ſuch plain Engliſh, that every one may underſtand them: yet foraſmuch as the more curious do ſet down many excellent Receits under obſcure Characters, I think it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any ſuch, you may not be ignorant in the underſtanding of them.

Know then that the leaſt of all weights is a grain, which is the weight either of a Barley-corn, or of a Pepper-corn, and his Character is *G.* or *Gr.*

Siliqua is four grains, and his Character is *ſ.*

An Engliſh half-penny is five grains, and his Character is *ob.*

A Scruple is twenty grains, and his Character is ℈.

A dram is three Scruples, or the eighth part of an ounce, and his Character is ʒ.

A Roman Penny is the ſame that a Dram is, and his Character is *X.*

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty four ſcruples, and four hundred and eighty grains, and his Character is ℥.

The Character of half an ounce is ſs.

A Pound in medicinal Receits is twelve ounces, and his Character is ℔.

The Handful is ſix Ounces and a half, and his Character is *M.*

The Character of as much as you can hold betwixt your Finger is. p.

The Character for a drop is *Gut.*

The Character for three drops is *Gut.* iij.

℔ ſs is half a pound.

℥ ſs is half an Ounce.

ʒ ſs is half a Dram.

℈ ſs is half a Scruple.

℥ j ſs is an Ounce and a half.

M j ſs is a Handful and a half.

P j is half a handful, which is three ounces and a half.

Ana or *aa*, is like, or of each alike.

And thus much touching Weights, and their true Characters.

CHAP. CXCIX.

The Farriers Inſtruments expounded, with their Names and Properties.

THe Figure 1. ſheweth the Hammer, which driveth in the nail.

Figure 2. Pincers which breaketh off, clencheth and draweth the nail.

3. The Butteris, which pareth and openeth the Foot.

4. The Raſp or Rape, which maketh ſmooth the Hoof.

5. The Cutting Knife, which taketh away the ſuperfluous Hoof.

6. The Fleam, with which he letteth blood in the Neck, or in the groſs places where the vein is great.

7. The Farriers Lancet which openeth ſmall veins and thrids, where the Stroak may not be uſed.

8. The Inciſion-Knife, to open Impoſtumes and to cut away ſuperfluous Fleſh.

9. The Cronet to take up Veins.

10. The drawing cauterizing Iron to open and ſeparate the fleſh either ſound or impoſtumed.

11. The round button cauterizing Iron to boar holes in the skin and ſwelled places.

12. The Mullets to cleanſe Wounds.

13. The Barnacles to pinch an Horſe by the noſe or ears, to make him endure pain patiently.

14. The Needle to ſtitch up Wounds.

15. The Probe to ſearch and find out the depth of Wounds.

And thus you have a full Explanation of all the needful Inſtruments belonging to the skilful Farrier.

The Farriers chief Instruments.

THE POSTSCRIPT.

Courteous Reader.

HAving now with infinite Labour and Induſtry perfected and finiſhed this my MASTER-PIECE for the Cure of Horſes and Mares, wherein the Phyſical part of Horſemanſhip concerning thoſe manifold inward Diſeaſes which are incident to Horſes is clearly diſcovered, and the Chirurgical part concerning outward Accidents, is plainly opened and deſcribed; and having for the more abſolute Advancement of Horſemanſhip, and to give ſatisfaction therein, made a particular Speculation and run through every Part, Vein, Bone, Sinew and Artery of the Horſes Body, demonſtrating not only their Number and Place by Figure, but alſo conſidering their Diſaffections and Diſeaſes which do thereunto belong; and having alſo with much pain (as a Work of this difficult nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not only giving you a few terms of Art concerning Horſemanſhip, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the Integral parts of a Horſe, with their Diſeaſes inward and outward, and their Phyſical and Chirurgical Cure exactly preſcribed and ſet down, and have given you ocular Demonſtrations of the whole Fabrick of the Horſes Body. So that as in a Map you may behold every ſmall Part, River, Creek or Stream running up and down within the Superficies of the Earth; ſo I have likewiſe made and drawn divers Pictures, ſetting out all the parts and parcels of a Horſes Body, and that they may be plainly ſeen and conſidered, I have moſt lively delineated and

figured

figured out every Part and Vein in the Horſe, where to find it from head to foot. I have alſo Anatomized the Horſe in every Bone, that you may perceive their Conjunction, and how they are joyned, and thereby judge of their Diſlocations, and putting out of their places; and all this you ſhall at one view behold in the ſeveral Parts and Figures which you ſhall find in this Book.

Therefore, I would adviſe all Gentlemen, and others, who being of a generous ſpirit, cannot chuſe but delight and take wonderful pleaſure in Horſes, to conſider, that for want of Care and Experience many excellent Horſes falling into ſlight and common Diſeaſes, have either utterly periſhed, or elſe been lamed and ſpoiled; it will be therefore a Study worthy the thoughts of a generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward Diſeaſes of Horſes, in regard that a Horſe is a Beaſt whoſe praiſes cannot be ſufficiently declared.

The Horſe is commodious for common uſe, as pleaſing Tillage, and tranſporting of Carriages and Burthens, and alſo for mens continual occaſions and daily Journeys. In time of Peace, when Princes did uſe to recreate themſelves with Hunting Deer and other wild Beaſts, Horſes were always had in high eſtimation and honour; and thoſe that would out-run the Wind, and made the beſt ſpeed after the Chaſe were moſt eſteemed, ſo that there could be no pleaſure in hunting, if they had not Horſes to carry them after their Game; and what a brave ſight it is to ſee in a field an hundred or more hunting Horſes riding and running this way or that way after the timorous Deer, or fearful Hare? Therefore the Horſe, as he was made for induſtrious Labour, ſo he is fit to maintain and procure the Pleaſures and Delights of a Prince, or any Nobleman.

And moreover in War, the Courage and Service of a

Horse is daily now seen, and too well known; he will as if he were animated by the sound of Drums and Trumpets, presently rush into the Battel, and take delight to charge the Enemy; he is all fire, and full of metal and Fury. And thus we see that a Horse is not only convenient for daily occasions of the Husbandman, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes-Courts he is highly esteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other Pastimes; and also in the Wars, his daily Service is sufficiently known, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for Profit and Pleasure; for Labour and Delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occasions.

It is pitty then that a brave Horse, well-limb'd and spirited, falling sick in any inward Disease, or outward accidental infirmity, as Sprains, Dislocation of Bones, Spavins, and hundreds more, should be spoiled, in suffering the Disease to grow on him until it be incurable, or in applying Remedies unfit for the Malady; whereby many a Horse becomes maimed, and for want of Cure utterly disabled for any Service.

Therefore my advice and counsel is, (as I said before) that if any Gentlemen whatsoever, shall have their Horses, either by outward accident, as Sprains, pricking in the Feet, and the like; or inward Surfeits, Glanders, Colds and Heats, by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall sick, or become through the aforesaid Infirmities any ways disabled for Service, they should not depend upon their own Experience or Judgment, but should wisely consider with themselves, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their Opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such Diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this means, by the height of Discourse and Reason, they may come to a certain and

infallible knowledge of the Horses Diseases and Infirmities, and having diligently searched out the Causes thereof, they may know likewise to cure the same; for you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Book-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge than Horses themselves, but are subject through their Ignorance to run into many gross Errors, so that through their Negligence, and aforesaid Ignorance, mistaking the causes and cures of Diseases, and in one word, most grossly, for it is good for experience both in the Theorick and Practick part of any Art or Science.

For another (to my knowledge) many good Horses do continually remain lame and unfit for Service, or else do utterly perish for want of understanding their Diseases and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore as wise Physicians do consult together when they meet with a sick Patient, so I advise both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their Judgments together whereby the Beast may be saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gain Credit, and their Experience and knowledge in the many diseases of Horses much bettered.

Moreover, for the Readers greater benefit, all Simples and Compounds good for Horses are Alphabetically here placed, and the Conditions of them whether hot or cold, with their Names and Qualities are described. Also what Ounces, Drams and Scruples are to be given in any Drink. If Gentlemen be unacquainted with these things, let them confer with the Farriers, and so confirm their Judgments by Discourse. And so, courteous Reader, I have left you my best Work thus accomplished, and thus perfected, that I know, in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horses, it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the Advice of this Postscript.

THE

THE TABLE OF THE FIRST BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Physical.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*THE Composition of Horses bodies*	1
2	*Of Elements.*	2
3	*Of Temperaments*	5
4	*Of Humours*	7
5	*Of Members*	8
6	*Of Powers*	10
7	*Of Actions or operations*	11
8	*Of Spirits*	12
9	*Of things not natural*	13
10	*Of complexions*	16
11	*Of inward sicknesses*	18
12	*Of signs of sicknesses*	19
13	*Of Observations in Physicking*	23
14	*Of Urine and excrements*	25
15	*Of Fevers*	27
16	*The Quotidian*	29
17	*The Tertian*	30
18	*The Quartan*	31

Chapter.		Page.
19	*The continual*	31
20	*The Hetique*	32
21	*The Autumn Fever*	33
22	*The Summer Feaver*	33
23	*The Winter Feaver*	34
24	*Fever by surfet*	35
25	*Fever pestilent*	35
26	*Of the plague*	36
27	*Fever accidental*	37
☞ 28	*One general approved cure for all Fevers*	38
29	*Diseases in the head*	38
30	*Of Head-ach*	39
31	*Of Frenzie*	40
32	*Of the sleeping evil*	41
33	*A Horse taken*	41
34	*Of the Staggers*	43
35	*Of the falling-evil*	45
36	*Of the Night-mare*	46
37	*Of the Palsie*	47
38	*Of the general cramp*	48
39	*Of the cold*	50
☞ 40	*How to take away any cold*	52
☞ 41	*The best of all medicines for the cold*	52
42	*Of Hide bound*	53
43	*Of the Glanders*	54
☞ 44	*Two certain cures for the Glanders*	58
45	*Of the mourning of the Chire*	59
☞ 46	*A certain approved medicine for the mourning of the Chire*	61
47	*Of the cough.*	61
48	*Of the wet cough*	63
49	*Of the dry cough*	64
☞ 50	*Two approved cures for any cold cough*	67
☞ 51	*The best Medicines for any dry cough*	67
52	*Of broken Lungs*	68
53	*Of rotten Lungs*	69
54	*Of shortness of breath*	69
55	*Of the broken winded*	71
56	*Of the consumption*	74
57	*Consumption of the flesh*	75
		58 76

Chapter.	Page.
58 *To make a Horse fat*	76
59 *The mirrour and master of all medicines to fatten a Horse*	78
60 *Of the breast pain*	79
61 *Of the Anticor, or heart-sickness*	80
62 *Of tyred Horses*	80
63 *Of loathing of meat*	83
64 *Of casting out drink*	84
65 *Of glut of provender*	85
66 *Of foundring in the Body*	86
67 *Of the hungry evil*	88
68 *Of inflammation in the Liver*	89
69 *Of obstructions in the Liver*	90
70 *Of the Consumption of the Liver*	92
71 *Of Diseases in the Gall*	93
72 *Diseases in the speen*	94
73 *Of the Yellows*	95
74 *Of the Dropsie*	98
75 *Of the Colick*	100
76 *Of the Belly-ake*	101
77 *Of Costiveness*	101
78 *Of the Lax*	103
79 *Of the bloody flix*	104
80 *Falling of the Fundament*	105
81 *Of Bots and Worms*	106
82 *Of pain in the Kidneys*	109
83 *Of the Strangury*	110
84 *Of the pain-piss*	111
85 *Of the stone*	112
86 *Of pissing blood*	114
87 *Of the Colts evil*	115
88 *Of the mattering of the yard*	116
89 *Of the sheding of the seed*	116
90 *Falling of the yard*	117
91 *Barrenness of Mares*	118
92 *Consumption in Mares*	119
93 *Rage of love in Mares*	119
94 *Of casting foals*	119
95 *Of hardness of foaling*	120
96 *Of making Mares cast their foals*	120
97 *Drinks*	

Chapter.		Page.
97	*Drinking of Horſe-leaches*	121
98	*Eating of Hens dung*	121
99	*Of the Suppoſitory*	122
100	*Of Gliſters*	124
101	*Of Purgations*	126
☞ 102	*An excellent and approved ſcouring*	130
103	*Of neezing or fumes*	131
104	*Of friction and bathes*	133
105	*General drenches*	134
106	*To make Diapente*	135
107	*A famous Drench and ointment*	135
108	*Of the oyl of oats*	136
109	*Brief obſervations, &c.*	137
110	*Principles in foals and horſes*	142
111	*Obſervations in mares*	143
112	*Obſervations in buying a horſe*	144
113	*Notes concerning ſome ſimples*	145

THE

THE TABLE OF THE SECOND BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Chirurgical.

Chapter.		Page.
P	*Roportions of members*	149
	2 *Of the Veins*	152
2	*The Anatomy of Veins*	152
3	*Of the ſinews*	154
3	*The Anatomy of ſinews*	155
4	*Of all the Bones*	156
4	*The Anatomy of Bones*	157
5	*Of letting blood*	158
6	*Of outward Sorrances*	162
7	*Of weeping eyes*	164
8	*Of blood-ſhotten eyes*	165
9	*Dimneſs of ſight*	166
10	*A certain and approved Medicine for any blindneſs, &c.*	167
11	*Another to the ſame effect*	167
12	*Pearl, pin, or Web*	168
13	*An infallible cure for any pin, pearl, or Web*	170
14	*Of the Happ*	170

15 Of

Chapter.		Page.
15	*Of Moon eyes*	171
16	*Canker in the eye*	172
17	*Stripe in the eye*	173
18	*Wart in the eye*	174
19	*Inflammation in the eye*	174
20	*Impostume in the ear*	175
21	*The pole evil*	176
22	*A rare and certain cure for the pole-evil*	178
23	*Of leaved ears*	178
24	*Of the vives*	179
25	*A rare and certain approved cure for the vives*	181
26	*Another excellent cure for the vives*	181
27	*Of the strangle*	182
28	*Canker in the nose*	183
29	*Bleeding at the nose*	184
30	*Bloody rifts*	185
31	*The Gigges*	186
32	*Of the Lampass*	187
33	*Of the Camery*	187
34	*Canker in the mouth*	188
35	*Heat in the mouth*	189
36	*The tongue hurt*	190
37	*Of the Barbes*	190
38	*Pain in the teeth, and of Wolves teeth*	191
39	*Crick in the neck*	193
40	*Wenns in the neck*	194
41	*Swelling after bloodletting*	195
42	*To stanch blood*	196
43	*Falling of the creſt*	197
44	*A certain approved way to raiſe the creſt*	198
45	*Mangineſs in the Main*	199
46	*Of ſhedding the hair*	200
47	*Grief in the withers*	200
48	*Any gall'd back*	203
49	*Canker in the withers*	205
50	*Of the ſit-faſt*	206
61	*Wenns below the ſaddle*	206
52	*Navil-gall*	207
53	*Swaying of the back*	208

Chapter.	Page.
54 *Weakneſs in the back*	209
55 *Swelling of the cods*	210
56 *Of Burſtneſs, or incording*	211
57 *Botch in the groin*	213
☞ 58 *A certain approved cure for the Botch.*	213
59 *Itch in the tail*	213
60 *Of the gēneral ſcab*	214
☞ 61 *Two moſt excellent and approved cures for the ſcabs*	217
62 *Of halting before*	218
63 *Of halting behind*	220
64 *Of hidden grief*	221
65 *Of griefs in the ſhoulder*	222
66 *Wrinch in the ſhoulder*	223
67 *Wrinch in the nether joynt*	225
68 *Splatting the ſhoulder*	225
69 *Shoulder-pight*	226
☞ 70 *A certain cure for any deſpērate ſtrain in the ſhoulder, &c.*	227
71 *Swelling in the fore leggs*	228
72 *Foundring in the feet*	229
73 *Of the ſplent*	234
☞ 74 *An approved and certain cure for any Splent*	237
75 *Of the Serew*	237
76 *Of the Mallender*	238
77 *Of an upper attaint*	239
☞ 78 *An approved Medicine for any ſinew ſtrain*	241
79 *Anether attaint*	241
80 *An over-reach on the heel*	242
81 *The mellet*	242
82 *Falſe quarters*	243
83 *An Horſe hipped*	244
84 *Of ſtifling*	245
85 *Bone ſpaven*	247
86 *Blood-ſpaven*	250
☞ 87 *An approved cure for any Blood-ſpaven whatſoever*	251
88 *Of the Sellander*	151
89 *Of the hough-bone*	252
90 *Of the Curb*	253
91 *Of the paines*	254
92 *The mules*	257

Chapter.		Page.
93	*Of Wind galls*	258
94	*Strain in the paſtorn*	260
95	*To help any halting*	261
☞ 96	*Three rare and approved Medicines to cure any ſtrain or ſwelling whatſoever*	263
☞ 97	*Another approved cure for any ſtrain*	264
98	*Of enterfearing*	264
99	*The ſhackle-gall*	265
100	*Caſting in the halter*	265
101	*The ſcratches*	266
☞ 102	*A certain and approved cure for the ſcratches.*	268
103	*Of the Ring-bone*	269
104	*Hurts on the cronet*	270
☞ 105	*A certain approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet*	271
106	*The crown ſcab*	271
107	*The Quitter-bone*	272
108	*Of gravelling*	273
109	*Of ſurbating*	275
110	*Prick in the ſole*	276
111	*To draw out a ſtub*	277
112	*The Fig*	278
113	*A Retrait*	278
114	*Of Cloying*	280
115	*Obſervations for the hoofs*	281
116	*Looſening the hoof*	281
117	*Caſting the hoof*	284
118	*Of Hoofbound*	285
119	*The running Fruſh*	286
☞ 120	*An approved and certain cure for the running Fruſh*	287
121	*Of evil hoofs*	288
122	*Of Brittle hoofs*	288
123	*To preſerve hoofs*	289
124	*Hurts on the Hoofs*	290
125	*To ſoften Hoofs*	290
126	*To harden Hoofs*	290
127	*Of the Mat-long*	128
128	*To skin a ſore Foot*	291
129	*Of gourded Legs*	292
☞ 130	*A moſt certain and approved Cure for gourded Legs*	293

Chapter.		Page.
131	*Of the Farcy*	294
132	*Of the Canker*	301
133	*Of the Fistula*	303
☞ 134	*A rare and approved cure for any Fistula*	308
135	*Of the Ambury*	308
136	*Of the Cords*	309
137	*Of the string-halt*	309
138	*Of Spur-gall*	310
139	*Of Wounds in general*	310
140	*Hurts with Arrows*	313
141	*Of healing old Sores*	313
☞ 142	*A certain and approved cure for any old Sore*	314
143	*Of Bruisings or Swellings*	314
144	*Of Impostumes*	316
145	*Of cold Impostumes*	317
146	*Of hot impostumes*	318
147	*Of the Tetter*	318
148	*Of Sinews cut &c.*	319
149	*Of Fretting with the Girths*	319
150	*Of Blisters*	320
151	*To take away Bones, &c.*	320
152	*To eat dead Flesh*	321
153	*Of Knots in Joint*	323
154	*Wounds made with Gun-powder*	324
155	*Of burning with Lime*	325
156	*Biting of a mad Dog*	325
157	*Hurts with a Boars Tusks*	326
158	*The Stinging of Serpents*	326
159	*Of Lice*	327
168	*Defence from Flies*	328
161	*Of Bones broken*	328
162	*Bones out of joynt*	330
163	*To dry up Humours*	331
164	*To dry up superfluous Moisture*	331
165	*To dry any Swelling*	332
166	*To dissolve Humours*	332
167	*To mollifie Hardness*	333
168	*To harden Softness*	334
169	*To conglutinate.*	334

Chapter.		Page.
170	*To mundifie*	334
171	*Repercuſſive Medicines*	335
172	*Of burning compoſitions*	335
173	*For all manner of Hurts*	335
174	*Powder of Honey and Lime*	337
175	*The taking up of Veins*	337
176	*Of Cauterizing*	339
177	*Cauterizing actual*	340
178	*Cauterizing potential*	342
179	*Of Rowelling*	344
180	*To geld Horſes*	346
181	*To make Curtals*	347
182	*To make a white Star*	348
183	*To make a black Star*	350
184	*To make a red Star*	350
185	*To make Hair to come very ſoon*	352
186	*To make Hair ſmooth and fine*	353
187	*How to take off Hair in any part of a Horſe*	353
188	*How to caſt and overthrow a Horſe*	353
189	*How to know the age of a Horſe*	354
190	*How to make an old Horſe ſeem young*	355
191	*How to make that a Horſe ſhall not neigh, neither in company, or when he is ridden*	356
192	*How to make a Horſe exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur*	356
193	*How to make a Horſe that tires, or is reſtiff, to go forward*	357
☞ 194	*Other moſt excellent and approved ways to preſerve an Horſe from tiring, never diſcloſed till now*	357
195	*How to make a Horſe to follow his Maſter, and to find him out, and challenge him among never ſo many people*	358
196	*The Nature and ſpecial Qualities of all the Simples that are ſpoken of in this whole Work, ſet down in the manner of Alphabet*	359
197	*Certain Principles touching Simples*	376.
198	*Of Weights and Meaſures, and how to know them by their Characters*	377
199	*The Farriers Inſtruments expounded, with their Names and Properties.*	378

FINIS.

AN
APPENDIX,
CONTAINING
The exacteſt RECEIPTS for Curing
ALL
DISEASES
IN
OXEN, COWS, SHEEP, HOGS, GOATS, and all ſmall Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON,
Printed by *Ralph Holt*, for *John Wright* at the Crown on *Ludgate-hill*, and *Thomas Paſſenger* at the three Bibles on *London-Bridge*. 1683.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

I. Of OXEN.

THE worthy Author having excellently treated of the Order and Government of Horſes, both as to their Breeding, Feeding and managing, as alſo for the Curing of all Diſeaſes they are, or may be incident to, I thought it very proper to add by way of *Appendix*, this ſhort, but neceſſary Treatiſe for the direction of the painful Country-man in his ordering all other ſorts of Cattel, *viz.* Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, *&c.* and herein I ſhall be as ſhort as may be, giving you only thoſe approved Receipts, which not only the former, but theſe modern times have frequently experienced.

CHAP. I.

For the Cough in Oxen.

A Cough of no long continuance may ſoon be remedied by a Drink which you make with Water and Barley-Meal, adding ſome Bean-Flower and ſome Stich-wort and ſo given to your Beaſt.

A certain Cure for an old Cough, is to ſteep two pound of Hyſſop in a quart or two of Water, well mixt with eight Pounds of Lentil-peaſe mingled together; Likewiſe give the Beaſt fine Wheat and Roots of Leeks clean waſhed, well beat together, faſting. You may alſo ſtamp Garlick with Dragon-Water, new Ale and Butter, and being warm give it the Beaſt.

CHAP. II.

For a Beast's Hoof hurt.

IF your Ox by chance be hurt with a Stub of Wood, or with a Coulter or Share, or any part of the Clees, mix but the Powder of Brimstone with a Salve of Pitch and old Grease well melted together; then pour it hot on any sore part.

To keep your Beasts from Foundring, when you unyoke them, wash their Feet with cold Water, likewise let their Pasterns and Clees be anointed with old Grease, and they will do well.

To cure the Gravel or a Cut in an Oxes foot, let him be bathed in warm Water, then melt Tar and old Grease for an Ointment, and if with old fresh Grease you rub and chafe his Feet, before you unyoke them, nothing is better to preserve them.

CHAP. III.

For a Bruise on a Beast's Shoulder.

LAbouring Oxen may be lame or sore bruised on their Shoulders, either by going on the hard Ground, by a crush of a Post or Gate, let them but bleed on the Fore-legs, it shall certainly heal them.

CHAP. IV.

For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body.

YOur Ox will commonly gape, and eat no meat, but stand holding his head and mourn, if he has eat any venemous Grass or such like, for Cure whereof give him to swallow down a white Onion bruised, well mixt with a little good Vinegar, but be sure before he has it, you rub his Mouth and Tongue well with it.

CHAP. V.

To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattle.

BY taking Cold after a great Rain, by ſome Sickneſs or Surfeit, your Oxen, Kine or other Cattel may be louſie; for a Remedy, rub and chafe the Beaſt all over with the Decoction of wild Olives mixt with Salt, or take Penniroyal mixt with Garlick ſtampt. Give it the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, and chafe him a while after. Some ſay Rain will kill them, if you ſift Aſhes on their Backs. If you feed your Cattel well, and put them into good paſture, it will not be long ere they are well. If they have Lice or Ticks about them, theſe Medicines above are very good to kill them with.

CHAP. VI.

Againſt the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn.

YOur Cattel will be in danger of Death (without ſpeedy Remedy) if through negligence of the Keeper, they eat of Barley, Rie or Wheat, that is near ripe; for it will lie and ſpout in their Maws, and cauſe in them a mighty Swelling. To help them, ſome drive them up and down, till they ſee them aſſwage thereof and ſo they recover. Some throw a new-laid Egg, ſhell and all into the Beaſts Mouth, and break it in his Mouth, making him ſwallow it with Ale. Some give him a handful of Nettle-tops well beat, and ſtrained with Wine or honied Water. Some Stamp or ſtrain Juniper Leaves or green Berries with Wine, and give it the Beaſt. Others give the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, Soot and the hard Rone of a red Herring well beaten. All which are approved Remedies.

CHAP. VII.

For an Ox or other Beaſt that have loſt their Quide.

AN Ox or other Beaſt will mourn, and eat nothing (becauſe he cannot digeſt what he has already eaten) if he happen to loſe his Quide, as perhaps by ſome occaſion it may fall out of his Mouth. To remedy this, ſome take part of the Quide out of another Beaſts Mouth of the like nature; if it be a Cow wants her Quide, they

take part of the Quide of another Cow, giving it her to ſwallow down, and ſhe will be well, and ſo the like of other Beaſts. Some bruiſe a quantity of the Herb called Cudwort, and put it to a quantity of Fat, and ſo make the Beaſt that hath loſt his Quide ſwallow it, and he will amend. Others put a piece of Leaven into the Beaſts Mouth, as aforeſaid, and thereby he will recover: but if he have continued ſo long that he is far ſpent and waſted, take out his Tongue, prick the Vein under it with an Awl in two or three places, and ſo it will bleed, whereby he will be well again.

CHAP. VIII.

For Worms in Cattel.

STamp a good handful of Wormwood, ſtrain it with Ale or Beer, and give to your Cattel troubled with Worms. Some ſtamp Garlick and mix it with Milk or Ale, and give them. Some ſtamp a good handful of Mugwort, and being ſtrained with Ale, give it the Beaſt. Others ſtamp Garden-Creſſes, then ſtrain it with Ale, and give them. All which are very good Remedies for Worms in Cattel.

CHAP. IX.

To help a Beaſt that piſſeth Blood.

IN arable Land you may find ſhell-ſtones, which burnt and beaten to powder, and mixed in a Veſſell of Milk and Water, is very proper to be given to your Cattel, or you may take Blood-wort and Knot-graſs, and ſtamp a handful of each together, mix them with good Milk; add to it ſome runnet and ſome of the husks of Acorns. Give this in a drenching-Horn twice a day, and it will effect what is deſired.

CHAP. X.

To help cattel that cannot Piſs.

TAke *Cardnus Benedictus* a good quantity, and ſteep it in White-Wine a whole night, afterward ſtrain it; you may alſo add ſome Sow thiſtles, a handful of Anniſeeds and two or three Onions ſliced all ſteeped the ſame time and ſtrained, and ſo given

given to the beaſt it will force Urine, and increaſe the Appetite.

CHAP. XI.

For Beaſts that are gored or hurt by one anothers horns.

YOu may take red Earth and Oker, and mingle them well together with a little Ale, make a Salve of it and ſpread it upon a Plaiſter. Aſhes finely ſifted mixed with the Grounds of Ale, have been found an excellent Remedy, but it muſt be made very thick and applied by Plaiſter to the place grieved. It certainly heals.

CHAP. XII.

To breed Calves and cut them.

AS Husbands relate, it is not convenient to take Calves of which you will make young Bulls, which are calved within the Prime, which is counted five days after the Change, for they will not prove well: And Calves (or any other Beaſt) then Calved are not good to keep, but to eat or ſell: Two Calves of a hundred will be enough to make Bulls. For the reſt it will be beſt to cut them quickly after they have Calved, for two years old; then mix with Litharge the Aſhes of Vine-Twigs burnt, and put it upon the Sores, three days after for fear of Swelling anoint it with melted Tar mingled with the aforeſaid Aſhes.

Some approve of gelding of Calves young and tender, not with Iron, but a cloven Hazel-ſtick preſſed together, raiſing the end by degrees, whilſt it is conſumed. This way is counted beſt, for it is performed without wound.

It is not ſo convenient to cut a Calf (that is big) the firſt year, as it is the ſecond.

In Autumn at the Decreaſe of the Moon, it is beſt to cut them, the Sign not being in the place; then take two ſtraight laths, like Rulers of Wood, made in faſhion of a pair of Tongs or Barnacles, caſting him down, his feet being traveſſed together, touch him with Iron, afterwards take up the Stone with the Nerves and Strings they hang by, and cloſe your Tongs under betwixt his body and Stones; let the Stones be on the out-ſide, but cloſe them hard together, then firſt ſlit the purſe of one Cod, and put forth the Stone thereat. Let

it be cut off within, hard by the ſaid tongue, cloſe up the Nerves; then take out the other Stone. For fear of bleeding too much, anoint him with freſh greaſe, and let him go, but cut them ſo, that you leave the ends of the String joyning to the ſaid Nerve, and he will not loſe ſo much Blood, and will not be Feminate nor ſtout of his Members. After ye have thus dreſſed, anoint him with freſh Greaſe.

CHAP. XIII.

The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves.

THe right and good ordering and nouriſhing of Cattel and Kine (as able Authors relate to us) muſt be the care of the Husbandman himſelf, or ſome honeſt experienced Servant that will have a diligent eye over his Cattel, whether they be Oxen or Kine, at home or abroad, and to ſee that they have (both Morning and Evening) Meat and Water ſufficient, and in due time; and if ſick, to provide them Medicines, and to get Stalls for them to lie in, ſet Eaſt and Weſt, with Windows and doors Southward but cloſe Northely, for the better ſecurity of the Cattle from the ſharpneſs of the winter. Some hold ſtrewing of Salt beat, on the boards or Stones under them to be good for the preſervation of the health. Some ſtrew Sand on their Planks for fear they ſhould ſlide. Be ſure they be well littered after their work at night.

If you put them out in the Spring with your Kine, ſeparate the young Calves as ſoon as they have ſucked their Dams and put them ſeveral into a Houſe, whereby they muſt remain one day, if you have a mind they ſhould ſuck, turn them out to their Dams only Morning and Night, then houſe them again. Thus doing, your Calves will be fairer and fatter than going with their Dams. It is neceſſary to give Kine with Calf of the green Herb called Melilot, ſtampt with Honey ſteept all night in Milk, this herb aforeſaid (although ſhe be a good Nurſe herſelf) without ſhe be well looked to by the Owner, ſhe will not be able to give nouriſhment enough to her Calf. Farmers Wives may (without any waſt) make Butter and Cheeſe, when the Calves are took up and the Milk put apart, gather your Cheeſe well and cloſe, preſs out the Whey clean, if you leave any in, the Cheeſe will be ſowr and full of holes, ſcald and waſh your Pots and other Veſſels throughly. Let not your women-Servants touch the Butter or Cheeſe when they have their monthly terms, for it is

not wholeſome It is not a good Sign for a day-labouring Ox to bate none of his fleſh, but to continue fat, for he is Flegmatick. Open his mouth every eighth day, waſh it with his own Water; it will draw forth the Flegm, which he would ſtill ſwallow down. The Flegm oft-times hinders his eating, and you may diſcern that it occaſions the Catarrh or Rheum by the hanging down his Ears, by the dropping of his Eyes, and being watery: then bruiſe Thyme in White-wine and waſh his mouth, and rub it with Fat and Garlick well mixt; after this waſh it again as before. Several Remedies are preſcribed for it, but for the Catarrh of Rheum, if his Eyes do inflame, let but blood on the vein under his Tongue, and you ſhall find the Cure perfected to your hearts content.

CHAP. XIV.

For Purging of Cattel.

BRuiſe and ſeeth in Water the Leaves of Alder, ſtrain them, give them to the Beaſt in the Morning, and both Choler and Flegm ſhall be purged downwards by it, it will likewſe cleanſe the Stomach of Water.

Others take a quart of Ale or Beer, putting it into a good handful of the Tops, Leaves and Flowers of Centaury, which they boil until a quart of it waſt away; then it being pretty warm (but be ſure well-ſtrained) they give it the Beaſt, if the Sign ſerve. This is a gentle Purge for Choler and Flegm, but Chiefly Flegm, and is neceſſary at any time for the Cattel. If the weather be ſharp, let him be in the houſe ſix hours after. Some put into a Pint or more of honied Water or Ale a handful of green Broom-Crops, which they ſteep at night, and ſo (being ſtrained the next morning) give it the Beaſt warm. There are ſeveral other things might be ſet down, but theſe well ordered, the Beaſts will do well, God willing.

CHAP. XV.

For fatting of Oxen.

COuntrymen and my Friends, if you deſire to fat your Oxen well, obſerve theſe following Directions; firſt he will like his Meat the better if he go in the Sun, or if with warm Water he be waſhed

three

three times a week; then give him to eat ground Beans, dried Barley, or Elm-Leaves; or if you boil Coleworts with Bran, it will make their Bellies loose, and add to Nutriment more than Barley; Chaff likewise sometimes mixt with ground Beans is very good. If your Ox by labour be weak or feeble, once a month give him Fetches beat, and steeped in Water mixt with beaten Bran, and to make your Beast lively and nimble, rub his horns with Turpentine being mixt with Oyl Olive; touch not any other part of his beside the Horns, for it will in some time indanger his Sight. Also if you rub and chafe the Muzzel or Mouth of an Ox with Garlick bruised or Leeks well beat; he being made to swallow it, he will assuredly be cured of a Rising that comes over the Heart of the Beast, whereby he seems as though he would vomit.

CHAP. XVI.

A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel.

THere are several Remedies for the Plage or Murrain amongst Cattel, if taken betimes. Infectious Blood causes the Disease; it is vulgarly discerned in the Head by a swelling, they will have great Eyes that run with Water; they will eat though they are sick, and when onte they froth at mouth they are near Death. For Cure of this Disease, it is thought good of some to bind a small Cord hard about the Neck, then take a Launcet and strike on the further side, where you will find a Vein bleed him a pint or more, and so for the other side of the Neck: It will stanch, the Cord being taken away, but it is more dangerous of Bleeding still if the Sign be there; and if it continue, put to it Nettles and Wild Tansie bruised with Salt, and some give them Drinks. Thus serve your infected Cattle, being all together in one Pasture, by this means you will avoid great peril in this Disease. The Murrain is caught by venomed Grass, by Company, by poisoned Water, and by Hunger.

CHAP. XVII.

To rear up Calves that they may increase.

IT will be prudence in a Husbandman every year to rear as many Calves as he thinks necessary for the maintenance of his Stock.

Thoſe that fall betwixt *Candlemaſs* and *May* are eſteemed of beſt, for at that time they can ſpare their Milk, and there will be Graſs enough, and they will be able by the next Winter to ſhift for themſelves with other Cattel, being looked after a little; alſo their Dams in *June* will take Bull again and bring other Calves in the ſpace above mentioned. A Cow is barren often times and the Calf weak, if it be after *May* ere ſhe Calf, and beſides it would be too chargeable to rear Calves the latter end of the year, and to keep their Dams in the Houſe all the Winter, as it is practiſed in ſome places: Again for their own Advantage it will be beſt they come betimes, that they may put them out, for Graſs increaſes a great deal more Milk, when the Kine are abroad, than Hay or Straw at home, for dry meat will abate Milk, Graſs does not; and if your Calves have been uſed to Graſs, wean them abroad and not at home; your Calves will have great Bellies if you wean them with Hay, Graſs makes them ſtir better, and not noxious to them, in the Winter-ſeaſon inſtal them, rather than let them run abroad anights; when you take them in, you may give them Hay, but in the day-time let them feed in the Fields. Obſerve but theſe Directions, and you will find them a great deal fitter for the Plough, when you come to make uſe of them.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk.

ANiſeeds boiled in Ale or ſtrained, given warm to a Cow that has newly Calved, and being poor wants Milk, is very good for the increaſe of it. Colewort-Leaves boiled or raw, will do the like: Alſo Barly and Fennel-ſeed ſod together is good for her. There are ſeveral others, but theſe are the principal approved Medicins to increaſe Milk in Kine.

CHAP. XIX.

For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beaſt out of Joint.

YOU may eaſily diſcern by the tripping of a Beaſt on the ſame Foot, that the Shoulder-Bone is out of Joint; for Cure whereof throw him on the ground, and bind faſt his other three Legs, then ſtretch out the other Leg and put one hand on his Shoulder, where

the

the Bone went out, and the other near his Body within side, and place the Bone right, and just even with the other Bone; when it is right and fast together, get two wooden Pricks of a length, and boaring two holes cross under the Skin in the middle of the Joint, from both sides of the Joint, they must be distant an inch and an half from each other, and there put your Pricks cross under the Skin, then wrap it round with strong Pack-thred binding of it round the ends of the Fricks, draw up the Skin in a Lump with it; so when your Thred is fastened, there let it be until it drope away of it self, and the Beast will be well, fit for work in two days time. If it be in the heat of Summer, anoint the place with Tar by reason of the Flies.

CHAP. XX.

To cure Cattel that be sick and will not feed in Pasture.

BRuise and boil of Horehound, Camomil, Betony, Cinquefoil, Penryroyal and Agrimony, of each a quantity alike in a quart of Ale, until half of it be consumed, with a Stick of bruised Licoris; afterwards strain it, and mix with it three penniworth of good Treacle; give it him fasting, when it is well mixt together, walk him for some space after, and he will certainly recover.

CHAP. XXI.

A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound.

GRipe him on the Back with your hand behind the Fore-shoulder and if he be not sound, he will shrink with his Back, and almost fall down; but on the contrary, if he be sound, he will not shrink in the least.

CHAP. XXII.

A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick or any such like thing.

IF at any time your Beast be troubled with the Colick, Belly-ake or Gnawing in the Guts, it will speedily give him ease, if you boil good store of Oyl in the Water he uses to drink. For the Bloody-Flux give the Beast some Powder of Wood, Rose-Seeds well beat and dried, and brewed with a quart of Ale, and it will cure him. CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

For weakneſs, Stiffneſs or Soreneſs in the Sinews of a Beaſt.

IF your Beaſts Sinews be at any time tender or do ſhrink, you may perceive it by the ſlow pace he goes. Bind to the place out of order Mallows and Chickweed; but they muſt be boiled in the Dregs of Ale or Vineger, and being very warm when you lay them on, they will very much ſtrengthen the Sinews.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Cure for the Palat of a Beaſts Mouth that is down.

THe Palat of a Beaſts Mouth by hard working will be apt to come down, which you may diſcern by two things, they will often ſigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. To cure him, throw him down, putting it up again with your hand, then bleed him in the Palat, and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and turn him to Graſs, for you muſt not let him eat any Hay or dry Meat.

CHAP. XXV.

For any inward Diſeaſes in Cattel.

TAke a handful of Wormwood and as much Rue, and boil them in a quart of Ale; then let it be ſtrained, and put into it two ſpoonfuls of the Juice of Garlick, as much of houſe-Leek and as much of *London*-Treacle; make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and then make the Beaſt drink of it, and you will in a ſhort time ſee the virtue of it againſt any inward Diſeaſe or drooping in Cattel.

CHAP. XXVI.

For all ſorts of Bruiſes in general.

FRy the leaſt ſort of Brook-lime with Tallow, and apply it hot to the place that is hurt, and if it does not expel it, yet it will ripen it, and break it, and heal it, as many by Experience have found to be very true.

CHAP. XXVII.

A Remedy to kill any sorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves.

CHop the Herb Savin very small, beat it with fresh Butter, then roll it up in Balls; give it the Beast, and it will destroy the Worms in their Bodies sooner than any other thing. Likewise a little Black Sope mixt with sweet Wort, and given the Beasts to drink, will make them void their Worms better and quicker than other things.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Against the Gout in Cattel.

YOU may discern by the often rising and swelling of your Beasts Joints, whether they have the Gout or not: For Cure whereof, boil Galingal in the Dregs of Ale and sweet Butter, and being made like a Pultice, clap to the place that is disordered.

CHAP. XXIX.

For Purging of Cattel as some do.

GReen weedy Grass growing under Trees in Orchards is the best thing to purge Beasts naturally, and the best Purging Medicine for them is Sugar-candy, Butter and Tar, well mingled together, then rolled up in Balls as big as Hen-Eggs, and so given them.

CHAP. XXX.

Things good to breed Milk in Kine.

IF your Cows Milk after she hath Calved, come not down as it was wont to do: Beat to Powder Coriander and Aniseeds, and put them into a quart of strong Posset-Ale, and make her drink every Morning; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increase in her Milk; besides it will assuredly cause it spring, and to come down in abundance.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

For the Rot in Beaſts.

IF your Beaſts wax lean, ſlight their Meat or ſcour much behind, you may aſſure your ſelf they are ſubject to rottenneſs; you muſt beat to Powder Bay-Berries, and mix with it Myrrhe, Ivy-Leaves, Elder-Leaves and Feverfew, a good lump of Clay and Bay-Salt altogether in ſtrong Urin, and when it is warm, give the Beaſt half a pint thereof to drink, and it will firmly knit and preſerve them.

CHAP. XXXII.

Againſt Vomiting of Blood.

I Muſt give you to underſtand, that this Sickneſs happens to your Beaſts by being hard kept, and then put into good Paſture where they feed over-much, and ſo get ſuch rank Blood, that you may diſcern it flow from their Mouths. The Remedying of this muſt be to bleed the Beaſt, and afterwards to drink give him ſome Bole-Armoniack and Ale mixt together.

CHAP. *XXXIII.*

For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beaſts.

IF the Skin and the Eyes of your Beaſt look yellow, it is a true ſign of the over-flowing of the Gall: For a Remedy, firſt let him blood afterwards for three mournings one after another make him a Drink of two pints of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick; mix it all together; then give it him, and it will help him.

CHAP. *XXXIV.*

To Draw out Thorns.

IF at any time your Beaſts accidentally get Thorns or Stubs in their Feet, get but ſome black Sope and black Snails, and let them be well beat to a Salve; then lay them to the ſore place, and it will by degrees draw them out, and your Beaſt (whether Ox, Cow or Calf) will in a ſhort time be perfectly well again.

CHAP. XXXV.

A cure for Feaveriſh Cattel.

IF a Beaſt many times ſurfeit by their Meat being raw and muſty, whereby the Fever cometh upon them, or if they are kept in the Cold (through a Flux of cold Humors ingendred by it) they will have a Fever. IF they tremble, groan or ſome at mouth, it is a true ſign they have it: To cure him, let him blood, ſprinkle his Hay with Water, and boil three or four Plantan Roots, and two ſpoonfuls of *London*-Treacle in a quart of Ale, and then give it him to drink.

Theſe Remedies afore-mentioned are the beſt (as by experience ſeveral have found) for Oxen, Cows, and Calves, ſome I know by my own Experience; others are collected out of ſuch able skilful Authors that would never have preſcribed ſuch Medicines, if they would not certainly have cured the Beaſts.

THE

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

II Of SHEEP.

CHAP. I.

Some ſhort but ſure Rules for a certain Cure of Diſeaſes in Sheep.

IF the greateſt quantity of your Sheep happen to fall ſick, change of Paſture will conduce much towards their Recovery, and place them a good diſtance from the Ground they went in before: If the Murrain come by Cold, put them in the Sun; if by Heat, in the Shade: Alſo over-driving them, and ſo will lying ſtill be the worſe for their Diſtemper; you muſt keep them going on a moderate Pace. Likewiſe it will be much better to part them at their new Paſtures, for in a ſmall parcel the Infection will not prevail ſo much as in a great quantity, and a few will be ſooner cured than a great many.

CHAP. II.

For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep.

BRimſtone and Tar well ſtirred together over a ſmall Fire is an excellent Remedy; when the Wool is ſheared off anoint the ſore place with that above mentioned. Likewiſe Powder of Brimſtone mixt with Wax is good for the Scab.

CHAP. III.

For Sheeps Feet.

A Certain Cure for Sheeps Feet that are Galled, is, if you beat a Pomgranat not ripe with Allum, and adding to it a little Vineger, apply it to the place. Or the Powder of Galls burnt, mixed with red Wine, and ſo laid unto it, is very good.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

For broken Bones in Sheep.

IF accidentally any one happen to break his Leg, the Bones will be knit again, if you bruise young Ashen Leaves, and lay to it, or apply to it the Herbs of Comfrey, Betony, or Cuckow-spit well stampt, and the Bones will knit.

CHAP. V.

For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep.

GIve them to drink honied Water, well mingled with the Juice of Betony, and it will help them. Some for their Cure, take a Stick, and (at what time they think fit) cleanse their Noses of all the Matter and Snivel they can get out. Others stamp the Herb called Bucks-Beard with Wine, which they say is an excellent Remedy for to drive Cold or Flegm out of their Bodies.

CHAP. VI.

For Sickness in Lambs.

IF your Lambs have a Fever or are grieved otherwise, the distemper will be catching; therefore take them from their Dams and if you would have them well again in a short time, force them to drink Rain water mingled with some of the Ews Milk. Also some pour down their Throats, Goats Milk with a Horn, and for some time after keep them warm; which is prescribed for an excellent Medicine.

Sometimes your Lambs will have Scabs on their Chins, sometimes on other places; if on their Chins, wash the Palat of the Mouth and Sores with Cypress-Leaves stamped in Water; or Tar and Hogs-Grease mixt and made into an Ointment, is very good, but you must wash the Scab with Vinegar, before you anoint it. IF they happen to be scabby on the Brisket or elsewhere, I might set down several Remedies, but I shall instance but one, which I do imagine to be the best, because most Shepherds do generally use it, which is only some fine Grease mingled with Tar, and so to lay it upon the place infected.

CHAP. VII.

Some ſhort but neceſſary things to be obſerved concerning Sheep.

FIrſt, if the Wool come off when they have been ſcabby, greaſe them with Tar and Gooſe-greaſe, and it will grow again.

Secondly, for the Cough, ſtamp the great Nettle, then let it be ſtrained with Wine, and give him of the Juyce thereof to drink, but it muſt be warm; and ſo he will be well. You muſt be ſure to take it in time, for until it be gone he will not be fat, but abate in his Fleſh daily.

Thirdly, If a Sheep be blind, which they will be for a ſpace at one time or other, ſome ſay he will be well again of himſelf, but if you bleed him under the Eye, or drop Tar in his Eye, he ſhall recover his ſight the ſooner.

Fourthly, Scabs often come on the Muzzels of Sheep by pricking their Lips and Muzzels with eating the Tops of Furz, which you muſt anoint with Plantan and freſh Greaſe boiled both together and it will perfect their Cure.

Fifthly, they are troubled with the Haw in the Eye, for which the Juyce of Pimpernel dropt into the Eye and ſhut it cloſe, is very good.

Sixthly, A Shepherd muſt always carry with him his Knife, Sheep-hook, Sheers and Tar-Box, and a Dog muſt not be wanting, which muſt be ſuch a one as he has brought up to his own command, to go or ſtand ſtill as he pleaſes.

Seventhly, Sheep ſometimes have the Pox, which you may diſcern by things like red Pimples on their Skin, and Locks of Wool will hang looſe on their Backs; the Pimples will be as broad as a Groat and many Sheep for want of early looking after, die by it.

Eighthly, Sheep by feeding on Hills or places full of Fern are in the Spring-time commonly troubled with the Cramp, or as ſome call it the Wood-Evil; which Diſeaſes (without ſpeedy Remedy) will endanger their Lives in two days time. For Cure cauſe them to be anointed with Neats-Foot Oyl and Houſleek, ſtamped together, or Scallions of Bugloſs ſtamped and bound to their Legs is good. Likewiſe it will help towards their Cure to remove them into ſome other lower Medows to feed in.

Ninthly, Sheep in the hot ſeaſon will be troubled with Fly-Blows

and Maggots, which you may be certain of, if they bite, ſtamp or ſhake their Tails, and many times they are wet; to dry it up, throw Powder that is very dry upon it, ſome time after ſtrike it off again, and anoint it well with Tar, and they will be perfectly well.

Tenthly, by cropping ſome noxious Herb your Sheep may be poiſoned, which you may eaſily know by their Heads hanging down, and they will ſwell, and ſtagger, and foam at Mouth, and in a ſhort time (without ſpeedy Remedy) fall down dead, which to prevent, cut the bladders which you will ſee under his tongue, then chaſe it with Lome beat ſmall, or the crums of Bread, afterwards waſh it down. If his water be ſtopped, pour ſome Drink down his throat, and give him Juice of Wormwood in Vinegar, and it will cure him.

Eleventhly, Sheep may have Worms in their Guts, which come by reaſon of ſome cold Humor: you may know it by ſeveral things, he will not feed as formerly, he groans, hangs down his head, and many times ſwells, which without help will ſpeedily kill him: Now for his Cure give him Powder of Worm ſeed in a little Malmſy or Powder of Savin in Ale or Wine finely beat, and it will throughly heal them.

Twelfthly, if you imagin your Sheep have the Rot, honied Water warm mixt with Elder-Berries will clear their Bodies of Water; or ſeeth a little Water, put ſome Milk to it, then give it to them; for it will purge them betwixt their Fleſh and Skin. If they will drink ſalt Water after they have been a great Journey, you may aſſure your ſelf of their health, and they will do well.

CHAP. VIII.

For the red Water in Sheep.

SHeep are oftentimes troubled with the red-water, which is a poiſonous Diſeaſe, very noxious to the Heart; for this Water will ſo ſcald and conſume it that at length he will periſh by it, without ſome ſpeedy help, which muſt be done thus: Firſt, Bleed him in the Foot between the Claws, and under the Tail; then ſtamp Wormwood and Rue with Bay-Salt, and it will cure them, being applied to the ſore places.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

For the Itch or Scab in Sheep.

WAſh the ſcabby places of your Sheep with the Root of Camelion noir and the Herb Bears-Foot boil'd both together in Water; it muſt be warm; and without any other thing they will be cured.

CHAP. X.

Herbs hurtful for Sheep.

SEveral Herbs are very noxious to Sheep; I ſhall inſtance the principal; Firſt, Spear-wort, which uſually grows in moiſt places, is thick and hard of digeſtion. Knot-Graſs and mill-dew'd Graſs are not good, Black Ellebor is very hurtful for Sheep or other Cattel, if they eat any ſtore of it. Two-penny Graſs, and dead Graſs or rotten Fog which is in low Commons and Meadows is very deſtructive to them, and will breed the Rot in them. Hemlock and Muſhroms are naught for Sheep. Laſtly, if Sheep eat Oak-Leaves when they are green, it is bad for them; eſpecially for young Lambs, for it will certainly kill them.

CHAP. XI.

Againſt the Gall in Sheep.

SHeep will ſtand ſhrinking their four Feet together, if they are troubled with the Flowing of the Gall; you muſt let him blood under the Tail, then give him to drink half a ſpoonful of good Vinegar and as much *Aqua Vitæ* mixed together, and he will be better.

CHAP. XII.

The Turning Diſeaſe in Sheep.

SHeep oftentimes hold their Heads on one ſide, by reaſon of this Turning Sickneſs. Some Shepherds give advice, that if the Sheep hold their Heads on the right ſide, ye muſt cut off the Horn on the left ſide, for under the Horn there lies a Worm which will

be killed if you anoint it with Tar, and they will be well again.

CHAP. XIII.

Some Directions to increase Milk in Ews.

THere is nothing better than altering of Pasture for the increasing of Milk in Ews; put them to graze sometimes in Valleys, sometiues in Hills, let them feed longest upon short Grass, if it be sweet, for there they eat most heartily; for touching giving them Fitches, Dill and Aniseeds, and such like, Milk will spring much better by Change of Pasture.

CHAP. XIV.

For loose Teeth.

IF your Sheeps Teeth be loose, let him blood in his Gums, and under the Tail, and afterwards rub his Teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage, and they will fasten.

CHAP. XV.

For the Wild-Fire in Sheep.

THere is a dangerous Sickness, which is called the Wild-Fire, that will infect the whole Flock, if not lookt after, Some bury the first infected Sheep alive, with his heels upwards before the Sheep-Coat door; but it is very certain you may save your Sheep alive, if you take but Chervil, stamp it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, and your Sheep will be sure to recover again.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

III. Of Hogs.

THere are ſeveral Diſeaſes which Hogs (as well as other Creatures) are incident unto, which you may find diſcourſed of in the Pages following, with Directions for the Cure of them.

CHAP. I.

For Impoſthumes under the Throats of Hogs.

IF your Hogs have Kernels or Impoſtumes underneath their Throats, they muſt be let blood under the Tongue; and when they have bled ſufficiently, beat ſome fine white Meal and Salt together and rub and chafe his Throat and Groin with it, and he will do well. Others preſcribe as followeth; you muſt give them ſix ounces of *Garum*, which you may buy at the Apothecaries, then with a flaxen Cord bind it thereunto with Ferules of Wood. and hang them about his neck, ſo that they may touch the Impoſtumes and Kernels, and it will certainly cure them.

CHAP. II.

Directions to preſerve your Hogs from the Meaſels.

IN the heat of Summer, as from the middle of *July* to the middle of *Auguſt*, in which time are the hotteſt and Dog-days, you, muſt give your Hogs ſome cooling Herbs chopt ſmall, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Violet-Leaves, Fumitory, Dandelion, Sowthiſtle and ſuch like, or the Leaves of Dwale, they muſt be mingled with their Waſh or other Meat: Theſe Herbs aforeſaid are very good to keep them in a cool temper; you muſt uſe but a few of the Leaves of Dwale, for they are exceeding cold in Operation. For I muſt acquaint you, that it is the great and vehement heat of Blood in

Hogs which doth bread the Meaſels. There will be Kirnels in the outward part of the Body, which will appear in his Throat, and at the roots of his Tongue, and you may firſt know his Infection, if he be hoarſe, or rattle in his voice when he cries, it is a certain ſign; then if you look into his mouth, you may ſee the Kernels under his Tongue; thus you may know Meally Hogs, Likewiſe to preſerve them from the Meaſles, put mens Urin amongſt their Waſh, and it will keep them from it. Sope-water and Fiſh-water is naught for them, it will breed the Meaſles: Some ſay if you often uſe to put Muſtard amongſt the Waſh they eat, it will in a ſhort time make them Meaſly.

Now it would be neceſſary to give you ſome Directions to cure your Meaſled Hogs, for take all the Care you can to prevent it, ſome may happen to be ſo. An approved Remedy to help them, is to ſhut them up in a Sty without any thing whatſoever, either Meat or Water for the ſpace of three days and three nights. Then make a hole in the tops of half a dozen Apples and take out the Cores; afterwards fill it up with Brimſtone beat to powder, and cover the Brimſtone with Pieces of Apples, and ſo throw them to your Meaſly Hogs; firſt give him one or two and ſo the reſt, for being hungry he will eat them all; then after two or three hours give him a little Meat, and no more until the next Morning, then the next Morning ſerve him as aforeſaid with five or ſix Apples, as before is directed. Thus ſerve him five or ſix days, and he will be well again. Alſo ſome mix the Lees of Sope with ſome ſtrong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and uſe them as the other aforeſaid and give him no Meat for an hour or two after; and they ſay this is a very good Remedy againſt the aforeſaid Sickneſs.

CHAP. III.

What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat

THe Roots of Daffadils are very good for to cleanſe the Lights of Hogs. Knot-graſs is good for Hogs, and they love it marvellous well; it binds the Belly, and cauſes Urin; the Juice of it put into the ears, helps the pains in the Head; theſe are the Herbs that are wholſome.

Likewiſe many there be which are not wholſome: The Herb called Gooſe-Foot, or the Camelion Thiſtle will kill Hogs, if they

eat

eat of them. If they eat of Hen-bane or Hemlock, which is ſo cold in operation, that they are very nigh unto a cold Venom, and will make Hogs lie as if they were dead for ſome time; to cure them, warm the Juice of Cucumbers, give it them to drink, for it will make them vomit, whereby they will ſo throughly cleanſe their Bodies. that in a ſhort time they will recover their Health again.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Garget, Catarrh and Staggers in a Hog.

FIrſt, for the Garget, it is very noxious to them and many are killed by it, you may know by a Swelling and Inflammation in the Throat behind a Hogs Jaws. For to give him eaſe they do uſe to ſlit the Sore in the middle, and then flay up the Skin on both ſides of it; afterwards they rub it with Salt within, and lay Tar without, and he does well. Some rub it with Nettles and Salt. Some mix burnt Allum with Plantan.

Hogs have ſometimes the Catarrh or Rheum, which makes their Eyes water; it happens to them by eating a great deal of rotten Fruit which breeds a corrupt matter almoſt as bad as the Plague. For help, old Capers mixt with their Meat or Waſh is good; or Coleworts both red and white put amongſt their Meat is alſo good. Some mingle Marſh-Mallows with the Meat. Others boil Liverwort in honied Water, and give it them. All theſe aforeſaid are excellent things to ſtay the Rheum or Catarrh.

For the Staggers in a Hog, give him of the Herb called Starewort or Gall-wort in Milk, and he will amend.

CHAP. V.

How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hoggs.

AS long as your Hogs are louſie they will not thrive; be ſure you keep them well in cold Weather, for it is through Poverty and want of good feeding in the Winter, they are ſo full of this Vermin. To rid them, take Quick-Silver, firſt kill it with faſting Spittle and Sallet-Oyl; then mix therewith freſh Greaſe or Neats foot Oyl, and ſo anoint them all over. Some melt Sope and Tar together, with the powder of Staves-acre, and ſo anoint

them

them with it. If Maggots breed in your Hogs Ears, or any other hollow place under the Skin, drop the Juice of Hemlock into the Hole, and they will die or avoid; alſo take but Oyl and put in that place and all the Maggots will die or avoid the place incontinent, if they live; this has been well experienced by ſeveral perſons.

CHAP. VI.

How to ſpay a Sow.

YOu muſt firſt lay her upon ſome Form or Board, then with a Cord bind her mouth faſt, lay her ſo that her left ſide be upward; then take your Launcet and ſtrip away the Hair two inches long, three fingers from the hinder Leg, and likewiſe from the edge of her Flank: Then with the point of your Launcet cut aſlope her Belly through the skin two inches and a half long, ſo that you may put in your Fore-finger towards her Back, and there you ſhall feel two Kernels as big as Acorns on both ſides the Birth, and with the top of your finger draw on to the ſlit, then cut the ſtring with your Knife; ſo take out the other alſo, and cut them off, then ſtrike away the Blood and ſtitch up the ſlit again with a ſtrong Thread. Be ſure you have a ſpecial Care of her Guts, then afterwards anoint her with Tar, and ſo you may let her go.

THE

THE TABLE OF THE APPENDIX

I. Of OXEN.

Chapter | | Page.

1 For the Cough in Oxen 1
2 For a Beasts Hoof hurt 2
3 For a Bruise on a Beasts Shoulder 2
4 For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body 2
5 To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel 3
6 Against the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn 3
7 For an Ox or other Beast that have lost their Quide 3
8 For Worms in Cattel 4
9 To help a Beast that pisseth Blood 4
10 To help Cattle that cannot piss 4
11 For Beasts that are gored or hurt by anothers Horns 5
12 To breed Calves and cut them 5
13 The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves 6
14 For Purging of Cattel 7
15 For Fatting of Oxen 7
16 A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel 8
17 To rear Calves that they may increase 8
18 For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk 9
19 For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beast out of Joint 9
20 To cure Cattel that be sick and will not feed in Pasture 10
21 A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound 10
22 A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick or any such like thing 10
23 For Weakness, Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast. 11
24 A Cure for the Pallate of a Beast's Mouth that is down 11
25 For inward Diseases in Cattle 11

Chapter. Page.

26 *For all sorts of Bruises in general* 11
27 *A Remedy to kill any sort of Worms either in Oxen Cows or Calves.* 12
28 *Against the Gout in Cattel* 12
29 *For Purging of Cattel as some do* 12
30 *Things good to breed Milk in Kine* 12
31 *For the Rot in Beasts* 13
32 *Against Vomiting of Blood* 13
33 *For the overflowing of the Gall in Beasts* 13
34 *To draw out Thorns* 13
35 *A Cure for Feverish Cattle* 14

II. Of SHEEP.

Chapter. Page.

1 *Some short but sure Rules for a certain Cure in Diseases of Sheep* 15
2 *For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep* 15
3 *For Sheeps Feet* 15
4 *For broken bones in Sheep* 16
5 *For the Glaunders or Snivel in Sheep* 16
6 *For Sickness in Lambs* 16
7 *Some short but necessary things to be observed concerning Sheep* 17
8 *For the Red Water in Sheep* 18
9 *For the Itch or Scab in Sheep* 19
10 *Herbs hurtful for* Sheep 19
11 *Against the Gall in Sheep* 19
12 *The Turning Disease in Sheep* 19
13 *Some Directions to increase Milk in Ews* 20
14 *For loose Teeth* 20
15 *For the Wild-Fire in Sheep* 20

III. Of HOGS.

Chapter. Page.

1 *For Impostumes under the Throats of Hogs* 21
2 *Directions to preserve your Hogs from the Measles* 21
3 *What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat* 22
4 *Of the Garget, Catarrh, or Staggers in a Hog* 23
5 *How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs* 23
6 *How to spay a Sow* 24

FINIS

THE

Complete Jockey

Or the most exact

RULES and METHODS

To be observed for the training up of

RACE-HORSES.

SHEWING

How to prepare them for any Heats or Courses, with the manner of their Keepings, Instructions for their Dressing and Looking to, their Scourings, Diets, Matches, and Racings; with every particular to be observed therein; the like not published to the World before.

To which is added

The most Experienced way for Buying Horses; and Instructions to avoid being Cheated upon the like occasion; with a relation of the Cheats and Tricks the *Jockies* and *Horse-Coursers* put on the unexpert Buyers.

Written for the Pleasures and Profit of all Gentle-men and others, who take delight in any thing of this Nature.

LONDON, Printed in the Year, 1684.

OF
Race-Horses.

CHAP. I.

The best Method, and speediest way for Ordering of Race-Horses, to fit them for any Match in what Estate soever they be.

AT such time as a Horse is matched, (or designed to be matched) for a Race, or Course, let him to whom the Horse belongs, or whosoever shall have the ordering of that affair, be very circumspect in observing the Condition or Ability of Body in which the horse is at the time of such his being matched, which chiefly ought to be taken notice of in three several Rules or Methods, the which I here shall undertake to lay down for the better satisfaction of those whom it hereafter may concern.

1. The first of which is, If your Horse be Foggy, Gross, or over-fat when he has been lately taken from Grass, or Soil.

2. The Second likewise to be observed is, If he be more than ordinary Lean, either by reason of too hard Riding, or any Disease has pulled him down by hindring his feeding.

3. Thirdly, If he be in good plight, and has had good keeping, dealt well by, and moderately rid or exercised.

Now in the firſt of theſe you cannot take leſs than two Months or ten Weeks, to bring your horſe into a fit condition for a Match, which muſt be done by moderately Dieting him and often Exerciſing him, which waſts the ſuperfluous greaſe, and makes him long-winded, both which will make him more fit and apt to win the Wager laid upon his head.

As for the Second, If your Horſe be exceeding poor, then about ſix weeks ſpace muſt be allowed, with good feeding and moderate exerciſe.

Now for the Third and laſt of the forementioned conditions which is a *medium* betwixt both; leſſer time will ſerve to fit him for the match you do deſign to have him run. About a Month or five Weeks will be ſufficient, if you obſerve the Dyeting of him, which muſt be indifferently well.

But ſeeing I have given you an account of the particular Eſtates or Conditions of Horſes; So now I muſt give you ſome cautions therein to be obſerved: firſt then, note if your Horſe be fat and unweildy, you muſt have a regard to his Exerciſe, for if he be over-free, and is willing to put out his ſtrength and abilities to the utmoſt, ſo that his fleſh quickly fall away, you muſt reſtrain him and not put him to too hard Exerciſe, for he cannot bear it like thoſe who are hardy by nature and grow fat with any Dyet, or any reaſonable Exerciſe.

Yet farther, If your horſe be in a poor condition by any hard or ill uſage or diſorder of Body, yet notwithſtanding any thing in the like nature, grows quickly into good liking and ſo continues for a conſiderable time, you need not, neither ſhall you be ſo tender of him as in the caſe of that juſt before mentioned, nor at all reſtrain him from his Exerciſe, for if you do, he will ſoon grow unfit for your purpoſe.

Thus far have I thought fit to inſtruct ſuch as are unskilful, or have not the moſt expedient Method for preparing Horſes for Races.

And now I think it moſt convenient to give my Reader a full ſatisfaction and ample inſtruction as to the dyeting and uſing of Horſes, and lay open the ſecrets moſt neceſſary to be obſerved by all according to truth and the moſt innate Sincerity. And firſt of the fat horſe, becauſe in him are comprehended the other two, by reaſon he may be made lean, or between both, as the Maſter of him thinks moſt convenient, &c.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The way and manner of dieting or feeding a Horse to fit him for a Race, being Fat or Gross, immediately after his being taken from Pasture or Soil, as to the first two weeks.

NOw if you lay a wager, or match a fat or unweildy horse which has been made so, either by being kept at grass in long idleness, or standing at his Stall; and there over-lavishly fed; to bring him to a fit condition to perform your expectation, for the first fort-night you must be up as soon as day appears, if not before, to attend him, and having put on his Bridle which you must be sure always to let hang upon the Rack close by him, dipped either in Beer or Ale, which will not only put him in mind of his being rid, but also make him the more familiar with it, and love it the better when on. This being done, cleanse the Stable of the filth, and then fall to dressing of him, which according to the best method, is as follows.

First, Curry him well in every part, but begin with the head, then his neck, back and hinder parts, after that his shoulders and fore-legs as low as the knees, that done, use your dusting cloath or something in the like nature, and with it dust him over in every part, then rub him well with your hard brush, beginning first at the head, and omitting no place whatsoever there, as the Temples, Nose, Ears, under-Jaws, and fore-Head, then proceed to the other parts as before, not forgetting his shanks, nor setting on of his hoofs, going backwards by degrees till the whole body be well rubbed, after that take your wet hand and stroke him over gradularly, not leaving him rough nor wet in any part. Then with your wet hands or a soft cloath rub gently his Yard, Testicles, Sheath, Ears, between his Thighs, and all other private places whatsoever; after which, with a hair-cloath or any other hard cloath, if that be wanting, rub him over again, being sure to observe the rubbing of his face well, as his cheeks, between his Jaws, and on his fore-head, the rising of his neck, and fetlocks, and other places as you shall see occasion.

Which

Which being well done, take a clean woolen cloath ſomething fine, and cleanſe him with the ſame, beginning at the head and ſo proceeding as you were taught before, leaving no part unrubbed; Laſtly, with a Curry-comb well wetted, comb out the Main and Tail very decently; thus much for rubbing and cleanſing; which is as neceſſary in the ordering of Race-Horſes, as their meat. The next thing to be obſerved is, to cover his body with a large cloath for that purpoſe, either of thick Kirſy or thin Stuff according to the ſeaſon of the year, or as heat or cold ſhall beſt agree with the nature of the horſe, upon which put his Saddle, girting the foremoſt Girth very hard, but the other ſlack; then under it thruſt two wiſps of clean ſtraw which may ſtretch it to an equal ſtraightneſs with the firſt, then putting a thick breaſt-cloath on you may mount, but if you pleaſe you may firſt ſpurt ſome Beer or Ale into his mouth, which will make him champ and feel his Bitt the ſooner, and be ſure that your Stable be made clean before you bring your horſe in again, the Dung and foul Litter being laid at the door, and it well ſtored with freſh; for if the horſe ſtand not upon good ſtore of Litter, and have it likewiſe to lye dry in, he will not thrive well nor ſeem half ſo pleaſant as he will with it; for which purpoſe of all the ſtraw, Wheat-ſtraw is the beſt, and muſt be uſed on this occaſion unleſs it cannot be got, and then the next to it is Oat-ſtraw, for both Rye and Barley-ſtraws do much annoy your Horſe, by reaſon the one doth cauſe him to be much troubled with the hart-burn, and the other to looſen him and make him ſcour extremely.

Being thus upon his back you muſt ride him eaſily for the ſpace of half an hour, for if you gallop or ſtrain him preſently you do him much injury, by reaſon that it ſtretches his Sinews too much on the ſuddain, which is apt to ingender cold humors in the Joynts and Nerves, ſo that the horſe will be ſtiff after it, if not carefully; if not quickly remedied by bathing his Legs with oyl of Swallows or Earth-worms; but after by gentle riding they are made plyable you may gallop him eaſily, but let it be by any means upon plain and firm ground, or if you live near any ſteep hills whoſe aſcent is ſmooth and firm let it be up them, then walk him down in your hand a foot pace or a ſmall amble, that ſo he may cool by degrees; the beſt time to begin to exerciſe is before the Sun riſe or as ſoon as it is riſen at the fartheſt, then after his

breathing

breathing, when he begins to be cool lead him to ſome pleaſant Spring or River and there let him drink his fill.

Then gallop him again, but not too hard, when you have done ſo for about the ſpace of a quarter of an hour bring him again to the Brook or River, and let him drink if he ſo pleaſe, but if not then give him a gentle courſe or two to raiſe thirſt in him, the which no doubt will do it, for take this as a general Rule, that before and after water you be ſure to breath him gently.

After he hath drank three times and been breathed the like number, you may bring him home, and coming to the Stable-door where the dung and the foul litter is laid, let him ſtand upon it; after you are alighted from his back for ſome time, and by ſoftly tapping or hitting his hinder Legs with your ſwitch or whip, make him ſtretch them as far as he can backwards, and by pleaſant whiſtling provoke him to urine; which if he refuſe to do once or twice yet at laſt he will do it freely, and thereby you will preſerve your Stable from filth and noiſomneſs, which otherwayes would much offend the horſe.

He being come into the Stable rub his fore-Legs with wiſps of clean Straw, putting all your ſtrength thereto, but firſt, be ſure to tye his head up cloſe to the Rack in his Bridle, then his breaſt or fore-cloath being taken off, rub his head, breaſt, and neck. After that unlooſe his body-cloath and rub him well in every part, but eſpecially in the Saddle-place, his Saddle being hung up in his ſight; and after he hath been well rubbed with dry cloaths, cover him up again with a linnen coverer, and upon that put his woollen cloath, or more if the weather be cold, if warm, they will be ſufficient, but be ſure to obſerve they are dry when you put them on.

After you have girted them cloſe upon him, ſtop in little wiſps of light ſtraw quite round him between the Cloaths and the Girts, let them by no means be knotty or hard leſt they hinder him of his ſleep, and make him lye uneaſie by hurting his ſides; when he is thus cloathed cleanſe his feet by pulling out the gravel or earth that may have got into them, and with warm Cow-dung ſtop the ſame up cloſe; after that is done, put about half a ſmall armful of Hay that is very ſweet and good into his rack, bound up as hard as poſſible you can bind it, but firſt let it be cleared from duſt or Seeds as well as may be, and take not off his Bridle till he

has

has eat it or moſt of it, for it being bound up hard will make him pull it with more than ordinary eagerneſs, and then conſequently he muſt eat it with a good ſtomach, but let him not ſtand above one hour and a half in his Bridle, but having taken it off rub well his face, the ridge of his neck, and each Part of his head with a rough cloath made of Flax or Hemp, but the latter is the beſt, becauſe if it be new the ſmell of it is very wholeſome, and being apt to make him ſneeze will thereby cleanſe his head of groſs and crudy humours lodged therein.

This being done, cleanſe the Manger of all the ſcattered Hay or other thing offenſive that may be in it, then take about two double handfuls of the beſt old Oats that are free from chaff or ſeeds, be ſure they be the largeſt and fulleſt you can get, for the goodneſs of Oats is known by their weight, ſuch as many do call *Polonian* Oats or ſome more vulgarly cut oats, for theſe of neceſſity are wholeſomeſt and beſt; for if you give your horſe thoſe that are muſty or wet they will cauſe ſeveral little riſings in the Horſes Body, or more properly termed ſwellings, and ſuch as be not old breed little worms in the Belly and cauſe pain; it is very hurtful for to give your horſe any Oats that are not throughly dreſſed, for they will not only cheat him in his feeding, but make him ſlight them; nor are black ones to be allowed of unleſs in time of neceſſity, and then they are not wholſome.

Therefore be ſure when you give him his portion of Oats, which muſt not exceed a quart at a time, you muſt ſift them ſo that all the light Oats and Husks may fall away, and whatſoever elſe you imagine offenſive, as Duſt or Seeds, Straw or other grain, after which put them into the Manger; and obſerve whether he eat them heartily or not, if he do, you may ſupply him with the like quantity again, ordering them as the former, ſo depart and leave him to himſelf till about ten or eleven of the clock, at which time you coming again to him rub his head, face, and neck with the Hempen cloath before recited, then give him another like quantity of Oats or ſomewhat more, order them alſo in the like manner before you give them to him, after which leave him for the ſpace of two hours and let him remain during that time in as much darkneſs as your Stable is capable of, and not only then, but alwayes in your abſence; for the more obſcure and dark he is kept, the better will he eat his meat and the better will he take his reſt;

for

for note, a Horſe will ſeldom lye down in a Stable that is very light, unleſs he be much wearied either with ſtanding or Travail; to cauſe the more darkneſs many are uſed to line their Stables, or at leaſt the Stall where the Horſe deſigned for Race ſtands, with Sacking or Canvas; not only to make it dark, but to keep him the warmer by ſheltring him from wind and duſt.

After the end of the ſaid two hours which is about one of the Clock; you muſt viſit him again, and give him another the like quantity of Oats ordered as the former, and rub his head, neck, and face, as before; which done, give him a ſmall bundle of Hay hard twiſted together, and let him alone to eat that by himſelf, and ſo let him continue till four of the Clock if the dayes be long, but if ſhort, not paſt three.

Then according to the time come to him again, and the Stable being well cleanſed wet the Bitt of his Bridle in Beer, and ſo faſten the Rains of it to the Rack as ſoon as you have put it on, which being done, take off his cloaths and dreſs him according to what you were taught in the Morning; he being well Dreſſed bring him forth and put his Saddle upon his Cloaths as formerly, and endeavour to make him piſs upon his Dung and old Litter caſt without the Stable, then as ſoon as you pleaſe you may mount him, and ride him as in the Morning, only let this difference be generally obſerved, that you ride him not up any hills that are ſteep in the Evening, but upon the plaineſt and firmeſt ground you can find; or if you will for change, ſometimes in ſmooth green Meadows that are dry, or by running waters if they lye convenient, or that there be any near you; and let him take all the Air he can, and often ſuffer him to gaze upon the Stream, but ſuffer him not to ſtand ſtill, but keep him in a continual motion either Galloping or ſhort Pacing which many give the term of racking; if he at any time as you lead him in or out of his Stable, offer to ſmell to any horſe dung though not his own, hinder him not, for that will cauſe him to evacuate and fit him the better for his meat.

When he is well watred and well aired at the cool of the day (or if it be within night it matters not) bring him home (for note, there is nothing better to rid him of groſs and foul humours than to be abroad with him early and late) and when he is come to the Stable, obſerve that nothing, according to former ordering of

him be omitted, but all done with care and diligence, the which I hope by this time you have ſo well taken notice of that I need not to repeat it over again; let his diet be likewiſe the ſame, and let him ſtand at it by himſelf two hours or more, according to the Seaſon of the year in his cloaths; in Winter you may let him ſtand till nine before he has his Bait for all night, in Summer later if you pleaſe; then coming to viſit him you muſt give him near three pints of Oats ſifted; dreſs him in every part, give him a ſmall bundle of Hay in his Rack, and after having raiſed his Litter leave him till the enſuing Morning.

When betimes you muſt abroad with him again and uſe him as you have been taught, ſo that in the ſpace of two weeks you may bring him to ſuch a paſs, as he will be fit to ride or take any moderate heat, but beware how you ſtrain him too much, for it will do him a great Injury; thus having after the exacteſt manner inſtructed you as to the firſt fortnights keeping, I ſhall next proceed to give you Rules and Methods for giving him Courſes, or as ſome term them, Heats, &c.

CHAP. III.

Orders moſt carefully to be obſerved in the Courſing or Heating your Horſe.

TO begin with which, I muſt inform you that you muſt not give above two Courſes in a Week, for if you do you will ſpend him too much, although he be never ſo luſty, and thereby weaken him and make him unfit for your Race.

The next thing to be obſerved is, that one of the times muſt be upon the day you deſign he ſhall run the Match; the two dayes muſt be as equally diſtant from each other as you can divide the Week, therefore you ought to make your Match accordingly; Mundays and Fridays, or Tueſdays and Saturdays are the fitteſt if you can ſo Model the affair, for thoſe days have the moſt diſtance between them; if your Match be deſigned on the Monday let that and Friday be his heating days.

But if on Tuesday or Wednesday then Saturday must be the other that must serve to both, because it is unseemly to do it on the Sunday, and so you may observe of whatsoever day it shall fall out to be, that you keep as near as you can an equal distance of time between his Courses or Heats.

But again, you must be sure to observe in what weather you ride him at such times, for if it be wet, that is, if it either Rain, Snow, or Hail, you must not give him any heat till such time it be fair, unless necessity urge it, as when it rains most part of the Week or so; and then you must chuse the time when it holds up best, and let him be covered very warm, not only his Body, but his Head, Neck, Ears, Breast and Shoulders; for his Head you must provide a covering made with little bags to put his ears in, and be sure you keep him abroad as little time as possible, for the damp raw Air will at such times indanger much his health.

But to the last particular that is to be taken notice of in this Chapter; be sure if the weather be fair and serene, get him dressed and abroad with him as soon as day light appears, but not before, by reason it is very incommodious in this case both to the Horse and Man, and thus much concerning his Courses or Heats, which is the most necessary thing to be observed in preparing him for your Match; now to the second order of his Keeping and Feeding.

CHAP. IV.

The manner of his Second Fortnights Feeding, and the care to be observed therein.

IN this as in the former, you must be circumspect to observe the cleaning of his Stall, giving fresh Litter, and keep it lighted up that his Bed may be alwayes soft, and the old with his Dung and Stale cast out at the Stable door, then when you come to him in the Morning give him a quart or somewhat more of well dressed Oats, dressed as you were taught before, ere you put on his Bridle, which being eaten, dress him in every part with such

cloaths, bruſhes, and combs as you formerly have done, which being perfected according to the beſt of your skill, ſurſingle on his cloaths and then ſet his Saddle upon his back and ride him abroad; Galloping and racking him moderately, and between each time of ſo doing water him and let his bringing home and Stabling be in each particular obſerved as in the fore-going ſort-night, the which you have been ſo amply taught that I think there is no need of repeating it over again, only this take notice of, which is not yet laid down; when you have brought him into his Stall before you pull off his Bridle take a wiſp of the beſt hay you can get, and holding it hard in your hand after it is well duſted, let him eat it thence, and give him all the occaſion you can to pull hard at it, and if he devour it with a good Appetite ſupply him with more, and do ſo three times at leaſt if he will eat it, for by ſo doing you will bring him to be familiar with you and win much upon his good nature; when he refuſes to eat or that you think he has eaten enough, take off his Bridle after he has ſtood in it about an hour, then rub him all over and dreſs him as formerly, which ended, give his Bait of Oats in quantity and manner as has been often declared, but by no means forget to ſift them. Then having his dyet-bread by you pretty ſtale, which muſt be about three days old at leaſt, it being then the wholeſomeſt and moſt commodious for him to eat, and after having eaten it to digeſt; the manner of making it according to the moſt skilful preſcribers is as you ſhall be ſhewed in the following Chapter.

CHAP. V.

The firſt Diet to be given in the ordering your Race-Horſe, and the way to make it.

FIrſt, to make this Diet-bread you muſt take half a buſhel of the beſt horſe-beans, well ſifted from any Seeds or husks, or three pecks, if your horſe be a great feeder; to the latter you muſt put one peck of the beſt Wheat you can get, to the former quantity proportionably you may grind them, divided if you pleaſe;

and

and ſo mingle them afterwards, but in my opinion they will be beſt ground together, after which dreſs the meal as fine as you can, ſo that there be few or no husks or bran left in it; then take the beſt Ale-yeſt you can get, by no means let it be ſour or dirty, about three quarts will do, and put to that as much water as will juſt make the Meal up into Dough, which muſt be kneaded with all your ſtrength in a Trow, or ſome ſuch like thing for that purpoſe. If you are not ſtrong enough to knead it with your hands you may tread it with your feet, being ſure to leave no knobs in it, when it is throughly kneaded, cover it from the duſt and let it remain the ſpace of an hour, then knead it again, and after you have ſo done make your Loaves up about the bigneſs of ſix-penny-loaves or bigger if you pleaſe, and after you have backed them exceeding well in an Oven, take them out, ſet them trans-verſe to cool, that is, with their bottoms upwards.

When you have kept them three dayes, which you muſt do ere you give any of them to your horſe for fear of making of him ſick, which if they do, he will refuſe to eat it for the future.

The next thing to be obſerved is, that if the bread be moiſt or clammy, ſo that it ſtick to his mouth and he cannot freely ſwallow it or do ſeem not to like it, you muſt cut it into thin ſlices and dry it in the Sun, or if the Sun ſhine not, in ſome Stove or by the Fire, but not too hard, then take it and mix it with his portion of Oats by ſmalling it amongſt them, ſo that then he will eat it freely and it will do him no harm, but be ſure to pare away the cruſt, but note that you muſt never give it him alone but always being crumbled and mixed with his Oats, the quantity of Bread you ſo mix muſt not exceed three or four ſlices at a time.

You having given him one bait, in the morning, about eleven or twelve a clock viſit him again, and after well dreſſing him give him his bait or portion of dyet, as before, both of Bread and Oats.

About two of the Clock or ſomewhat later if you deſign not to courſe him the following day, and ſo take the diſtance of time as has been formerly obſerved in all his diets, only let his motions be curiouſly obſerved and each action taken notice of, for by that you may know in what liking or eſtate of body he is, and how he thrives upon his dyet.

Again obſerve, that if you deſign to heat him the day following you muſt not from the time juſt before-mentioned give him any

any bread with his Oats, but let him eat them by themſelves, and when he has eat them put him on his Bridle and dreſs him well in each part, the manner of which I hope we need not now declare; then his cloath being put on in decent manner clap on his Saddle and ride him abroad in the Air, gallop and rack him gently and let him take his watrings as before, then bringing him home let him ſtale and dung at the door if you can get him to do it; and being brought into the Stable, after rubbing down give him his portion of Oats, but no Hay, for that is not convenient before a heat.

Now I have given you a moſt exact account concerning the ordering and dieting your horſe, the next thing neceſſary is, to inform you what Muzzles are moſt convenient for Race-Horſes, and what is the occaſion of their being put on, and the danger that there is in ſome of them.

Firſt then, Muzzles were made to prevent horſes from biting and tearing their Racks, Mangers, and Stalls, to keep them from eating Loume or Mud-walls, their own Litter or the like, which is very dangerous and hurtful to them, for it is not requiſite they ſhould eat any thing without your knowledge, or what you give them.

But as for theſe Muzzles there are many kinds, ſome cloſe, ſome broad, others with little round holes in them, theſe are commonly made of Leather which often proves very annoyable to your Horſe.

Firſt then, any Leather that is Allomed is very hurtful to the head by reaſon of its ſharp ſcent and Saltneſs, the next is that which is greaſed or dreſſed with courſe Oyl, the ſmell of which often makes your Horſes head ake, and cauſes him to leave his meat, be ſick and hard bound ſo that he cannot dung kindly.

Now there are another kind of Muzzles that are very requiſite which are much in uſe, which are made of pack-thred or whip-cord. Theſe are moſt convenient in the Summer time and will not offend the horſe, if you waſh them once in two or three days or have freſh ones to put on.

Another ſort there are which are commonly uſed in Winter, which are made of ſtrong Canvas fit for the head of your Horſe, ſo far as need requires and bound with ſtrong filleting, on one ſide a loop being made, and on the other a ſtring to faſten it round his Poll, and under his Chaps; ſome for warmth uſe to put

double

double Canvas, but take notice there muſt be a breathing place with net-work juſt againſt his mouth and noſtrils to let the Air in and out, or elſe if it be hard tied on it will go near to ſtifle him.

Thus much as touching Muzzles, now I will return again to the ordering your Horſe, and give you a farther account of ſeveral other particulars in the management of him, beyond what has already been diſcourſed upon.

If in the enſuing Morning, you coming to viſit your horſe find him lay'd, raiſe him not but let him reſt, but if he be upon his Legs take a quart of Oats and waſh them well in Beer or Ale, then dry them indifferently well and give them him to eat; and when he has ſo eaten them, put on his Bridle and rub him down exceeding well, after that put on all his cloaths and then for Saddling of him; after which, holding up his head as high as you can reach, and into his mouth break a new-laid Egg and oblige him to ſwallow it, after which, ſpurt ſome Beer into his mouth and carry him abroad to Air, obſerving at the door as formerly. Being mounted, ride him gently, and by degrees encreaſe his pace till it come to a gallop, and if he be ſo enclined let him ſmell to any horſes dung he meets with upon the Road.

Now I ſhall give you another inſtruction worth obſerving, that is, the day you are deſigned to run the Race when you come within a mile or leſs of the ſtarting gole or poſt for that purpoſe aſſigned; take off his cloaths, which being done clap your Saddle upon his Back ſending ſome perſon, with his cloaths to the end of the Race intended, and ride him on gently till you come to the weighing or ſtarting poſt; ſhew him the poſt, and make him as far as he is capable, ſenſible of what he is deſigned for to be done withal.

The Signal for the ſtart being given put him on at near three quarters ſpeed, or if his ſtrength will allow it more, but be ſure you put him not to more than he is able to perform, hold the Rains pretty ſtreight in your hand, but by no means check him in his Courſe, but let him run on chearfully, and give him all the encouragement you can, and ſo let him run the whole Race through.

If you, during the Courſe find his ſtrength to fail him, or that he begin to yield, give him what eaſe you can, and do not force him to too great a ſwiftneſs, but uſe him ſo that he may be at all times well

well pleaſed with his courſes and free to run, and ſo in a ſhort time you bring him to perfection, but if he be any ways diſcouraged at firſt, he will never perform according to your Expectation.

Now the next thing material to be obſerved is upon what ground you run, and then conſider which ground your horſe takes moſt delight to run upon, for this may turn to your great advantage, the which you may beſt take notice of in his Heats or in his firſt Race, whether it be ſmooth, rough, dry, wet, or a little riſing that he moſt eagerly covets, and for the future chuſe it if poſſible in all your Races.

When the Race is ended, wherein if he have been exceeding hard put to it, by no means let him ſtand ſtill but gallop him moderately about ſome green field the better to let him take breath by degrees and cool accordingly, the which when you find he has pretty well done, have him into ſome dry gravel-pit or other deep place out of the wind, or if there be none convenient then to the thickeſt Buſhes or Trees you can meet with, and there having his cloaths ready, with a large blunt knife or ſome old piece of Iron or Wood flat like a Ruler, yet having a blunt edge, ſcrape the ſweat off from his Body, laying the ſtrength of both your hands to the ſame till none appear in any part, and between whiles give your horſe a turn or two, and then ſcrape him again till he has done ſweating, at which time pull off his Saddle and ſcrape the place on which it was; likewiſe then with dry cloaths, rub him in all parts not omitting any place exceeding well, put on his cloaths and girt his Saddle on upon them, immediatly after which you muſt gallop him gently for a conſiderable ſpace, then rub him ſlightly not taking off his cloaths eſpecially from his head and neck; then yon may alight and walk him in your hand about the Heath or field, but be ſure you ſuffer him not to graze if he ſhould offer it, and when you perceive him cool and dry ride him home gently, you may gallop him ſoftly if you pleaſe; when you come home to the Stable door endeavour to make him piſs and dung, but beware that you put him not into the Stable till he be quite dry and very cool, where being entred faſten his Bridle to the Rack and have this following doſe in readineſs, which you muſt give him in a drenching horn or ſome ſuch like thing, which will cleanſe his Body and much help nature to recover ſtrength if he be any ways weakned by his running.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

The Doſe or Scouring is made thus.

First, get a Pint of the beſt Canary, and add to it one ounce three drams of clarified Roſin beat into powder, and ſtir it about in the Wine, then add more half a pint of Olive Oyl the beſt that can be got, (for if it any ways ſtink it will make your horſe ſick and cauſe him to caſt it up again) and mix it well with the former, then take an ounce and three quarters, or if you will two ounces of Sugar-Candy, beat it ſmall and put it to the reſt, all which being well mixed together place them in an earthen Veſſel upon a gentle fire till they boyl, then take it off and let it ſtand till it be blood-warm and ſo give it your Horſe; if he refuſe to take it you muſt force him to it by pouring it down his throat, and holding up his head till he have quite ſwallowed it down.

The virtue of it is to take away by ſcouring and ſometimes by gentle Sweat all foul and groſs humors, that too much heat or over-ſtreining had cauſed to gather in the Stomach and bowels, it diſſolves crewdy greaſe that having been melted is again ſetled in hard knobs, and brings it away in what part ſoever; in fine, there is not a wholeſomer drink can be given to any horſe, eſpecially after running.

CHAP. VII.

The Way and Method of looking to, and keeping your Horſe after he has taken this Portion.

When the Horſe has taken it, then immediately rub his Legs and pull off his Saddle and all other his cloaths, leaving him nothing on, then curry him well and after bruſh him, and with a duſting cloath duſt him, and again with a new hempen cloath or cloath of hair rub his body in every part, but in ſo do-

ing your greateſt pains muſt be about his head, neck, and breaſt; this being perfected put on his cloaths and keep him as warm as poſſible, and put ſeveral handfuls of ſtraw under his girts, and then let him remain without either meat or drink for the ſpace of two hours, during which time you muſt watch him, and ſeldom let him ſtand ſtill for fear of getting cold, during the time the Potion is in working; nay, ſleep or ſtanding ſtill (which he will chuſe if he be left alone to himſelf) are like dangerous, by reaſon that the blood and vital Spirits have not their operation ſo well as in times of motion, nor the heat of the body power to force up the humors that lye as it were abſconded in the ſeveral parts. When he has ſtood in his Bridle and faſted ſo long as is before-mentioned, or if you think convenient ſomewhat longer; then take ears of wheat about one hundred, and offer them to him to eat, but let them not be bearded in any wiſe, but ere you ſuffer him to take them, feel him all over in what condition or eſtate of body he is in, and if you find him ſweat on a ſudden or any cold clamm overſpread his Limbs, which many call a cold ſweat, or if you obſerve him to pant, tremble, or fetch his breath ſhort, withhold your hand and give not any thing; for if you do, it will much indanger him, theſe being the Symptoms that the Potion has not done working, but that it is ſtriving with the vicious humors and foul indigeſtures of the Body, therefore put on his ſlip and taking off his Bridle ſtop all the Lights of the Stable, the better to keep it dark, and ſecure your horſe from too much air, and let him take his eaſe in your abſence for the ſpace of two hours or more, by which time the Potion will have done working and his ſickneſs will paſs away.

Then coming to him again, if you find him well you may give him the ears of wheat by four or five at a time till the whole parcel is waſted, after that if he will eat any more you may ſuffer him to have the like quantity again, and after them a ſmall bundle of Hay bound up very hard and thrown into his Rack, but during the time of his eating it, be ſure to rub him over as you have been taught; but more eſpecially his head.

Within the hour following give him his quantity of Oats as before, mingling with them a pint of huſked Beans as clean from huſks and duſt as can be, then take three ſlices of bread and (the cruſt being cut away) crumble them among the Oats and Beans, and ſo give them to him, and after he has eaten them

them let him ſtand about two hours and a half, or three if you pleaſe.

Then coming to him give him ſome Bait again of each the ſame parcel as before, then dreſs him down well and put on his cloath, but put not on his Saddle, nor back him, neither let him have any water that night, but keep him within doors, for if you do otherwiſe you will endanger your horſe.

CHAP. VIII.

The manner of making theſe Balls and their Virtue, with an account of what Diſeaſes they are moſt powerful to cure.

TAke the powder of *Elicampane* roots, *Cummin* Seeds and *Fenugreek* Seeds, of each two ounces beaten and ſifted as fine as you can poſſible, to which put two ounces of Sugarcandy, brown if you pleaſe, beat that likewiſe; fine flower of Brimſtone the like quantity, one ounce of the juice of *Liquoriſh*, then wetting them with half a pint of White-wine, ſet them over the fire, after which take one ounce of the Chymical oyl of *Anniſeeds*, and three ounces of the Syrup of *Colts-foot*, add to theſe of *Olive* oyl, *Honey*, and Syrup or melted Sugar, all of them being the beſt you can get, one pint and a half, that is, of each half a pint, proportionable, then mingle all theſe Ingredients together, and thicken them into paſte with fine wheat-flower, and ſo make them up into Balls for your uſe; you muſt not make them above the bigneſs before-mentioned, or if you pleaſe, you may make them up as you uſe them; put them or the Paſte up into a gally-pot and ſtop it cloſe and it will keep a long time.

For the uſe of them take theſe inſtructions, for their virtues are very great.

Firſt then, if you uſe them for any Sickneſs or dulneſs in your Horſe, anoint or rub them over with ſweet Oyl or Butter, and ſo give them to him each Morning as you were taught before, and after give him a gentle breathing and let him drink, but if the weather be foul, take him not out.

But if for cold, or any infirmity in his Stomach, you may give them to him till you perceive it is waſted and gone.

The Virtues of them are for ſeveral other things, as Glanders, Heavineſs, to purge away molten greaſe, to recover a loſt Sto-

mach, Faintings, and Heart-Qualms, and to make any tolerable Horſe fat to admiration, but to your Race Horſes you muſt give for ſtrengthning and cheriſhing the Spirits. But now to the fourth and laſt fortnight for preparing your horſe, which muſt begin with his laſt diet.

CHAP. IX.

The manner of making his laſt Diet.

IN this you muſt uſe three Pecks of Wheat, and but one of Beans, and let them be ground together upon the black Stones as ſmall as poſſible they can be, then dreſs it through an exceeding fine-dreſſing cloath; for note, that every Bread muſt be finer than the former: then put it to the fore-mentioned quantity of Ale-Yeſt, but be ſure it be not ſower, nor the Grounds. Then knead it together, and make it up into loaves as formerly; but to this, above what has been ſpoken of, you muſt add the Whites of two or three and twenty Eggs, and inſtead of water put milk, ſo much as will make it up.

They being baked, let them ſtand their uſual time, and then cut the Cruſt away, or as ſome call it, chip them, after which, dry a quart of Oats well, and after that ſift them, ſo that there be no defect left in them, to which, put your Beans in like manner ordered, and at the uſual times, give them all three, mingled together to him.

As for his Heating, and Courſing dayes, the firſt week they muſt be punctually obſerved, but the ſecond you muſt abate him one, that is, heat him but once, and that muſt be Mondays heat. After he has ſtood one hour more in his Bridle, you may take three pints of Oats, and ſteep them in Beer or Ale for a ſhort time, and then give them to him, and they will much cheriſh him, and allay his thirſt.

This being done, about an hours ſpace after, you ſhall give him the former quantity of Beans, Oats, and Bread in the ſame order, and manner, or if you think it more convenient, you may give them ſeveral, and not mingle them; let him by no means want for feeding at night; for when you make him his laſt, give him not only his Bait, but leave him a bundle of Hay in his Rack bound up very hard.

Next

Next Morning, as ſoon as day appears, you muſt give him his firſt dyet, then rub him well in every part; after which, put on his cloaths and air him, that is, ride him abroad, and uſe him as formerly, permitting him to drink freely; both Gallop and Rack him, but do not ride him hard.

When you return, dreſs him, and feed him with Oats, Beans, and Bread as heretofore and ſome Hay, but not ſo much as you were uſed to give him.

As for your heating days, they muſt likewiſe be obſerved in all points as formerly, nor upon any occaſion neglected, unleſs upon ſuch as has been declared, nor muſt you encreaſe them, nor ſtrain your Horſe more than you were wont; four heats or courſes will be ſufficient for the firſt fort-night, and four purges or Scouring for the whole time of his being made fit for Racing, all which muſt be obſerved with diligence and caution, according to the forementioned Methods and Inſtructions; but now to the third, &c.

CHAP. X.

The third Fortnights Dieting and Ordering your Horſe.

NOw for the manner of Making his Bread, it muſt be as followeth, finer then formerly was wont, muſt it be made; therefore take but two pecks of Beans, and with fine Wheat make it up a Buſhel, let them be grond together as formerly, and dreſſed exceeding fine, ſo that there be hardly a Huſk or a Bran to be ſeen; then with a like quantity of yeſt as before, mingle the meal and add water to it, ſo much as is juſt ſufficient to make it ſtick cloſe together, when it is well kneaded and worked up, you muſt bake it as you have been taught.

After which, it having ſtood about three dayes or ſomewhat more, pare away the Cruſt and give it your Horſe, (that is) three ſlices crumbled amongſt a quart of fine dreſſed Oats, and a quart of ſplit Beans; your obſervance ſhall be in theſe as in the former two weeks, in his Dreſſings, Airings, times of Feeding, & likewiſe his heating dayes, muſt be particularly obſerved. And take notice of this,

That you muſt not, after he has been heated, give him any of the Scowring; but that being laid aſide, give him in the room of it Balls about the bigneſs of a Pullets Egg, which are great Cordi-

als and reſtoratives, and you muſt give him one at a time; thus ſitting in the Saddle or otherwiſe if you pleaſe, hold up his head as high as is convenient, and put one of them into his Mouth and oblige him to ſwallow it, but before you give it him, you muſt rub him down, or according to your match; for you muſt not beat him for four or five days before you intend to run your Race, but you may air him very well, and give him gentle breathings, that he may in no wiſe loſe his wind, but give him none of the forementioned ſcowring drink.

One thing more I have conſidered to quicken his Spirits and make him lively, which is to burn *Storax*, *Olibanum*, *Frankincenſe* and *Benjamin* mixed together, which drive away all ill ſents and airs, and there is nothing more wholſom for the brain.

As likewiſe, when you give your horſe his Oats, Beans and Bread, waſh the two former in neither Ale nor Beer, but take a pint of *Muſcadine*, and about the Whites of ten Eggs, and ſteep them therein, but you need not do this above four times in a Week; at other times, give them to him dry as formerly.

Beware likewiſe how you give him any Hay, unleſs immediately after his heats, and then holding a ſmall wiſp in your hand, let him pull it thence by degrees, but if his Belly be apt to ſhrink up, you may give him more to keep it ſtreight.

Again, all the laſt week, if your horſe be given to eat his Litter you muſt keep him Muzzled as you have been formerly taught, but if he be not ſubject to the ſame, nor to eat any other foul thing, three dayes before you run him will be a ſufficient ſpace to keep him muzzled.

The day morning before you intend to run him, you muſt air him gently, and when you have brought him home, dreſs him and rub him as formerly, and be ſure to diet him exceeding well, omitting no point, neither before nor after his being carried abroad, only towards night you may ſtint him of the third part of his uſual Bait, but let his laſt Diet be full Proportion, as likewiſe his dreſſing; another thing is alſo to be obſerved, which is, that you muſt not keep him out late, but let him be in his Stable at Sun-ſet or before, and likewiſe the day before the Match, you ſhall ſhoe him, poll him, and all things elſe that you ſhall think convenient for fitting him out in the beſt wiſe, but beware that it be not unskilfully performed, for then you may much injure your Horſe, or

give

give him ſome cauſe to be offended at your curioſity, or as many call it, Adornment. It is reported by ſome who have had long experience in this way and manner of ordering Horſes, that ſeveral are ſo skilful as to underſtand the meaning of ſuch ornaments, and what they are to be put to, the next day, which makes them conceive ſuch Pride that they will not eat any meat till the time they have run the Race, unleſs it be forced upon them.

It is true, all Authors that treat of Naturalities do affirm that horſes are moſt knowing and ſubtil Creatures, and that they are indued with many noble qualities and generous perfections.

Now for breading their Tails and Manes, and tying Ribbons on their fore-head, or at their ears, I hold altogether unneceſſary, for, ſo doing does not only offend him, but many times hinders him in the performance of his Race, by reaſon that they make him caſt his head often to look at them, and if he has not been uſed to them, many times make him ſtart out of his way, and ſo loſe his ground; therefore in my opinion, only to comb out his Mane (and Tayl, and if they be too cumberſome you may clip them a little) is the beſt Method in that caſe.

Be ſure there be nothing left undone that you intend to do to him, till the morning he is to run, for if there be, it may chance to vex him, and thereupon ſome horſes will grow ſullen and will not run freely.

The Morning you are to run, make him a viſit before it is well light, and after you have pulled off his Muzzle and rubbed his head in every part thereof, offer him a quart of Oats ſteeped in a pint of Muskadine or Tent, but before you put them in bruiſe them a little, if he chance to refuſe it, put him ſome Oats in the whites of Eggs only; or to be the better ſure of his eating, ſome of the beſt and fineſt Bread, and ſome whole Wheat, well ſifted and dreſſed, mingle with his Oats, in which you muſt uſe no Beans; but be ſure you give him but a little of any of theſe diets, for if you fill him he will be unfit for the Race and may fail your expectation, which otherwiſe he no doubt would have anſwered in each particular, to your great ſatisfaction.

If he empty not his Body freely, take him abroad and air him a little, and ſee if you can poſſibly get him to dung and urine, the which if he do (the which no doubt by this time you will have

taught

taught him to do) bring him into the Stable again, and put his Muzzle on; but on the contrary, if he will empty without any further trouble in the Stable, 'tis needleſs to lead him out, and far better to let him remain till the time you are deſigned to run, or about half an hour before, according as the diſtance is from the place he is kept at to the ſtarting place.

Juſt as you are going to lead him, dip the Bitt of his Bridle in Muskadine or Alicant, and then drawing off his Muzzle, draw on his bridle, but if you ſee him inclinable to empty, let him do it before, and to incite him to do it the more ſpeedily, give him about a pint of waſhed Oats, Bread and Wheat as before you did; then ſpread ſoft wax, ſuch as ſhoomakers uſe, under your Girts and Saddle, which done girt it gently on his back, ſo that he ſcarcely feel it is on; then ſpread a large white Linnen cloath over his Saddle, and over it all his other cloaths, which likewiſe being ſlightly girt, ſtick wiſps under his Girts or Surſingles, but let them be very ſoft; then cover him with ſome piece of rich Tapeſtry or Cloath of State to make him ſhew gallant, after which pour down his throat with a drenching horn, one pint of Muſcadine, Alicant, or for want of either, Canary.

Then lead him forth with courage, and ſuffer him to move gently, and if he offer to ſmell to any dung, either old or new, ſuffer him by any means to do it, or if he offer not, endeavour to make him, for it will cauſe him to evacuate, which will much lighten him and help him in the Race; nay uſe double diligence herein, by leading him to ſuch places as you think will ſooneſt provoke him to it, as heaps of ruſhes, brakes, or heath, little buſhes, high tufted graſs, or the like; but if there happen to be no ſuch in your way, then you may ſpread, and light up ſome Straw under his feet, making it ruſtle; then whiſtle, and touch him gently with your ſwitch or whip to make him ſtretch, the which no doubt will effect your deſire.

Again, If he foam at mouth by champing hard upon his Bitt or otherwiſe, you muſt take care to have a fine linnen cloath ready to wipe it off, and a veſſel of fair cool water, to cleanſe and waſh his mouth ſtill as you obſerve the froth or foam to riſe.

Then having walked him gently to the place deſigned for ſtarting, you muſt take off all to his Saddle, and having rubbed him down with care in every part (which muſt be done with hard

wiſps

wiſps) ſearch and cleanſe his feet, and ſpurt ſome water in his mouth; after which, your ſelf or whom you aſſign to ride him, may take his Back, and obſerving the fair ſtart, put him ſwiftly on, and run the Match.

——No doubt with good ſucceſs, for this manner of ordering will ſeldom fail your expectations, if your horſe in himſelf be but ſound and of good Metall'd Limbs and ſtrength to bear him out.

Now I ſhall give the curious to underſtand as neceſſary a point belonging to horſes as has ever been diſcourſed of in any Tract whatſoever, the which will be very uſeful for all thoſe whoſe employ it is to trade in Horſes, and be as the Sailers Card, to direct them in that affair, and keep them from being over-ſeen, or cheated in any Market or Fair whatſoever; with each particular obſervation, rule and method to be taken notice of in the Limbs, body, and head, as eyes, mouth, noſe, ears, and the true manner to know a good horſe from a bad.

But to begin, firſt, there are theſe things to be obſerved, if you will chooſe a horſe that ſhall be for your turn, and pleaſe you in every part, and in all his actions, travails, or other labours, as Hunting, Racing, War, drawing of Coach, Chariot, or any rural ſervice whatſoever, but take notice that no one horſe can be capable of all theſe.

Therefore you muſt chooſe your horſe according to what you deſign him for, and ſo manage him accordingly.

But to imperfection in general, the which I will undertake to demonſtrate in the ſound horſe, who is no ways defective, becauſe in him may lively appear all the malladies and miſchances that may or can befall any horſe whatſoever.

Firſt then, be adviſed, that when ever you deſign to buy a horſe, take eſpecial notice of all his parts, and the full proportion of his body according to his natural ſhape, or if you can obſerve any imperfection in his Limbs that may ariſe by accident, whereby they are leſſened or made bigger, take ſpecial care to find out the cauſe of it if poſſible, by which you may know what you buy, and whether to like or diſlike him.

In which, your obſervances in election muſt be drawn from two heads, the firſt of which is general, the latter peculiar, or proper.

For the first of which, it is to be understood upon what occasion you buy your Horse, or for what use he is designed, what colour is best, or best pleases you; next his stature, breed, and likelinesse, these are general, because every man in this will please himself according to his fancy, nor ever can we imagine all men to be of a mind in this, therefore it is best to let them choose according to their own pleasure, nor much matters it.

The next, which is peculiar or a particular Quere, is to know what Country-breed he is of, whether English or Forraign, to know which you must enquire of those who have had the breeding of him, or if that cannot be known, by reason of his being so often bought and sold, take these particular observations; if he be Spanish breed, his Limbs are small and streight, dry and spare, like a Harts; if Barbary, a fine little Head and a well set Breast and Shoulder; if of Naples, he is hawks nosed and clear eyed, his eyes seeming to sparkle; if Dutch or Flemmish, his leggs will be generally rough and large hoofed; as for French and English, they are almost alike, only the English are stronger set and more hardy for any exercise whatsoever.

Now to his colour, for the colour of a horse is much to be observed, by reason one colour is far better than another, though there be good Horses of all colours; the best colours, as the most experienced do affirm, are the Roan, the White, the Lyard, the Bay, the Sorrel, the Dapple Gray, the Flea-bitten, the Black, Iron-grey, and White, but above all, the Bay is chosen and accounted the best, both by the French and the English, especially if they have a Star in their fore-heads, and their feet spotted with white spots, the Lyard for courage is esteemed, which is a mingled Roan, the Mouse, Dun and Grizled were formerly in great esteem, as also the Dapple-Grey, and such as come neareſt them, the Iron-Grey, the White-Sorrel and Brown Bay. *Pluto* commendeth much the White, whom *Virgil* does not esteem, others commend the Black, especially if he have a white Star in his fore-head, or be streaked with white down his face, the black if he be not mingled with Silver hair, nor have any white about him, is naught for Service; the Flea-bitten horse is alwayes singular good for Travel and other Labours, and will hold out the best of any; the yellowish or glew'd unless he be spotted or straked with white is naught, yet if he be well marked he often proves indifferent well;

and

and if he have a black Liſt down his back from the nape of his neck to his tayl, he is excellent good for a Stallion if his proportion be according; the red-Bay, and the blew gray are much ſubject to Melancholy. The Flea-bitten and the Black with White are Sanguine, the Roan, the Sorrel, and the Black without White ſubject to choler.

But as to their Paces, which are theſe, Trot, Rack, Amble, or Gallop, the which you muſt chooſe, according as you deſign to put him to, either for Racing, Hunting, Travelling, or Fight; if it be for moderate Travelling, an eaſie Trot is beſt, the which you may know if he be prone to by obſerving his Legs.

Thus when his near fore-leg and his off hinder leg, move together, or his near hinder Leg and his off-fore-Leg; and farther obſerve, that if when he moves he be quick to raiſe his legs from the ground, and do it ſhort and with an even diſtance, making but little treads, he will likewiſe pace very well; for if he lift up his feet blundringly or careleſly, it denotes he is given to Stumbling and will be oft troubled with Lameneſs; if he ſtrike his Legs acroſs, or take no wideneſs in his ſteps, it denotes he is ſubject to trip, enterfere or fall; if he take not his ſtep even, it ſhews an unwillingneſs to travel and a weakneſs in his Limbs; if he tread large ſteps, he is ſubject to over-reach and ſtrain himſelf if he be put to the Speed.

Again, if you chooſe a horſe for eaſe and pleaſant Journeys, you muſt chooſe an Ambler, which you may know thus, if he move both his Legs on the ſame ſide together, fore Leg and hinder Leg, and that he muſt do, large, nimble, and eaſie; for if he tread ſhort and ſhuffling he is no good Ambler, yet if he be very nimble at his firſt begining to pace, it denotes he cannot long hold it.

Now for hunting either of Buck, Stag, or Hare, for ſpeed on the Road, or to ride Poſt, if you chooſe a horſe, then you muſt take one who has naturally or has been taught the racking Pace, which is neither Trot nor Amble, but between both, and is the eaſieſt of all, though it gains not ſo much ground, the which you may obſerve by the ſame method as you did ambling.

The next I have to treat of is galloping, which is natural to all the former Paces, but the Amble; for an ambling Horſe will immediately be brought to Gallop, by reaſon it conſiſts almoſt of the ſame nature with it, only a ſlower and not ſo much ſtraining; for it being a ſwift pace, by long uſe has ſo inured the horſe to it

that he cannot without ſome time and inſtruction frame his legs to it, but will fall into a Pace; if he be overmuch ſpurred, beaten or forced that can properly be called no Pace, Lut a confuſion of all together, but perfects all things, ſo in time you may bring him to gallop as you pleaſe if no imperfection in his Limbs reſtrain him.

Now I ſhall lay down ſuch obſervations as you may infallibly know a good Gallopper by, firſt, if he raiſe his feet ſwift and clearly from the ground but not too high, and that he neither roul nor boggle in his way, nor ſtriketh his Belly with his feet. If he take large reaches with his fore-legs, and his hinder follow quickly, in which you muſt likewiſe obſerve that he do not cut under the Knee, or on the Shank, which is called by ſome the Galloping, but by others the ſwift cut, or that he throws not his Legs croſs or twiſt them as it were, nor that he ſet one foot upon, or clap it againſt the other, but that he keep him ſteady and even in all his courſe, and ſtill with his fore-foot head the way.

The horſe who has theſe properties always gallops moſt neatly, and a man may truſt to him in any time of danger, that is, if he be beſet with Thieves, or purſued by an Enemy in time of War, if he be but able of Body, and well kept.

If your horſe raiſe all his feet together, and gallop as it were on a heap, or round, then, he is not ſwift, but will tread ſure and hold out well, by reaſon of his ſtrength and limbs, and is fit for War, or to carry double.

Again, obſerve if a horſe gallops but ſoftly and treads firm, not being Subject to fall nor ſtumble, yet his Legs ſeem tender, and he liſts them up as it were in fear, and throws them in and out as if he was hurt or pained, then is he not for galloping uſes, nor ever will he, by reaſon he has ſome obſcure diſeaſe or ſtiff lameneſs in his Joynts that is hard to remove.

Now as to his height or ſtature, the which muſt be obſerved according to the uſe you put him to, or as your ſelf ſhall think fit, a well made horſe with ſtrong Joynts, but not much fleth upon his Legs, you muſt chooſe, about ſixteen hands high; if you take one for carrying double or any other great weights, as likewiſe for drawing either in Cart, Waggon or Coach, and if for recreation only, the fineſt and neateſt limbed and ſhape you can light of, and not exceeding fourteen hands in ſtature, or if you pleaſe leſs, according to the proportion of your own body. Thus

Thus far having given you as I well hope, a ſatisfactory inſtruction, I ſhall now proceed to inform you of the Deformities and Imperfections, ſecret Diſtempers and Infirmities that lye hidden many times from the eyes of the Buyer, the which are not a few, ſo that it would be almoſt impoſſible to diſcover them all, ſo that every one might underſtand them; therefore I ſhall endeavour to give you as plain and full an account as neceſſary, or that can be underſtood according to the beſt opinions of the skilful.

To begin then, when any one offers you a Horſe to ſell, after you have ſeen him tryed, as to the former experience, and underſtand his Age, and Breed, then cauſe his Sadle, and all other his Cloaths, nay his very Bridle, if ſo be you can get him to ſtand ſtill without it, to be took off & then place your ſelf juſt before him, and look wiſhfully upon him, and take eſpecial notice of his Countenance at all times, whether he look pleaſant and lively, well and ſtedfaſt, without change or alteration; the which if he do, it is a ſign that he is of a good Spirit, and in good health, as to bodily ſickneſs or inbred diſeaſes; the next thing to be obſerved is his ears, for if they be thick, ſtiff and taper from the roots to the tips, as alſo long or of a convenient ſize, well faſtened and ſtrong at the roots, it is a great ſign of metal, perfection and compleatneſs, for ſuch ears are an ornament to any horſe.

But if they be contrary, as thick at the ends, lolling, and often moving, it denotes him dull, ſloathful, heavy and ſtubborn, and of a very ill temper.

Now if his face be clean and his forehead riſing, the ſimilitude of a feather in his forehead, upon his cheeks or any part of his face, but it is the greater ſign if it be above his eyes, or if he have a white ſpot, Star, or Streak of a pretty large Size, drawn even, or a ſnip of white upon his noſe, it is a ſign he is good and beautiful.

But on the contrary, if his face ſeem ſwelled, bloated or puffy, fat, dull, cloudy, or lowring, his fore-head flat and ſquare, which the vulgar term Mare-faced, the rach if any he has in his front, ſtanding very low, or in the middle of his face, his Star or Streak uneven or crinkled, his noſe ball'd or raw, and the hair in many places off from his face, are very bad marks and ſignatures of great deformity.

Again, if his eyes be ſhining, full and round, ſtand Eagle-like, out from his head, and little or none of their whites to be ſeen, if they be full and ſparkling, it denoteth him chearful, ſwift-ſighted and comely, full of Spirit and of good nature, yet fierce and fiery.

But if his eyes look askew, ſeem dull, and withered, little and ſlow in motion, they denote much imperfection, and are unhandſome to behold; If they are the colour of Foxes or Ferrits eyes, he will be quickly moon-eyed or wall-eyed, and, if not timely prevented, blind; if he chance to have a thick, dull Philm over it, and in it white ſpecks, it not only ſhews a timerouſneſs in your Horſe, but be ſubject to cauſeleſs ſtarting, and alſo in danger of having a Pin and Web or white skin over his ſight; if they run either water or matter or ſeem bloody or raw, they proceed from an old Surfeit or an over-heating, which was done by immoderate riding: Corruption ingendring in the Head by exceeding draughts, or the like, as dead eyes that are low ſunk do; that, if he Lives long he will be blind, and that he was gotten by a very aged Stallion and is of no good breed; if the Whites be as much ſeen as the Black it ſignifies great weakneſs, unnatural and ſullen in himſelf.

Again, if you obſerve by feeling or otherwiſe, his Chaps or Jaw-bones Lean, Spare, and large ſpaces between them, his Wind-pipe-Head great and wide, not ſurroudned or incumbred with Nerval ſmall Ropes or the like; and that his neck ſeems to ſhoot through the Jaw, or be placed in the neather part of it within the ſame; it is a token of large and ſtrong wind, and that your Horſe will hold out a Race very well if all his Limbs be proportionable, and that he is of a good heart, and has a head not ſubject to Diſeaſes; but on the contrary, if his Jaws be fat, groſs and full of kernels or knobs, and that there is but a little ſpace between the bones, it denotes ſhort wind, ſowlneſs of Stomach and Belly, and ſubject to Glaunders, Broken-winded, or Strangury, and many times apt to be troubled with grievous Colds.

Now if his Jaws be cloſe and firmly fixed as it were to touch each other, ſo that they cauſe the fleſh to riſe about them as if ſwelled, it denoteth ſhort-wind, groſs and vicious humours ſetling there, and eſpecially if it riſe more in one place than in another, and the form of the riſings be long, for then ſome inward infection is gathered

red, which if not taken in time will turn to an Impoſtume or worſe.

If he have wide Noſtrils, and they open and ſhut and ſeem in a continual motion, ſo that the inſides or redneſs upon every little Straining or Snorting appear, yet the compaſs of his noſe but ſmall, his mouth not wide but deep, with ſmall dry Lips, meeting without the leaſt hanging over, do likewiſe promiſe the horſe good. And well winded, couragious and hardy.

But if contrary, quite otherwiſe; as ſhort-winded, tender and weak, a ſhallow mouthed horſe will never bear his Bridle well, but if it be not buckled faſt, the Bitt will be apt to fall out of his mouth, or he will be much apt to ſlaver.

Again, if his upper Lip be uneven and will not meet with his under, but either ſhut over or flap, it is a certain ſign that he has a lingering Diſeaſe or is exceeding ſlow, as alſo if he have a Rhume or dropping at the noſe, if that it be clear it will if not timely ſtopped (the which it is hard to do) turn to the Glaunders; if one noſtril runs it is worſe than if they did both.

—Now as to his teeth, be ſure to obſerve that when you buy a horſe, to look in his mouth and take a diligent care to ſee if he have loſt none of his teeth, or if he have, what they are, whether Grinders, Fore-teeth or Tuſhes; for thereby you may give a ſhrowd gueſs at his Age, although the mark be out of his mouth; but to avoid being cheated buy not a horſe that has loſt any, for if he have loſt ſome the reſt will quickly follow.

The next thing to be conſidered is his Breſt; for if that be broad, ſtrong-ſet, riſing or full fleſhed, and Adorned with marks or feathers; Then you may confide in his ſtrength, and he will not deceive your expectations; but if he be the contrary, it denotes weakneſs of Body and unfitneſs for Labour, and that he is given to that ill quality in Horſes, *viz.* to ſtumbling, as likewiſe to cutting and tripping; as alſo if his Breaſt ſeem to ſink or give inwards, it ſhews him of no courage nor mettal.

The next thing to be conſidered is his Legs; that is, his fore-legs only, of the hinder hereafter I ſhall treat; firſt obſerve the Joynt next to his ſhoulder, which is properly called his Bow or Elbow, and from thence his Thigh as low as his knee, and obſerve they be well Sinew'd and covered with brawny fleſh, no wayes giving out nor tumid, and that he ſtand firm without bending or moving his

Joynts;

Joynts, which if he do, it is a ſign of ſtrength, as likewiſe they are all marks of the ſame.

The next is to obſerve if he carry an even or equall pace with his Legs, but eſpecially with his knees, and that they be neat, well knit, and not too fleſhy, of a juſt proportion; for take notice if they differ in magnitude he has had his knee broke, or elſe ſome diſtemper harbours there, as the Gout, &c. if you find any cuts or ſcars with hair growing in them, he is apt to fall, which will be hard to cure or rid him of.

Then leaving his knees, obſerve his Shanks as low as his Fetlock, and if they be well Sinew'd, finely made and ſhaped proportionable to his Thighs, and that they neither bend in, nor out, and that there be no ridge nor ſeam deſcending from the knee-joynts on the inſide, then is he good and ſound in thoſe parts; but on the contrary, if there be ſcars, ſcabs, or knobs on the inſide, it is by reaſon of his high ſtriking, called by moſt the ſwift cut; but if above his Fetlock or Hoof, it is interfering or ſhort-cutting, but in this be ſure to take good obſervation, for if under the skin, all over there appear little Knobs or Scabs, it is cauſed by ſome ill uſage or naſty keeping, or elſe Symptoms of the Maunge, that will in a ſhort time break forth to the full if not prevented.

Farther, if his Legs be full Reſned, fat, or Dropſical, he will in no wiſe be fit for ſervil Labour; if on the inward bend of his Knee there be long ſcars, ſeams or ſcabs, the which have not been occaſioned by the ſwift cut, they will prove very dangerous for it denotes a Mallander that in a ſhort time will turn to a Canker or Ulcer.

Now let us deſcend to his Paſterns, the firſt of which muſt be ſure to be cleaner and ſtrongly knit with Sinews or Ligaments, the ſecond ſtraight, ſtiff and ſmoothly fixed, not more inclinable to bend one way than another, but not over-long; for it ſhews a weak horſe: or if the former be gouty or ſwelled, it denotes ſtrains and over-reaching Sinews.

The next thing to be conſidered is the hoof, the which is as great a piece of Curioſity to be obſerved as any that belong to the chooſing a good horſe, for if that fail, all the other properties avail not.

Firſt then, a good hoof ſhould be ſmooth of colour; black and inclining to long, ſomething hollow and full, ſounding; for, take

ſo

notice that a white hoof is not ſo good by reaſon of its tenderneſs; ſo that it is apt either to let the ſhooe draw, or it ſelf to batter or ſpread, by being in too much wet or hard riding.

The next is a withered hoof that ſeems to ſcall, or have welts or ſeams upon it; which denotes the horſe to be aged or much worn by hard travel or overheats; another ſort of hoofs there are which are called ſhort hoofs, and are ſo brittle that they will not bear any ſhooe above a day at the moſt if rid or laboured; if his hoof be exceeding round, it is bad for deep and dirty ways, by reaſon the horſe cannot tread ſure; a flat hoof that is light and full of pores or holes is a ſign of his being foundred; if you perceive by ſtriking the hoof a hollow noiſe, or that it be hollow within, it ſignifies ſome internal defect and old feſter not cured, that has waſted the pith, and therefore is not good.

The next thing obſervable is the Coronet or Socket of the hoof, the which being well fleſhed, ſmooth, without Chops or Scars, and well decked with hair, is a ſign of its being in good plight and ſound; but if the contrary, is often troubled with ring-worms, a crown-ſcab or the like dangerous misfortune.

Having taken particular notice of the former properties of goodneſs or defect, remove your ſelf to the right ſide, and then take eſpecial notice how his head is fixed to his neck; ſee firſt that it be ſmall at the ſetting on, and ſo by degrees deſcend tapor to his ſhoulders, not thick, but rather broad; and obſerve that his head ſtand not too high nor too low, with a high yet thin Creſt, his Main declinable, long, ſoft, and a little curling, which are ſigns of comelineſs; as on the contrary, a thick joult-head, and thick neck, ſhort and brawny, ſhews much dulneſs and deformity.

If there be any ſwelling in, or under the nape of the Neck, it will certainly turn to the Poll-evil or ſome Fiſtula, which is altogether as bad if not taken in time.

Again, to have a thick Neck, and lank or fallen near the Withers, to have a groſs and flat, or ſunk Creſt, are ſigns of great defect in ſtrength; exceſſive ſtore of hair upon the Main, eſpecially if it be ſtreight and hard, ſignifies dulneſs and want of courage; a thin Main that is not made ſo by any accident or diſtemper, ſhews the horſe to be of a fiery nature; if it fall away it ſhews either Itch, Worms, or Mange to lodge there.

The next thing worthy to be obſerved, is his Back or Chine, which muſt be broad, ſtreight and ſmooth, well meaſured and even, to which his Ribs muſt be well grafted firm, and round, his fillets or haunches ſtreight, ſtout and ſtrong, nor muſt there be above three Inches breadth between his fartheſt rib and huckle-bone, that is the neareſt to the ſame, as the ſhort ribs which are all ſigns of a perfect and well ſhaped horſe.

The next thing is, to take a ſpecial obſervation of the ſhape of his body, if it be plump, ſmooth, and contained within the compaſs of his ribs, and not hanging over or paunching out; his ſtones or genitals muſt likewiſe be contained cloſe in their Purſes or Cods, as it were girt to his Yard, the which ſhews the horſe to be of good metal, well made and free from Diſeaſes in thoſe parts; but if the contrary, it ſhews him defective and uncomely.

Firſt then, if he have a narrow back, he will be prone to Saddle-galls, hurts and bruiſes in riding; to have a ſway-back is a token of great weakneſs in the Chine, or if his Ribs be very fat and ſtreight they in Travel will hinder him from fetching his full wind & ſo conſquently make him tire; if now his hinder Ligaments or Fillets be ſlack, hang ſlobbing and unſeemly, they will be a great hinderance to him if he travel in ſteep way, and he can by no means hold any pace up a hill if it be very ſteep, and but very untoward in carrying any burthen.

Again, if his belly be gant, and ſeems to be cloſe within his ribs or near to his back, if his Stones hang down and ſwag about in the Cods, they are great ſigns of imperfection and uneaſineſs in the horſe, cauſed by ſome diſtemper, and likewiſe he will be apt to founder.

The next things to be taken notice of are his Buttocks, they muſt be ſmooth, round, and even, not ſtanding too high nor too low, but as near as can be level with his body; but many chooſe a long Buttock'd horſe for ridding double or the like, which if they do, they muſt obſerve that they riſe behind and wear the Dock ſpread to the ſetting on thereof, which makes a horſe ſhew well, and are ſigns of ſtrength.

Now for the narrow Buttock or ridged rump, they are both weak and uncomely and will not conveniently bear any thing behind.

From which I ſhall deſcend to his Thighs or Hips, firſt obſerve if they be well brawned, Sinewed, and that they from the firſt ſetting on to the Bow-Joynt are made tapor, leſſening by degrees, and be well fleſhed, all which if they be not, ſhews weakneſs and unaptneſs for ſervice; after which take ſpecial notice of the hock or middle Joynt, and with your hand feel if it be well knit, full of Griſtles, Sinews and Ligaments, that it be not fleſhy nor ſwelled, and that it have large Veins, be pliant and apt to bend at each motion of the horſe, ſomething bowing it muſt be and firm. All theſe are good ſigns; but if there be cuts, ſcars, or feſters in the inſide of the Joynt or elſe-where, it is dangerous and not eaſie to be cured.

If there happen any ſwelling or heat over the Joynts in general, then it is no other but a blow, but obſerve if ſuch ſwelling be only in one place, and that on the inſide in the hollow of the Joynt, and the Veins ſtrut, feel hot, and beat much, or throb, and that the ſwelling be ſoft, it is a blood ſpavin; but if brawny and hard, a bone-ſpavin, but if it chance to be juſt upon the hock or out-bow, behind or a little under it, then it is or ſhortly will be a Curb, &c.

Now for his hinder legs, you muſt obſerve whether they be fine, neat and clean, full of ſtrong Sinews and not very fat, which ſhews him ſound in thoſe parts; but on the contrary, if his legs be very fat, fleſhy, large, it ſignifies him bad for Service; if they be tumid or ſwelling, it denotes the ſetlings of molten greaſe there; if any ſcabs happen to be ſomething above the Paſterns, they denote the Scratches or chops; cuts or ſcars beneath them denotes Pains or Aches, all which are dangerous and require great skill and diligence to cure them.

Now for the Tayl, it cannot ſtand amiſs nor out of place upon fair Buttocks; but upon an ill pair if it be never ſo well placed it will not ſeem handſom; the poſture it ought to ſtand in is even with the parting of the Buttocks, that is broad, high, ſmooth and ſomewhat bending inward, fleſhy and of a good length, briſtly and curled, the length being not only a beauty but very neceſſary for him to defend himſelf with againſt Waſps, Hornets and Flies, though many deſire to have him cut-tailed.

But in general, the whole body muſt be framed according to the moſt expert horſemens opinions, thus to have the head and

legs of a Stag, the ears and tail of a Fox, the neck of a Swan, the breſt of a Lyon, the Buttocks of a woman, and the feet of an Aſs. The perfect good horſe thus *Virgil* in his *Georgicks* deſcribes, the which to inſert may not be amiſs.

With head advanced high at firſt the Kingly Colt doth pace,
His tender Limbs aloft he liſts, as well becomes his race.
And foremoſt ſtill he goes, and through the ſtream he makes his way,
And ventures firſt the Bridge, no ſudden ſound doth him affray.
High creſted is his neck, and eke his neck is framed ſmall,
His Belly gaunt, his back is broad, and breaſted big withal.
The Bay is always counted good, ſo likewiſe is the Grey,
The white and yellow worſt of all: beſides if far away
There haps a noiſe, he ſtamps and quiet cannot reſt,
But praunces here and there as if ſome ſpirit him poſſeſſ'd.
His Ears be ſet upright, and from his Noſe the fiery flame,
Doth ſeem to come, while as he ſnuffs and ſnorteth at the ſame.
Thick is his Main, and on his right ſide down doth hanging fall,
And double Chin'd, upon his Loyns a gutter runs withal.
He ſcraping ſtands, and making of deep holes he paws the ground,
Whilſt that aloud his horned hoof all hollow ſeems to ſound.

Thus have you all the particular and general deſcriptions both of a good and bad horſe, and may therefore know what to chooſe and what to forbear, and note that amongſt all the Creatures irrational, there is not one more generous nor more ſerviceable to man than is the Horſe; for as we read of *Bucephalus* the Horſe of *Alexander* the Great, that although he was wounded in the Battle againſt the *Perſians*, ſo that his Life was much deſpaired of, yet would not he ſuffer his Maſter to mount any other horſe till he had brought him ſafe out of the Battle. The like has been reported of others, whoſe Loves have been ſo great to their Maſters, that when they have been encloſed with Enemies, the Horſes have fought in their defence couragiouſly; and *Eumenius* relateth that a certain Traveller being ſet upon by four Thieves was killed, which his Horſe perceiving, fell upon them with ſuch fury, that in revenge of his Maſters death he killed two of them and made the other two get up into a Tree to ſave themſelves, where he watched them till ſuch time as ſeveral Paſſengers came by and underſtood

ſtood what had paſſed, the Thieves being conſtrained to confeſs what they had done. And indeed it behoves all that frequently travel the Roads to have a good horſe that may ſave them in neceſſity, either by courage or ſwiftneſs in flight.

CHAP. XI.

How to cure the Autocoe, *a violent pain ſo called.*

THis happens moſt commonly when horſes firſt are put into freſh Paſture by their two eagerneſs in feeding, which cauſes ill digeſture, and leaves vitious humours in the ſtomach, or if he be at Stable or dry meat, the like may happen by his rank feeding; this Diſeaſe often takes the very Horſe violently, makes his Legs fail him and to hang down his Head, ſhaking all over as if an Ague poſſeſſed him; the ſpeedieſt way to remedy it, is to let him blood, and two mornings ſucceſſively to give him about an ounce of *Diapente* brewed in a quart of ſtrong Ale; it being a ſoveraign Medicine or Drink to expel the Vapours, Pains and Infections that do oppreſs the heart; if he be not Cured in twice giving, you may give him thrice, the which will infallibly remove and take away the Diſtemper.

CHAP. XII.

How to cure a Horſe that has been burnt by any Mare, &c.

WHether he be ſo or no you may diſcern by his Yard, for if that be foul, corrupt, and ſwelleth, ſo that he cannot ſtale without much pain, they are infallible ſymptoms that he has been burnt; to cure which take a pint of French-wine, boyl it with a quarter of a pound of Roch-Allom beaten into fine powder, after which, take it luke-warm, and with a Sirringe or Squirt, ſquirt it into his Yard, and do ſo till his Yard leave mattering and it will perfectly cure him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Rules to be observed in the Sweating of Horses.

First, let the keeper take great care, when he airs his horse, that it be done by degrees, and not all on a sudden, and then let him observe in that as well as in all his other actions, what temper of Body he is of, that is, whether with little or much motion he used to sweat; for many horses will sweat though they stand still in their Stalls, which commonly denotes the Horse faint, ill-dieted, and as bad looked after, then must you exercise him to work out the sweat and bring down his foul feeding, but if he be not apt to sweat unless upon strong heats and large breathings, then observe if his sweat be white or frothy, then take notice that your horse is foul within and must be exercised yet more, but if it be like water yet thick and black, then you need not fear any danger.

CHAP. XIV.

How to prevent a Horse from Stumbling, &c.

TAke your Horse so used to stumble, and with his Halter fasten him close to a Post, then with your Launcet or a sharp penknife slit the skin from his Nose to the upper Lip, that is, down right just between his Nostrils about two inches, which when you have done, part it as wide as you can, and under it you will find a red film or second skin, that likewise cut and part, beneath which you may discern a flat, smooth, white Sinew, the which take up with your Cornets Horn-point, and twist it round about, after a little space twist it again quite round, so another time then have regard to his Legs, and you shall see him draw by degrees

grees his hinder legs almoſt to his fore-legs, the which as ſoon as he has done with your Launcet divide the Sinew at the part which grows to the Lip, the which as ſoon as you have effected, untwiſt it and it will ſhrink up into the head, and then his legs will withdraw back again; for note that this Sinew is the cauſe of his ſtumbling, and that it goes quite through his body and ſpreads it ſelf into his two hinder Legs; after which you muſt cloſe up the ſlit and put into it freſh Butter and a little Salt beat fine, then take a Cere-cloath made of *Burgandian* Pitch, or Stock-Pitch and lay upon it, and afterwards you may truſt your horſe for Stumbling; this is a rare ſecret known but by few, but worthy to be obſerved in any the like occaſions.

CHAP. XV.

How to take the beſt advantage of ground in any Race.

'Tis to be obſerved that when you know the ground you are to run, you muſt acquaint your horſe with it, and give him his Heats there always, making him take the worſt part of it, that ſo upon any ſtraight he may not boggle, but that if he in the Race get the beſt part he may run the more chearfully, yet let it not be in ſuch rough ground where he may be apt to ſlip, or get any ſprains in his Joynts, for if he does it will diſable him for the future and make him timerous; but at any time when you heat your horſe thereon, let him run out the full Courſe, and never beyond the weighing Poſt; or if you do not ride him out-right, ride him half way and back again, but never let him exceed the bounds he is to run, that is, not beyond the Mark or Poſt, but you may run him quite through, and then back again if he be of ability to beat it, ſo that in a little time he will be ſo well acquainted with the ground, that when he comes to the Race it will be eaſie for him to perform; one thing more is to be obſerved, that is, what ground the horſe moſt delights to run upon, that you muſt chooſe as near as opportunity will give you leave, but you muſt not always heat him upon the ſame ground, ſometimes in ſpacious fields, green Meadows and Rivers ſides as has been before-mentioned.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

How to know by the hair of your Horſes Neck in what eſtate he is.

FIrſt obſerve the horſes hair in every part, but the main regard is to be had to that of his Neck, for if it be ſleek, cloſe, bright, and ſhining, it denotes that he is in good order; but if the contrary, as rough, ſhagged, and ſtanding upright, and as it were changed colour; take it for a Rule that he is not well, but that ſome inward grief has ſeized him, as chilneſs of heart, want of warmth in the external parts, or ſome Ague hovering about him, but not yet perfect; to prevent which, and to reſtore him you muſt rub him and keep him very warm, with double cloaths, and give him in a quart of warm Ale one of the before-mentioned Cordial Balls, the which will expell the cold humours and make him lively and chearful again, the which you ſhall know by the ſuddain falling of his hair, the which before ſtood ſtaring.

CHAP. XVII.

How to make the brittleſt Hoof imaginable become ſoft, and bear well any Shooe without the leaſt injury to the Horſe.

TAke about eight pound of freſh hoggs greaſe, and about half a buſhel of Damask Roſes well picked and clean from ſeeds; melt the hoggs greaſe in a Kettle, and when it boyls put in the Roſes and dip them all over till they ſwell; then take them off, and putting them into a cloſe Earthen Veſſel with the greaſe and all, let them ſtand and cool; or if you have an Oven, when you have drawn let it ſtand in it and cool by degrees, after which, when your horſe has newly dunged, put about three pound of the ſame into them, let it ſtand for the ſpace of three weeks, then melt it again and ſtrain out the liquid part and cover it up cloſe in the earthen veſſel by it ſelf, throwing the other away.

The

The manner to uſe it is as followeth, one Spoonful of Tar, and a handful of Horſe-dung, heat them together in a pint of Olive Oyl, then taking off his ſhooes, wrap up his feet with ſtif Leather ſo that you may power the Liquor in, and it will not run out, which being in, let it continue there about a week, and then the old being waſted ſupply its place with freſh, the which after thrice doing you may put on his ſhooes again, then ſtop his feet well with the Tar, Horſe-dung and Oyl, putting over it Tow, or Flax, and in a ſhort time his hoofs will be ſoft and tough, ſo that you may uſe them without fear, and they will bear any ſhooe exceeeding well, and ſo for a long time, if not as long as the Horſe liveth.

CHAP. XVIII.

An Account of the things to be obſerved for the preſervation of a Horſes Health, and to make him live long.

THe Firſt of which is mature and good digeſtion of whatſoever he eateth or drinketh, ſo that it turn to pure blood and nouriſhment.

2. The Second to be conſidered, is ſpare and moderate feeding in which he muſt neither eat too faſt nor too much.

3. The Third muſt be taken from moderate Labour and ſeaſonable Exerciſe.

4. The Fourth is to obſerve fit times and ſeaſons for ſleeping and waking, both which muſt be moderately taken.

5. The Fifth, He muſt not be too much acquainted with Mares, nor ride them often, for nothing ſooner ſhortens life in any Creature.

6. The Sixth, not to be over-heat nor his Spirits to be waſted by long and tedious Journeys.

7. The Seventh is, continually to be in ſmooth, ſerene and wholeſome Air, and not to feed in foggy Fens, Marſhes, or damp Meadows.

8. The Eighth, Obſerve that you neither exerciſe nor any wayes make him labour hard when he is newly taken from Graſs.

9. The Ninth, to keep him from greedily eating young Graſs, either Clover or other, but eſpecially from Surfeting on the blades of Corn.

10. The Tenth, you muſt obſerve that he drink not when he has been hard ridden or laboured, ſo that he is very hot.

11. The Eleventh thing to be taken notice of is, that you muſt neither waſh nor walk him when you are come to your Journeys end, ride him about a moderate pace till he begins to cool, and then bring him into the Stable, rub him well down and clap on his cloaths and wiſp him round, being well ſtored with Litter.

12. The Twelfth and laſt is to give him meat in due time, obſerve his Scowrings, Diets, and other Phyſical Medicines as occaſion ſhall require, the which in this book you will find good ſtore, with large directions how to uſe them.

CHAP. XIX.

St. Anthony's *moſt Admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or ſtretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.*

OF bruiſed *Cummin* ſeeds take three ounces, and boyl them in a pint of Oyl of *Camomil*, then add to them half a pound of yellow Bees-wax and let them boyl to the thickneſs of a Cere-cloath, then ſpread it on Sheeps-Leather very hot, and apply it to the place ſo grieved, and in twice doing it will perfect the Cure if it be not too far gone, if it be, you muſt apply it till it is well.

CHAP. XX.

CHAP. XX.

The speediest and safest way to cure the swift Cut or the Knee Cut.

TAke one pint of White-Wine, then add to it two ounces of Virgin-Honey, brew them together and boyl them till the Honey is melted amongst the Wine, and then add more of Turpentine the like quantity, then let them boyl to the thickness of a Salve, and as hot as the horse can endure it, wash the cuts with it once or twice a day and it will quickly heal them, but be sure you wash the dirt out of them if there be any in, wash it with hot water before you apply the Oyntment.

CHAP. XXI.

A speedy Remedy for a Horse or a Cow that have any way licked up red Poison, Worms, Spiders, or any other venemous Insect, or that is ready to burst by eating of too much Clover, Turnips, or young eared Barley and drinking after it.

THis is to be known by their speedy swelling and slavering at the Mouth, and working at the Fundament, the which when you perceive that they are ready to burst (which is a common thing about Harvest time) be sure to have recess to this Medicine, take four ounces of Spanish Sope, or if that be not to be gotten, our English Cake-Sope, and scrape it into a Mortar, then put to it two ounces of *Dialphera*, then beat them small as you can together and make it into Balls as big as Pigeons Eggs, and take one of them and dissolve it in hot Beer, and if it will not quickly dissolve, crumble it in, then with a drenching horn or any

ſuch neceſſary implement, pour it down the throat of the Beaſt ſo ſwelled, be it either a Horſe, Ox, or Cow, and it will immediately abate the ſwelling by urine and ſcowring, which it will force in abundance.

CHAP. XXII.

An approved Remedy for the mad Staggers or Lunacy.

THe Symptoms whereby you ſhall know whether your Horſe be troubled with this Diſeaſe, are his dullneſs and heavineſs, foaming at mouth, dimneſs of ſight, often ſtaring, and having a blew skin over his ſight, reſtleſs and often reeling and the like, the which, or any of them being obſerved, you muſt inſtantly take care to have your horſe let blood in the Neck in the great blood-veins on the left ſide, or if you think convenient on both ſides, and in the third Bar of the Pallate of his mouth, and prick him in the Noſe, juſt upon the Griſtles above the Noſtrils, which bleeding will inſtantly abate the grievous pain of his head, then take a handful of *Rue* or *Herb of Grace*, three or four cloves of Garlick, an ounce of fine Salt, *Aquavitæ* two ſpoonfuls, of White-wine Vinegar one; after they are bruiſed together, ſtrain them and pour the Liquid ſubſtance equally divided into his ears, then with black Wool ſtop them cloſe, ſo that no Air can get in, or tye them that he may not ſhake out the wool, then fume his Noſtrils through the little end of a Funnel with the peelings of Garlick and Maſtick well dried and beaten, and rowled up in little balls or ſprinkled upon a chafing-diſh of Charcoals, and ſo do three times a day at leaſt, and it will expell the infectious vapours that diſturbed the Brain, then give him a dram of ſingle Poppy-Seeds beaten into powder, the which you muſt blow up his Noſtrils, and about two ounces of Poppy-water to drink, which will caſt him into a ſound ſleep, after, let his diet be maſhed Oats and ground, and give him cold water to drink, and after twenty four hours you may unbind or unſere his ears and take out the wool, and in a ſhort time he will chear up and look lively again, *Probatum eſt.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

How to ſtop the Glaunders for a day or two, whilſt you have Sold or Swapped away your Horſe, who is troubled with the ſame.

FIrſt, of Verjuyce take four ounces, three ſpoonfuls of Olive Oyl, two of *Aquavitæ*, and put half into one Noſtril and the reſt into the other with a Siringe when it is Luke-warm, then ride your horſe full ſpeed for half a mile or more, only when you obſerve him begin to cough, ride gently and put him into a warm Stable, cover him with cloaths and give him a Maſh, but if he be ill diſpoſed upon the turning of the Glaunders, give him new milk as warm as poſſible, and they will infallibly ſtop.

CHAP. XXIV.

How to order your Stallion as to his Diet when he is to Cover your Mare.

AT any time when you deſign him to Cover you Mare, you muſt about a week before, take him out of the Stable and let him run in the freſheſt and tendereſt graſs you have, the which will not only encreaſe but make his ſeed of the apteſt and quickeſt temper for to generate a lively Colt, and he will be the willinger to cover the Mare by reaſon of his Airy temperament of body, when feeding on Hay or other dry meat would render him dull and ſhort-winded, as likewiſe his being acquainted with the Mare will be a great incitement to him.

CHAP. XXV.

For the melting of Greaſe after a Race or other Exceſſive Riding.

THe means to know the certainty of his greaſe being molten is to obſerve as ſoon as he is in the Stable, whether his Breaſt beats or pants more than uſual after any Journey or Race, as likewiſe his ſides under his girts, and his Flank heaving quick and falling ſoftly; all which if you perceive, then is his greaſe melted, and will turn to crudy humours if not brought away in time, the ſpeedieſt way for which, is to take one pint of Spaniſh Wine, and an ounce of *Diaſcordium* brewed in the ſame, and give it to him preſently to drink, and ſo continue doing four or five Mornings after, before he has eaten either Hay or Provender, then you muſt diet him with Maſhes of Oats and Barly boyled, and a conſiderable quantity of ground Malt, and let him drink water indifferent warm. but if he refuſe his meat you muſt give him half a pint of White-wine, into which you muſt put two ounces of Honey, and let them boyl till the honey is melted, and let him take it pretty warm, the which will cauſe him to void much urin, and by that means give him eaſe. Upon his taking of this you muſt ride him a mile or more, but it muſt not be above a hand-gallop, then returning home you muſt rub him down and keep him as warm as poſſible; when in this manner you have ſpent three dayes, give him another the like quantity of Honey and White-wine, then take eſpecial notice of his Dung; if it be ſmall, and he ſeem to dung with pain, then he is bound in his Belly and the Greaſe is not removed, to effect which, you muſt give him three pints or two quarts of Beer, the ſtaleſt you can get and a ſlice of houſhould-Bread both being boyled and mingled together, to which you muſt add four ounces of honey and the like quantity of freſh Butter, then in the Morning before he hath eaten any thing, give it him Luke-warm, then ride him about a mile, then give him the ſame again at night, and ride him as before, but you muſt obſerve to give it him but every other day, the which will looſen his Belly, and by degrees waſt the greaſe; about four hours after he hath taken his doſe, boyl him three quarts of Oats and give them to him, and mingling

that

that water the Oats were boyled in with ſome other to cool it, let him drink of it; you may with his Oats boyl *Fenugreek* Seeds about three quarters of a pound, and let him eat them mingled, but if he refuſe to eat them you may mingle them with a little fine Bran, then laſt of all give him an ounce of Aloes boyled till they are diſſolved in a quart of Ale or a pint of White-wine, and ſo it will purge away the ill humors, and in three weeks or leſs reſtore him to his former health and ſoundneſs of Body.

CHAP. XXVI.

How to make a Horſe Vomit, and by ſo doing, to void the foulneſs of his Stomach, or any Infection he hath taken in.

TAke *Polipodium*-roots the greater, pare them and waſh them very clean, and then ſteep them in oyl of Spike, and faſten them to the bitt of his Bridle, after which put it on and ride him abroad with the ſame in his mouth for the ſpace of half an hour or ſomewhat more, but it muſt be ſoftly, not above a trot at the moſt, & then if any ill humour or flegmatick ſubſtance lodge in his Stomach this will draw it up by cauſing him to vomit extremely, as likewiſe to Cough and Sneeze, the which will much cleanſe his head from Rheumes that lodge there, and expell the vapours that offend the Brain, ſo that though it make him ſick for the preſent, yet when that is over he will find himſelf more brisk and lively than before, having voided all the filth and ſlime that are the originals of all Diſeaſes that happen at any time to any horſe; after you have taken off the Bridle and removed the Roots, give him a pint of the beſt *French*-Wine mingled with three ounces of Honey, let it be indifferent warm, and then keep him as much from cold as is poſſible, two hours after you may give him a warm Maſh of Oats and Barley.

CHAP. XXVII.

The Discovery of several Tricks and Cheats used by Jockeys.

1. First then, to make a Dull Jade both kick, wince and fling, without either Whip or Spur, they use this device; in the fore-part of a Saddle made for that purpose, they have an Iron Plate, through which is drilled three holes, through which with a spring comes three sharp wyers, the which as long as the Rider sits upright do not prick the horse, but when he leans forward and presses the Bow of the Saddle, they torment him so that he capers and dances though never so dull, which the ignorant Buyer often supposes to proceed from the height of his Metal which the Jocky spares not to avouch with Oaths.

2. The Second is, if any Gentleman have set up a horse in a Stable at Livery, the Jockey either by bribing the Ostler, or privately by taking an opportunity in his absence, will with a hair take up the vein on the inside of the Horses Leg, or by cramping him in the Fet-lock with a small Wyer (neither of which can be observed without a curious search) either of which, will cause the Horse after a quarter of an hours Riding to halt downright Lame, then is the owner sent for, whose coming the Jocky having notice of, pretends some Business in the Stable, and whilst the Gentleman is admiring the strain mischance befallen his Horse, he puts in his verdict saying, it was a great deal of pity that so good a Beast should be dibbled, and by degrees insinuates into the Gentlemans acquaintance, desiring him to send for a Farrier, who comes and searches his foot but finds no cause of Lameness there, whereupon the Gentleman despairing of his recovery is often prest by the Jocky to sell him at half the worth, or swap him for some dull Jade that he or some of his Comrades have near at hand, who having got the Gentle-mans Horse, by uncramping or letting loose the vein render him as at first.

3. The Third Cheat they put upon Travellers is this, coming into a Country Inn, their first walk is into the Stable, where taking a view of the Horses, they single out the best for their purpose, demanding of the Hostler who that fine Horse belongs to,

who

who ignorant of any deſign freely tells them, then they place their Horſes next him, and ſeem only to feed, or rub them down, and order the Hoſtler to fetch a peck of Oats, the which whilſt he is gone to do, they thruſt a ſtone about the bigneſs of a Tennice-Ball into his Fundament, one of which they have always ready, it not having been in a quarter of an hour before the Horſe begins to ſweat mightily, and fall a trembling and ſtaring as if his eyes were ready to ſtart out of his head, ſo that a white fome ſoon after covers many places about him, which the Hoſtler obſerving, runs to the Gentleman that owns him, and tells him his Horſe is a dying, at which ſtarting up he runs to the Stable and finds him in a bad plight, not knowing what to think, or if he do, conjectures he is poyſoned, and in a confuſed hurry enquires for a Farrier or Horſe Doctor, when as Mr. Jockey ſteps in and asketh what is the matter, as if he poor lifeleſs fellow knew nothing of it, but quickly underſtanding the buſineſs, begins both to pity the Horſe and Gentleman, the former for his miſerable condition, and the latter for the danger he is in of loſing his Horſe, when thus he applys himſelf; Sir I am ſorry to ſee your Horſe in ſo bad a plight, then puts in to buy him at a venture, live or dye, the which if he cannot do handſomely, he undertakes to cure him, telling the Gentleman that though it is not his uſual cuſtom to meddle with, yet he will undertake for forty ſhillings to warrant his Life; The Gentleman conſents rather than to loſe a Horſe worth twenty pounds; then for a ſhew he gives him a Drench, and then takes opportunity to withdraw the ſtone, and within half an hours ſpace the Horſe will be perfectly well, and ſo they fob the Ignorant.

FINIS

Advertiſement.

Theſe are to give the Reader notice that we thought not fit to put the ſeveral Cures mentioned in this Addition into the Tittle Page, by reaſon the whole Book contains the beſt for Practice in the World, as alſo theſe may be accounted moſt Infallible.

THE

INDEX

OR,

TABLE

OF THE

Complete Jockey.

SHEWING

The Directions to find any Paragraph contained therein.

CHAP. I.

page 3.

THE best Method and speediest way for Ordering Race-Horses, to fit them for any Match in what estate soever.

The way and manner of Dieting or feeding a Horse for a Race being Fat or Gross immediately after his being taken from Pasture

Pasture or Soil as to the first two weeks. c. 2. p. 5.
Orders most carefully to be observed in the Coursing or Heating your Horse. c. 3. p. 10.
The manner of his second Fortnights feeding, and the care to be observed therein. c. 4. p. 11.
The first Diet to be given in ordering your Race-Horse and the way to make it. c. 5. p. 12.
The Dose or Scouring. c. 6. p. 17.
The way and Method of looking to and keeping your Horse after he has taken the Scouring. c. 7. ibid.
The manner of making Cordial Balls and their virtue, with an account of what Diseases they are most powerful to cure. c. 8. p. 19.
The manner of making his last Diet. c. 9. p. 20.
The third Fortnights Dieting and Ordering your Horse. c. 10. p. 21.
In buying a Horse, what Horse to choose, and how to avoid being Cheated, Page the 25. *Break the second, for here note the Printer forgot to put in the Contents of the following Instructions.* Sec. 2. p. 25.
How to cure the Autocoe, *a violent pain so called.* c. 11. p. 37.
How to cure a Horse that has been burnt by a Mare. c. 12. ibid.
Rules to be observed in Sweating of Horses. c. 13. p. 38.
How to prevent a Horse from stumbling. c. 14. ibid.
How to take the best advantage of ground in any Race. c. 15. p. 39.
How to know by the hair of your Horses neck in what estate he is. c. 16. p. 40.
How to make the brittlest Hoof imaginable become soft and bear well any shooe without the least injury to the Horse. c. 17. ib.
An account of things to be observed for the preservation of a Horses health, and to make him live long. c. 18. p. 41.
St. Anthonies *most admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or stretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.* c. 19. p. 42.

The Index.

The speediest and safest way to cure the swift-cut or knee-cut. c. 20. p. 43.

A speedy Remedy for a Horse or Cow that have any way's licked up red Poyson, Worms, Spiders, or any other venemous Insect, or that is ready to burst by eating of two much Clover, Turnips, or eared Barley and drinking soon after it. c. 21. ibid.

An approved Remedy for the mad Staggers or Lunacy. c. 22. p. 44.

How to stop the Glaunders for a day or two, whilst you have sold or swapped away your Horse that is troubled with the same. c. 23. p. 45.

How to order your Stallion as to his Diet when he is to cover your Mare. c. 24. ibid.

For the melting of Grease after a Race, or other excessive Ridings. c. 25. p. 46.

How to make a Horse vomit, and by so doing to avoid the foulness of his Stomach or any Infection he hath taken in. c. 26. p. 47.

The discovery of several Tricks and Cheats used by the Fockeys. c. 26. p. 48.

FINIS.

H 2230